

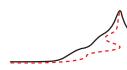
Christoph Schiller

# MOTION MOUNTAIN

THE ADVENTURE OF PHYSICS – VOL.IV

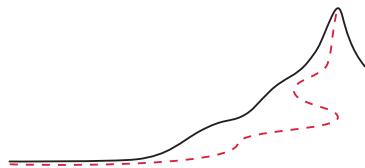
THE QUANTUM OF CHANGE





Christoph Schiller

# MOTION MOUNTAIN



The Adventure of Physics  
Volume IV

The Quantum of Change

Edition 31, available as free pdf  
with films at [www.motionmountain.net](http://www.motionmountain.net)

Editio trigesima prima.

Proprietas scriptoris © Chrestophori Schiller  
primo anno Olympiadis trigesimae secundae.

Omnia proprietatis iura reservantur et vindicantur.  
Imitatio prohibita sine auctoris permissione.  
Non licet pecuniam expetere pro aliqua, quae  
partem horum verborum continet; liber  
pro omnibus semper gratuitus erat et manet.

Thirty-first edition.

Copyright © 1990–2020 by Christoph Schiller,  
from the third year of the 24th Olympiad  
to the first year of the 32nd Olympiad.

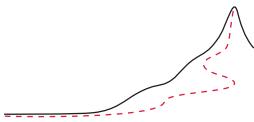


This pdf file is licensed under the Creative Commons  
Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 3.0 Germany  
Licence, whose full text can be found on the website  
[creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0/de/](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0/de/),  
with the additional restriction that reproduction, distribution and use,  
in whole or in part, in *any* product or service, be it  
commercial or not, is not allowed without the written consent of  
the copyright owner. The pdf file was and remains free for everybody  
to read, store and print for personal use, and to distribute  
electronically, but only in unmodified form and only at no charge.

To Britta, Esther and Justus Aaron

τῷ ἐμοὶ δαίμονι

Die Menschen stärken, die Sachen klären.



## PREFACE

“ Primum movere, deinde docere.\*

Antiquity

This book series is for anybody who is curious about motion in nature. How do things, people, animals, images and empty space move? The answer leads to many adventures, and this volume presents those due to the discovery that there is a smallest possible change value in nature. This smallest change value, the quantum of action, leads to what is called *quantum physics*. In the structure of modern physics, shown in Figure 1, quantum physics covers four of eight points. The present volume introduces the foundations of quantum theory, explains the structure of atoms and the appearance of probabilities, wave functions and colours.

The present introduction to quantum physics arose from a threefold aim I have pursued since 1990: to present the basics of quantum motion in a way that is simple, up to date and captivating.

In order to be *simple*, the text focuses on concepts, while keeping mathematics to the necessary minimum. Understanding the concepts of physics is given precedence over using formulae in calculations. The whole text is within the reach of an undergraduate.

In order to be *up to date*, the text is enriched by the many gems – both theoretical and empirical – that are scattered throughout the scientific literature.

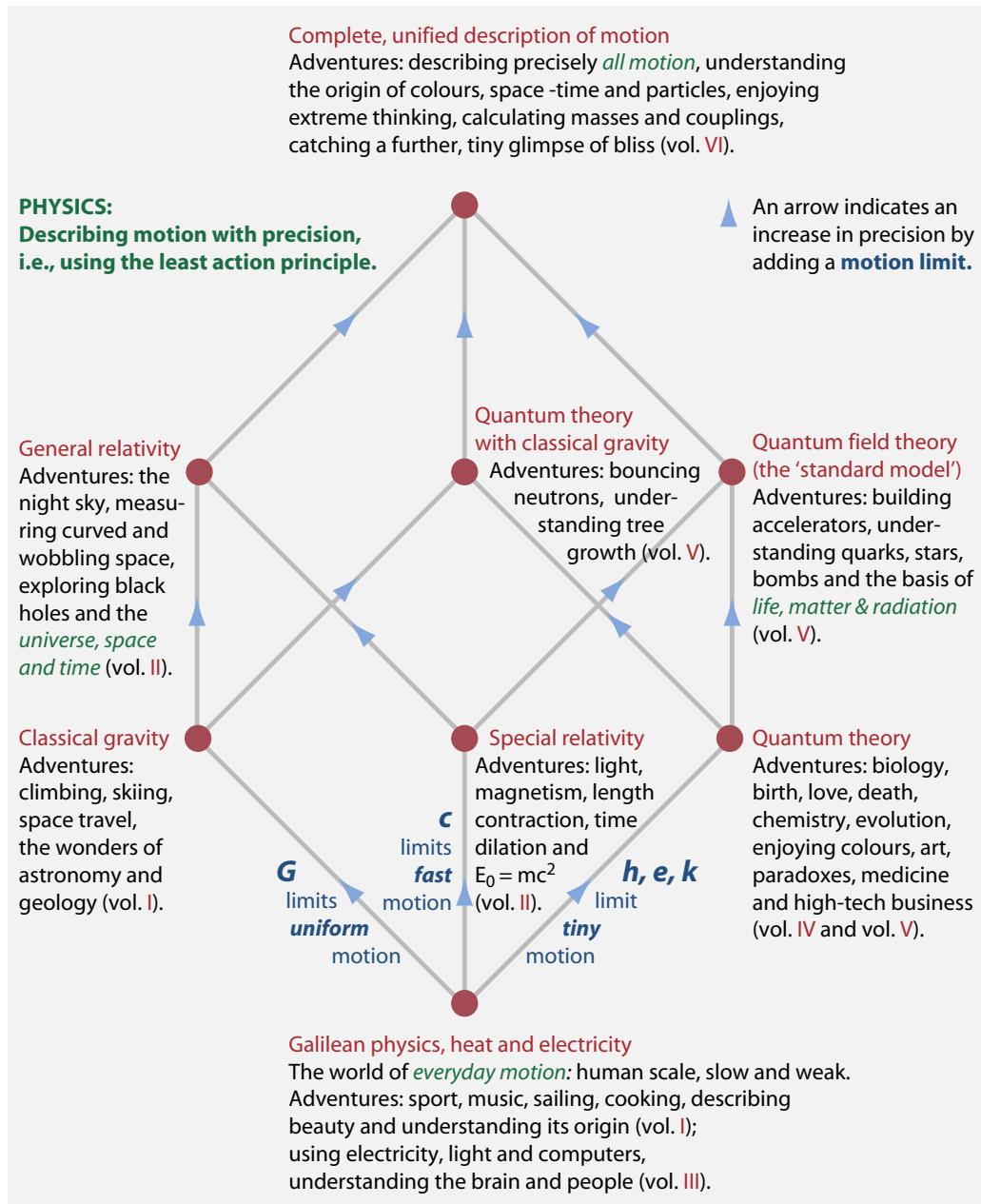
In order to be *captivating*, the text tries to startle the reader as much as possible. Reading a book on general physics should be like going to a magic show. We watch, we are astonished, we do not believe our eyes, we think, and finally we understand the trick. When we look at nature, we often have the same experience. Indeed, every page presents at least one surprise or provocation for the reader to think about. Numerous interesting challenges are proposed.

The motto of the text, *die Menschen stärken, die Sachen klären*, a famous statement on pedagogy, translates as: ‘To fortify people, to clarify things.’ Clarifying things – and adhering only to the truth – requires courage, as changing the habits of thought produces fear, often hidden by anger. But by overcoming our fears we grow in strength. And we experience intense and beautiful emotions. All great adventures in life allow this, and exploring motion is one of them. Enjoy it.

Christoph Schiller

---

\* ‘First move, then teach.’ In modern languages, the mentioned type of *moving* (the heart) is called *motivating*; both terms go back to the same Latin root.



**FIGURE 1** A complete map of physics, the science of motion, as first proposed by Matvei Bronshtein (b. 1907 Vinnytsia, d. 1938 Leningrad). The Bronshtein cube starts at the bottom with everyday motion, and shows the connections to the fields of modern physics. Each connection increases the precision of the description and is due to a limit to motion that is taken into account. The limits are given for uniform motion by the gravitational constant  $G$ , for fast motion by the speed of light  $c$ , and for tiny motion by the Planck constant  $h$ , the elementary charge  $e$  and the Boltzmann constant  $k$ .

### USING THIS BOOK

Marginal notes refer to bibliographic references, to other pages or to challenge solutions. In the colour edition, marginal notes, pointers to footnotes and links to websites are typeset in green. Over time, links on the internet tend to disappear. Most links can be recovered via [www.archive.org](http://www.archive.org), which keeps a copy of old internet pages. In the free pdf edition of this book, available at [www.motionmountain.net](http://www.motionmountain.net), all green pointers and links are clickable. The pdf edition also contains all films; they can be watched directly in Adobe Reader.

Solutions and hints for *challenges* are given in the appendix. Challenges are classified as easy (e), standard student level (s), difficult (d) and research level (r). Challenges for which no solution has yet been included in the book are marked (ny).

### ADVICE FOR LEARNERS

Learning allows us to discover what kind of person we can be. Learning widens knowledge, improves intelligence and provides a sense of achievement. Therefore, learning from a book, especially one about nature, should be efficient and enjoyable. Avoid bad learning methods like the plague! Do not use a marker, a pen or a pencil to highlight or underline text on paper. It is a waste of time, provides false comfort and makes the text unreadable. And do not learn from a screen. In particular, never, ever, learn from the internet, from videos, from games or from a smartphone. Most of the internet, almost all videos and all games are poisons and drugs for the brain. Smartphones are dispensers of drugs that make people addicted and prevent learning. Nobody putting marks on paper or looking at a screen is learning efficiently or is enjoying doing so.

In my experience as a pupil and teacher, one learning method never failed to transform unsuccessful pupils into successful ones: if you read a text for study, summarize every section you read, *in your own words and images, aloud*. If you are unable to do so, read the section again. Repeat this until you can clearly summarize what you read in your own words and images, aloud. And *enjoy* the telling aloud! You can do this alone or with friends, in a room or while walking. If you do this with everything you read, you will reduce your learning and reading time significantly; you will enjoy learning from good texts much more and hate bad texts much less. Masters of the method can use it even while listening to a lecture, in a low voice, thus avoiding to ever take notes.

### ADVICE FOR TEACHERS

A teacher likes pupils and likes to lead them into exploring the field he or she chose. His or her enthusiasm is the key to job satisfaction. If you are a teacher, before the start of a lesson, picture, feel and tell yourself how you enjoy the topic of the lesson; then picture, feel and tell yourself how you will lead each of your pupils into enjoying that topic as much as you do. Do this exercise consciously, every day. You will minimize trouble in your class and maximize your teaching success.

This book is not written with exams in mind; it is written to make teachers and students *understand* and *enjoy* physics, the science of motion.

## FEEDBACK

The latest pdf edition of this text is and will remain free to download from the internet. I would be delighted to receive an email from you at [fb@motionmountain.net](mailto:fb@motionmountain.net), especially on the following issues:

### Challenge 1 s

- What was unclear and should be improved?
- What story, topic, riddle, picture or film did you miss?

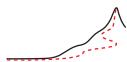
Also help on the specific points listed on the [www.motionmountain.net/help.html](http://www.motionmountain.net/help.html) web page is welcome. All feedback will be used to improve the next edition. You are welcome to send feedback by mail or by sending in a pdf with added yellow notes, to provide illustrations or photographs, or to contribute to the errata wiki on the website. If you would like to translate a chapter of the book in your language, please let me know.

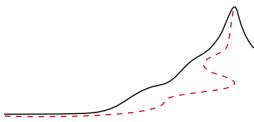
On behalf of all readers, thank you in advance for your input. For a particularly useful contribution you will be mentioned – if you want – in the acknowledgements, receive a reward, or both.

## SUPPORT

Your donation to the charitable, tax-exempt non-profit organisation that produces, translates and publishes this book series is welcome. For details, see the web page [www.motionmountain.net/donation.html](http://www.motionmountain.net/donation.html). The German tax office checks the proper use of your donation. If you want, your name will be included in the sponsor list. Thank you in advance for your help, on behalf of all readers across the world.

The paper edition of this book is available, either in colour or in black and white, from [www.amazon.com](http://www.amazon.com), in English and in certain other languages. And now, enjoy the reading.





# CONTENTS

## 7 PREFACE

Using this book 9 • Advice for learners 9 • Advice for teachers 9 • Feedback 10 • Support 10

## 11 CONTENTS

## 15 1 MINIMUM ACTION – QUANTUM THEORY FOR POETS

The effects of the quantum of action on rest 18 • The consequences of the quantum of action for objects 20 • Why ‘quantum’? 22 • The effect of the quantum of action on motion 24 • The surprises of the quantum of action 26 • Transformation, life and Democritus 28 • Randomness – a consequence of the quantum of action 31 • Waves – a consequence of the quantum of action 33 • Particles – a consequence of the quantum of action 34 • Quantum information 35 • Curiosities and fun challenges about the quantum of action 36 • The dangers of buying a can of beans 37 • A summary: quantum physics, the law and indoctrination 39

## 40 2 LIGHT – THE STRANGE CONSEQUENCES OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

How do faint lamps behave? 40 • Photons 44 • What is light? 46 • The size of photons 47 • Are photons countable? – Squeezed light 47 • The positions of photons 51 • Are photons necessary? 54 • Interference: how can a wave be made up of particles? 56 • Interference of a single photon 59 • Reflection and diffraction deduced from photon arrows 60 • Refraction and partial reflection from photon arrows 62 • From photons to waves 63 • Can light move faster than light? – Real and virtual photons 64 • Indeterminacy of electric fields 65 • How can virtual photon exchange lead to attraction? 65 • Can two photons interfere? 66 • Curiosities and fun challenges about photons 67 • A summary on light: particle and wave 69

## 72 3 MOTION OF MATTER – BEYOND CLASSICAL PHYSICS

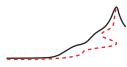
Wine glasses, pencils and atoms – no rest 72 • No infinite measurement precision 73 • Cool gas 73 • Flows and the quantization of matter 74 • Fluid flows and quantons 74 • Knocking tables and quantized conductivity 74 • Matter quantons and their motion – matter waves 76 • Mass and acceleration of quantons 79 • Why are atoms not flat? Why do shapes exist? 79 • Rotation, quantization of angular momentum, and the lack of north poles 81 • Rotation of quantons 82 • Silver, Stern and Gerlach – polarization of quantons 83 • Curiosities and fun challenges about quantum matter 85 • First summary on the motion of quantum particles 86

## 87 4 THE QUANTUM DESCRIPTION OF MATTER AND ITS MOTION

States and measurements – the wave function 87 • Visualizing the wave function: rotating arrows and probability clouds 89 • The state evolution – the Schrödinger

- equation 91 • Self-interference of quantons 93 • The speed of quantons 94 • Dispersion of quantons 94 • Tunnelling and limits on memory – damping of quantons 95 • The quantum phase 97 • Can two electron beams interfere? Are there coherent electron beams? 101 • The least action principle in quantum physics 102 • The motion of quantons with spin 104 • Relativistic wave equations 105 • Bound motion, or composite vs. elementary quantons 107 • Curiosities and fun challenges about quantum motion of matter 109 • A summary on motion of matter quantons 111
- 112 5 PERMUTATION OF PARTICLES – ARE PARTICLES LIKE GLOVES?**  
 Distinguishing macroscopic objects 112 • Distinguishing atoms 113 • Why does indistinguishability appear in nature? 115 • Can quantum particles be counted? 115 • What is permutation symmetry? 116 • Indistinguishability and wave function symmetry 117 • The behaviour of photons 118 • Bunching and anti-bunching 120 • The energy dependence of permutation symmetry 120 • Indistinguishability in quantum field theory 121 • How accurately is permutation symmetry verified? 122 • Copies, clones and gloves 122 • Summary 124
- 125 6 ROTATIONS AND STATISTICS – VISUALIZING SPIN**  
 Quantum particles and symmetry 125 • Types of quantum particles 127 • Spin 1/2 and tethered objects 130 • The extension of the belt trick 133 • Angels, Pauli's exclusion principle and the hardness of matter 135 • Is spin a rotation about an axis? 137 • Rotation requires antiparticles 138 • Why is fencing with laser beams impossible? 139 • Spin, statistics and composition 140 • The size and density of matter 141 • A summary on spin and indistinguishability 141 • Limits and open questions of quantum statistics 142
- 143 7 SUPERPOSITIONS AND PROBABILITIES – QUANTUM THEORY WITHOUT IDEOLOGY**  
 Why are people either dead or alive? 144 • Macroscopic superpositions, coherence and incoherence 144 • Decoherence is due to baths 146 • How baths lead to decoherence – scattering 146 • How baths lead to decoherence – relaxation 148 • Summary on decoherence, life and death 150 • What is a system? What is an object? 151 • Entanglement 151 • Is quantum theory non-local? A bit about the Einstein–Podolsky–Rosen paradox 152 • Curiosities and fun challenges about superpositions 155 • Why do probabilities and wave function collapse appear in measurements? 157 • Why is  $\hbar$  necessary for probabilities? 162 • Hidden variables 163 • Summary on probabilities and determinism 165 • What is the difference between space and time? 167 • Are we good observers? 168 • What relates information theory, cryptology and quantum theory? 168 • Is the universe a computer? 169 • Does the universe have a wave function? And initial conditions? 169
- 171 8 COLOURS AND OTHER INTERACTIONS BETWEEN LIGHT AND MATTER**  
 The causes of colour 171 • Using the rainbow to determine what stars are made of 180 • What determines the colours of atoms? 181 • The shape of atoms 185 • The size of atoms 186 • Relativistic hydrogen 188 • Relativistic wave equations – again 189 • Getting a first feeling for the Dirac equation 191 • Antimatter 192 • Virtual particles 193 • Curiosities and fun challenges about colour and atoms 194 • Material properties 196 • A tough challenge: the strength of electromagnetism 196 • A summary on colours and materials 197
- 198 9 QUANTUM PHYSICS IN A NUTSHELL**

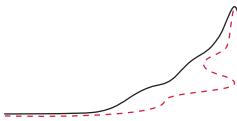
	Physical results of quantum theory <a href="#">198</a>	• Results on the motion of quantum particles <a href="#">199</a>	• Achievements in accuracy and precision <a href="#">201</a>	• Is quantum theory magic? <a href="#">203</a>	• Quantum theory is exact, but can do more <a href="#">203</a>				
<a href="#">205</a>	<b>A UNITS, MEASUREMENTS AND CONSTANTS</b>								
	SI units <a href="#">205</a>	• The meaning of measurement <a href="#">208</a>	• Planck's natural units <a href="#">208</a>	• Other unit systems <a href="#">210</a>	• Curiosities and fun challenges about units <a href="#">211</a>	• Precision and accuracy of measurements <a href="#">212</a>	• Limits to precision <a href="#">214</a>	• Physical constants <a href="#">214</a>	• Useful numbers <a href="#">221</a>
<a href="#">223</a>	<b>B NUMBERS AND VECTOR SPACES</b>								
	Numbers as mathematical structures <a href="#">223</a>	• Complex numbers <a href="#">225</a>	• Quaternions <a href="#">227</a>	• Octonions <a href="#">233</a>	• Other types of numbers <a href="#">234</a>	• From vector spaces to Hilbert spaces <a href="#">235</a>	• Mathematical curiosities and fun challenges <a href="#">238</a>		
<a href="#">239</a>	<b>CHALLENGE HINTS AND SOLUTIONS</b>								
<a href="#">247</a>	<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>								
<a href="#">263</a>	<b>CREDITS</b>								
	Acknowledgements <a href="#">263</a>	• Film credits <a href="#">264</a>	• Image credits <a href="#">264</a>						
<a href="#">267</a>	<b>NAME INDEX</b>								
<a href="#">274</a>	<b>SUBJECT INDEX</b>								





## THE QUANTUM OF CHANGE

In our quest to understand how things move,  
we discover that there is a smallest change value in nature,  
implying that motion is fuzzy,  
that boxes are never tight,  
that matter is composed of elementary units,  
and that light and interactions are streams of particles.  
The smallest change value explains why antimatter exists,  
why particles are unlike gloves,  
why copying machines do not exist,  
why probabilities are reasonable,  
and how all colours in nature are formed.



## CHAPTER 1

# MINIMUM ACTION – QUANTUM THEORY FOR POETS

“ Natura [in operationibus suis] non facit saltus.”<sup>\*\*</sup>

15th century

**C**limbing Motion Mountain up to this point, we completed three legs. We came across Galileo’s mechanics (the description of motion for kids), then continued with Einstein’s relativity (the description of motion for science-fiction enthusiasts), and finally explored Maxwell’s electrodynamics (the description of motion for business people). These three classical descriptions of motion are impressive, beautiful and useful. However, they have a small problem: they are wrong. The reason is simple: none of them describes *life*.

Whenever we observe a flower or a butterfly, such as those of Figure 2, we enjoy the bright colours, the motion, the wild smell, the soft and delicate shape or the fine details of their symmetries. However, we know:

- ▷ Classical physics cannot explain any characteristic length or time scale observed in nature.

Now, flowers and animals – but also many non-living systems – have characteristic sizes, size ranges and proportions; and they have characteristic rhythms. And indeed, classical physics cannot explain their origin, because

- ▷ The classical constants of nature – the gravitational constant  $G$ , the ideal gas constant  $R$ , the speed of light  $c$ , the vacuum permittivity  $\epsilon_0$  and the vacuum permeability  $\mu_0$  – do not allow defining length or time scales.

In fact, the classical constants do not even allow us to measure speed or force values, even though these measurements are fractions of  $c$  and  $c^4/G$ ; because in order to measure fractions, we need to define them first; however, defining fractions also requires length or time scales, which classical physics does not allow.

Without measurements, there are also no emotions! Indeed, our emotions are triggered by our senses. And all the impressions and all the information that our senses provide us are – among others – measurements. Since classical physics does not provide measurement scales, we know:

Ref. 1    \*\* ‘Nature [in its workings] makes no jumps.’



**FIGURE 2** Examples of quantum machines (© Linda de Volder).

- ▷ Classical physics does not allow understanding senses or emotions.

The reason for all these limitations is the following connection:

- ▷ Classical physics alone cannot be used to build any measurement device.

Every sense contains measurement devices. And every measurement device, like any pattern or rhythm, needs an internal scale, or, more generally, an internal measurement unit. Because classical physics does not provide any scale, classical physics does not explain how measurement devices work, not how senses work, and not how emotions appear.

To understand emotions and life, we need to go *beyond* classical physics. Take any example of a pleasant situation,\* such as a beautiful evening sky, a waterfall, a happy child or a caress. Classical physics is not able to explain any aspect of the situation: First, the colours and their origin remain mysterious. Secondly, all shapes, sizes and proportions remain mysterious. Thirdly, the timing and the duration of the involved processes cannot be understood. Fourthly, all the sensations and emotions produced by the situation remain mysterious. To understand and explain these aspects, we need *quantum theory*.

Challenge 2 s

---

\* The photograph on page 14 shows a female glow worm, *Lampyris noctiluca*, as commonly found in the United Kingdom (© John Tyler, [www.johntyler.co.uk/gwfacts.htm](http://www.johntyler.co.uk/gwfacts.htm)).

In fact, we will find out that both *life* and *every type of pleasure* are examples of quantum motion. Emotions are quantum processes.

In the early days of physics, the impossibility to describe life and pleasure was not seen as a shortcoming, because neither senses nor material properties nor scales were thought to be related to motion. And pleasure was not considered a serious subject of investigation for a respectable researcher anyway. Today, the situation is different. In our adventure we have learned that our senses of time, hearing, touch, smell and sight are primarily *detectors of motion*. Without motion, there would be no senses. Furthermore, all detectors are made of matter. During the exploration on electromagnetism we began to understand that all properties of matter are due to motions of charged constituents. Density, stiffness, colour and all other material properties result from the electromagnetic behaviour of the Lego bricks of matter: namely, the molecules, the atoms and the electrons. Thus, the properties of matter are also consequences of motion. Moreover, we saw that these tiny constituents are *not* correctly described by classical electrodynamics. We even found that light itself does not behave classically. Therefore the inability of classical physics to describe matter, light and the senses is indeed due to its intrinsic limitations.

**Vol. I, page 411**

**Vol. III, page 231**

**Vol. III, page 247**

**Vol. III, page 149**

In fact, every failure of classical physics can be traced back to a single, fundamental discovery made in 1899 by Max Planck:<sup>\*</sup>

- ▷ In nature, action values smaller than  $\hbar = 1.06 \cdot 10^{-34}$  Js are not observed.

**Challenge 3 s**

All attempts to observe physical action values smaller than this fail.<sup>\*\*</sup> In other words, in nature – as in a good cinema film – there is always some action. The existence of a smallest action value – the so-called *quantum principle* – is in complete contrast with classical physics. (Why?) Despite this contrast, the quantum principle has passed an enormous number of experimental tests, many of which we will encounter in this part of our mountain ascent. Above all, the quantum principle has never failed even a single test.

<sup>\*</sup> Max Planck (1858–1947), professor of physics in Berlin, was a central figure in thermodynamics and modern physics. He discovered and named the *Boltzmann constant*  $k$  and the *quantum of action*  $\hbar$ , often called Planck's constant. His introduction of the quantum hypothesis gave birth to quantum theory. He also made the works of Einstein known in the physical community, and later organized a job for him in Berlin. He received the Nobel Prize for physics in 1918. He was an important figure in the German scientific establishment; he also was one of the very few who had the courage to tell Adolf Hitler *face to face* that it was a bad idea to fire Jewish professors. (He got an outburst of anger as answer.) Famously modest, with many tragedies in his personal life, he was esteemed by everybody who knew him.

<sup>\*\*</sup> In fact, this story is a slight simplification: the constant originally introduced by Planck was the (unreduced) constant  $h = 2\pi\hbar$ . The factor  $2\pi$  leading to the final quantum principle was added somewhat later, by other researchers.

**Ref. 3, Ref. 4** This somewhat unconventional, but didactically useful, approach to quantum theory is due to Niels Bohr. Nowadays, it is hardly ever encountered in the literature, despite its simplicity.

Niels Bohr (b. 1885 Copenhagen, d. 1962 Copenhagen) was one of the great figures of modern physics. A daring thinker and a polite man, he made Copenhagen University into the new centre of development of quantum theory, overshadowing Göttingen. He developed the description of the atom in terms of quantum theory, for which he received the 1922 Nobel Prize in Physics. He had to flee Denmark in 1943 after the German invasion, because of his Jewish background, but returned there after the war, continuing to attract the best physicists across the world.

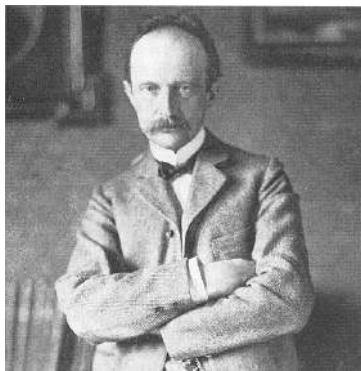


FIGURE 3 Max Planck (1858–1947)



FIGURE 4 Niels Bohr (1885–1962)

Vol. III, page 149

The fundamental constant  $\hbar$ , which is pronounced ‘atch-bar’, is called the *quantum of action*, or alternatively *Planck’s constant*. Planck discovered the quantum principle when studying the properties of incandescent light, i.e., of light emanating from hot bodies. But the quantum principle also applies to motion of matter, and even, as we will see later, to motion of empty space, such as gravitational waves.

The quantum principle states that no experiment can measure an action smaller than  $\hbar$ . For a long time, Einstein tried to devise experiments to overcome this limit. But he failed in all his attempts: nature does not allow it, as Bohr showed again and again. The same occurred to many other researchers.

Vol. I, page 248

We recall that in physics – as in the theatre – action is a measure for the *change* occurring in a system. The quantum principle can thus rephrased as

- ▷ In nature, a change smaller than  $\hbar = 1.06 \cdot 10^{-34}$  Js cannot be observed.

Therefore, a smallest action implies that *there is a smallest change value in nature*. If we compare two observations, there will always be change between them. Thus the quantum of action would perhaps be better named the *quantum of change*.

Can a minimum change really exist in nature? To accept the idea, we need to explore three points, detailed in [Table 1](#). We need to show that a smaller change is *never observed* in nature, show that smaller change values *can never* be observed, and finally, show that *all consequences* of this smallest change, however weird they may be, apply to nature. In fact, this exploration constitutes all of quantum physics. Therefore, these checks are all we do in the remaining of this part of our adventure. But before we explore some of the experiments that confirm the existence of a smallest change, we directly present some of its more surprising consequences.

#### THE EFFECTS OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION ON REST

Since action is a measure of change, a minimum observable action means that two successive observations of the same system always differ by at least  $\hbar$ . In every system, there is always *something* happening. As a consequence we find:

**TABLE 1** How to convince yourself and others that there is a smallest action, or smallest change  $\hbar$  in nature. Compare this table with the two tables in volume II, that about maximum speed on page 26, and that about maximum force on page 109.

S T A T E M E N T	T E S T
The smallest action value $\hbar$ is observer-invariant.	Check all observations.
Local change or action values $< \hbar$ are not observed.	Check all observations.
Local change or action values $< \hbar$ cannot be produced.	Check all attempts.
Local change or action values $< \hbar$ cannot even be imagined.	Solve all paradoxes.
The smallest local change or action value $\hbar$ is a principle of nature.	Deduce quantum theory from it. Show that all consequences, however weird, are confirmed by observation.

▷ In nature *there is no rest*.

**Page 15** Everything moves, all the time, at least a little bit. *Natura facit saltus.*\* True, these jumps are tiny, as  $\hbar$  is too small to be observable by any of our senses. Nevertheless, rest can be observed only macroscopically, and only as a long-time or many-particle average. For example, the quantum of action implies that in a mountain – an archetypal ‘system at rest’ – all the atoms and electrons are continually buzzing around. In short,

▷ There is motion *inside matter*.

Since there is a minimum action for all observers, and since there is no rest, we deduce:

▷ In nature *there is no perfectly straight or perfectly uniform motion*.

**Challenge 4 s**

Forget all you have learnt so far: Inertial motion is an approximation! An object can move in straight, uniform motion only approximately, and only when observed over long distances or long times. We will see later that the more massive the object is, the better the approximation is. (Can you confirm this?) So *macroscopic* observers can still talk about space-time symmetries; and *special* relativity can thus be reconciled with quantum theory.

Also free fall, or motion along a geodesic, exists only as a long-time average. So *general* relativity, which is based on the existence of freely-falling observers, cannot be

---

\* ‘Nature makes jumps.’

correct when actions of the order of  $\hbar$  are involved. Indeed, the reconciliation of the quantum principle with general relativity – and thus with curved space – is a big challenge. (The solution is simple only for weak, everyday fields.) The issues involved are so mind-shattering that they form a separate, final, part of this adventure. We thus explore situations without gravity first.

### THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION FOR OBJECTS

Vol. I, page 438

Challenge 5 s

Have you ever wondered why leaves are green? You probably know that they are green because they absorb blue (short-wavelength) and red (long-wavelength) light, while allowing green (medium-wavelength) light to be reflected. How can a system filter out the small and the large, and let the middle pass through? To do so, leaves must somehow *measure* the frequency. But we have seen that classical physics does not allow measurement of time (or length) intervals, as any measurement requires a measurement unit, and classical physics does not allow such units to be defined. On the other hand, it takes only a few lines to confirm that with the help of the quantum of action  $\hbar$  (and the Boltzmann constant  $k$ , both of which Planck discovered), fundamental units for *all* measurable quantities can be defined, including time and therefore frequency. (Can you find a combination of the speed of light  $c$ , the gravitational constant  $G$  and the quantum of action  $\hbar$  that gives a time? It will only take a few minutes.)

In short, measurements are only possible at all because of the existence of the quantum of action.

- ▷ All measurements are *quantum effects*.

When Planck saw that the quantum of action allowed defining all units in nature, he was as happy as a child; he knew straight away that he had made a fundamental discovery, even though (in 1899) quantum theory did not yet exist. He even told his seven-year-old son Erwin about it, while walking with him through the woods around Berlin. Planck explained to his son that he had made a discovery as important as universal gravity. Indeed, Planck knew that he had found the key to understanding many of the effects that were then unexplained.

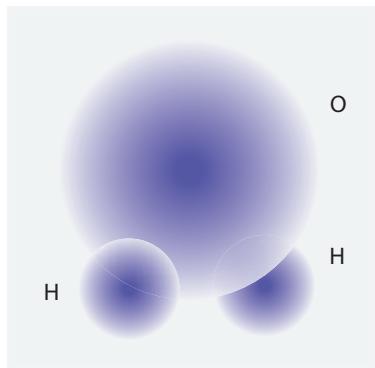
- ▷ In nature, *all times and all frequencies are due to the quantum of action*.

All processes that take time are quantum processes. If you prefer, *waiting* is a quantum effect! In particular, without the quantum of action, oscillations and waves could not exist:

- ▷ Every colour is a quantum effect.

But this is not all. Planck also realized that the quantum of action allows us to understand the *size* of all things.

- ▷ Every size is a quantum effect.



**FIGURE 5** An artist's impression of a water molecule made of two hydrogen (H) and one oxygen (O) atom.

**Challenge 6 e** Can you find the combination of  $c$ ,  $G$  and  $\hbar$  that yields a length? With the quantum of action, it was finally possible to determine the maximum size of mountains, of trees and of humans. Planck knew that the quantum of action confirmed what Galileo had already deduced long before him: that sizes are due to fundamental, smallest scales in nature.  
**Vol. I, page 338**

Max Planck also understood that the quantum of action  $\hbar$  was the *last missing* constant of nature. With  $\hbar$ , it becomes possible to define a *natural* unit for *every* observable property in nature. Together,  $c$ ,  $G$  and  $\hbar$  allow to define units that are independent of culture or civilization – even extraterrestrials would understand them.\* In short,  $\hbar$  allows understanding *all* observables. Therefore, with  $\hbar$  it is possible to draw the diagram shown in [Figure 1](#) that encompasses *all* motion in nature, and thus *all* of physics.

In our environment, the size of all objects is related and due to the size of atoms. In turn, the size of atoms is a direct consequence of the quantum of action. Can you derive an approximation for the size of atoms, knowing that it is given by the motion of electrons of mass  $m_e$  and charge  $e$ , constrained by the quantum of action? This connection, a simple formula, was discovered in 1910 by Arthur Erich Haas, 15 years before quantum theory was formulated.

- ▷ Atom sizes are quantum effects.

**Page 186** At the time, Haas was widely ridiculed.\*\* Nowadays, his formula for the size of atoms is found in all textbooks, including this one. In determining the size of atoms, the quantum of action has another important consequence:

- ▷ *Gulliver's travels* are impossible.

**Challenge 9 s** There are no tiny people and no giant ones. Classically, nothing speaks against the idea; but the quantum of action prevents it. Can you supply the detailed argument?

**Challenge 7 s**\* In fact, it is also possible to define all measurement units in terms of the speed of light  $c$ , the gravitational constant  $G$  and the electron charge  $e$ . Why is this not fully satisfactory?

\*\* Before the discovery of  $\hbar$ , the only simple length scale for the electron was the combination  $e^2/(4\pi\epsilon_0 m_e c^2) \approx 3 \text{ fm}$ ; this is ten thousand times smaller than an atom. We stress that any length scale containing  $e$  is a quantum effect, and not a classical length scale, because  $e$  is the quantum of electric charge.



FIGURE 6 Max Born (1882–1970)

But if rest does not exist, how can *shapes* exist? Any shape of everyday life, including that of a flower, is the result of body parts remaining *at rest* with respect to each other. Now, all shapes result from interactions between the constituents of matter, as shown most clearly in the shapes of molecules. But how can a molecule, such as the water molecule  $H_2O$ , shown in Figure 5, have a shape? In fact, a molecule does not have a *fixed* shape, but its shape fluctuates, as would be expected from the quantum of action. Despite the fluctuations, every molecule does have an *average* shape, because different angles and distances correspond to different energies. Again, these average length and angle values only exist because the quantum of action yields fundamental length scales in nature. Without the quantum of action, there would be *no* shapes in nature.

- ▷ All shapes are quantum effects.

All shapes in everyday life are due to molecular shapes, or to their generalizations.

The *mass* of an object is also a consequence of the quantum of action, as we will see later on. Since all material properties – such as density, colour, stiffness or polarizability – are defined as combinations of length, time and mass units, we find:

- ▷ All material properties arise from the quantum of action.

In short, the quantum of action determines the size, shape, colour, mass, and all other properties of objects, from stones to whipped cream.

### WHY ‘QUANTUM’?

Quantum effects surround us on all sides. However, since the quantum of action is so small, its effects on *motion* appear mostly, but not exclusively, in *microscopic* systems. The study of such systems was called *quantum mechanics* by Max Born, one of the major contributors to the field.\* Later, the term *quantum theory* became more popular.

---

\* Max Born (b. 1882 Breslau, d. 1970 Göttingen) first studied mathematics, then turned to physics. A professor at Göttingen University, he made the city one of the world centres of physics. He developed quantum mechanics with his assistants Werner Heisenberg and Pascual Jordan, and then applied it to scattering,

**TABLE 2** Some small systems in motion and the observed action values for their changes.

SYSTEM AND CHANGE	ACTION	MOTION
<i>Light</i>		
Smallest amount of light absorbed by a coloured surface	$1\hbar$	quantum
Smallest impact when light reflects from mirror	$2\hbar$	quantum
Smallest consciously visible amount of light	$c. 5\hbar$	quantum
Smallest amount of light absorbed in flower petal	$1\hbar$	quantum
Blackening of photographic film	$c. 3\hbar$	quantum
Photographic flash	$c. 10^{17}\hbar$	classical
<i>Electricity</i>		
Electron ejected from atom or molecule	$c. 1-2\hbar$	quantum
Electron extracted from metal	$c. 1-2\hbar$	quantum
Electron motion inside microprocessor	$c. 2-6\hbar$	quantum
Signal transport in nerves, from one molecule to the next	$c. 5\hbar$	quantum
Current flow in lightning bolt	$c. 10^{38}\hbar$	classical
<i>Materials</i>		
Tearing apart two neighbouring iron atoms	$c. 1-2\hbar$	quantum
Breaking a steel bar	$c. 10^{35}\hbar$	classical
Basic process in superconductivity	$1\hbar$	quantum
Basic process in transistors	$1\hbar$	quantum
Basic magnetization process	$1\hbar$	quantum
<i>Chemistry</i>		
Atom collision in liquid at room temperature	$1\hbar$	quantum
Shape oscillation of water molecule	$c. 1 - 5\hbar$	quantum
Shape change of molecule, e.g. in chemical reaction	$c. 1 - 5\hbar$	quantum
Single chemical reaction curling a hair	$c. 2 - 6\hbar$	quantum
Tearing apart two mozzarella molecules	$c. 300\hbar$	quantum
Smelling one molecule	$c. 10\hbar$	quantum
Burning fuel in a cylinder in an average car engine explosion	$c. 10^{37}\hbar$	classical
<i>Life</i>		
Air molecule hitting eardrum	$c. 2\hbar$	quantum
Smallest sound signal detectable by the ear	Challenge 10 ny	
Single DNA duplication step during cell division	$c. 100\hbar$	quantum
Ovule fertilization	$c. 10^{14}\hbar$	classical
Smallest step in molecular motor	$c. 5\hbar$	quantum
Sperm motion by one cell length	$c. 10^{15}\hbar$	classical
Cell division	$c. 10^{19}\hbar$	classical
Fruit fly's wing beat	$c. 10^{24}\hbar$	classical
Person walking one body length	$c. 2 \cdot 10^{36}\hbar$	classical
<i>Nuclei and stars</i>		
Nuclear fusion reaction in star	$c. 1 - 5\hbar$	quantum
Explosion of gamma-ray burster	$c. 10^{80}\hbar$	classical

Vol. I, page 335

Quantum theory arises from the existence of *smallest* measurable values in nature, generalizing the idea that Galileo had in the seventeenth century. As discussed in detail earlier on, it was Galileo's insistence on 'piccolissimi quanti' – smallest quanta – of matter that got him into trouble. We will soon discover that the idea of a smallest change is necessary for a precise and accurate description of matter and of nature as a whole. Therefore Born adopted Galileo's term for the new branch of physics and called it 'Quantentheorie' or 'theory of quanta'. The English language adopted the Latin singular 'quantum' instead of the plural used in most other languages.

Note that the term 'quantum' does *not* imply that all measurement values are *multiples* of a smallest one: this is so only in a few cases.

Quantum theory is the description of microscopic motion. Quantum theory is *necessary* whenever a process produces an action value of the order of the quantum of action. Table 2 shows that all processes on atomic and molecular scales, including biological and chemical processes, are quantum processes. So are processes of light emission and absorption. These phenomena can *only* be described with quantum theory.

Table 2 also shows that the term 'microscopic' has a different meaning for a physicist and for a biologist. For a biologist, a system is 'microscopic' if it requires a microscope for its observation. For a physicist, a system is *microscopic* if its characteristic action is of the order of the quantum of action. In other words, for a physicist a system is usually microscopic if it is *not even* visible in a (light) microscope. To increase the confusion, some quantum physicists nowadays call their own class of microscopic systems 'mesoscopic', while others call their systems 'nanoscopic'. Both terms were introduced only to attract attention and funding: they are conceptually useless.

### THE EFFECT OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION ON MOTION

There is another way to characterize the difference between a microscopic, or quantum, system and a macroscopic, or classical, one. A smallest action implies that the difference between the action values  $S$  of two successive observations of the same system, a time  $\Delta t$  apart, cannot vanish. We have

$$|S(t + \Delta t) - S(t)| = |(E \pm \Delta E)(t + \Delta t) - Et| = |E\Delta t \pm t\Delta E \pm \Delta E\Delta t| \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (1)$$

The factor 1/2 arises because a smallest action  $\hbar$  automatically implies an action indeterminacy of half its value. Now the values of the energy  $E$  and time  $t$  – but not of (the positive)  $\Delta E$  or  $\Delta t$  – can be set to zero if we choose a suitable observer. Thus, the existence of a quantum of action implies that in any system the evolution is constrained

**Ref. 6** solid-state physics, optics and liquids. He was the first to understand that the wave function, or state function, describes a probability amplitude. Later, Born and Emil Wolf wrote what is still the main textbook on optics. Many of Born's books were classics and read all over the world.

Born attracted to Göttingen the most brilliant talents of the time, receiving as visitors Hund, Pauli, Nordheim, Oppenheimer, Goepert-Mayer, Condon, Pauling, Fock, Frenkel, Tamm, Dirac, Mott, Klein, Heitler, London, von Neumann, Teller, Wigner, and dozens of others. Being Jewish, Born lost his job in 1933, when criminals took over the German government. He emigrated, and became professor in Edinburgh, where he stayed for 20 years. Physics at Göttingen never recovered from this loss. For his elucidation of the meaning of the wave function he received the 1954 Nobel Prize in Physics.



FIGURE 7 Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976)

by

$$\Delta E \Delta t \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}, \quad (2)$$

where  $E$  is the energy of the system and  $t$  is its age, so that  $\Delta E$  is the change of energy and  $\Delta t$  is the time between two successive observations.

Challenge 11 e

By a similar reasoning, we find that for any physical system the position and momentum are constrained by

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}, \quad (3)$$

where  $\Delta x$  is the indeterminacy in position and  $\Delta p$  is the indeterminacy in momentum. These two famous relations were called *indeterminacy relations* by their discoverer, Werner Heisenberg.\* In English they are often called ‘uncertainty relations’; however, this term is incorrect. The quantities are not uncertain, but *undetermined*. Because of the quantum of action, system observables have *no* definite value. There is no way to ascribe a precise value to momentum, position, or any other observable of a quantum system. We will use the term ‘indeterminacy relation’ throughout. The habit to call the relation a ‘principle’ is even more mistaken.

Any system whose indeterminacy is of the order of  $\hbar$  is a quantum system; if the

\* It is often said that the indeterminacy relation for energy and time has a different weight from that for momentum and position. This is a wrong idea, propagated by the older generation of physicists, which has survived through many textbooks for over 70 years. Just forget it. It is essential to remember that all four quantities appearing in the inequalities describe the *internal* properties of the system. In particular,  $t$  is a time variable deduced from changes observed *inside* the system, and not the time coordinate measured by an outside clock; similarly, the position  $x$  is not the external space coordinate, but the position characterizing the system.

Ref. 7 Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976) was an important theoretical physicist and an excellent table-tennis and tennis player. In 1925, as a young man, he developed, with some help from Max Born and Pascual Jordan, the first version of quantum theory; from it he deduced the indeterminacy relations. For these achievements he received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1932. He also worked on nuclear physics and on turbulence. During the Second World War, he worked on the nuclear-fission programme. After the war, he published several successful books on philosophical questions in physics, slowly turned into a crank, and tried unsuccessfully – with some half-hearted help from Wolfgang Pauli – to find a unified description of nature based on quantum theory, the ‘world formula’.

indeterminacy product is much larger, the system is classical, and then classical physics is sufficient for its description. So even though classical physics assumes that there are *no* measurement indeterminacies in nature, a system is *classical* only if its indeterminacies are *large* compared to the minimum possible ones!

In other terms, quantum theory is necessary whenever we try to measure some quantity as precisely as possible. In fact, every measurement is itself a quantum process. And the indeterminacy relation implies that measurement precision is limited. The quantum of action shows that

- ▷ *Motion cannot be observed to infinite precision.*

In other words, the microscopic world is *fuzzy*. This fact has many important consequences and many strange ones. For example, if motion cannot be observed with infinite precision, the very concept of motion needs to be handled with great care, as it cannot be applied in certain situations. In a sense, the rest of our quest is just an exploration of the implications of this result.

In fact, as long as space-time is *flat*, it turns out that we *can* retain the concept of motion to describe observations, provided we remain aware of the limitations implied by the quantum principle.

#### THE SURPRISES OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

The quantum of action  $\hbar$  implies a fuzziness of all motion. This fuzziness also implies the existence of short-time deviations from energy, momentum and angular-momentum conservation in microscopic systems. For general assurance it must be stressed that for long observation times – surely for all times longer than a microsecond – conservation holds. But in the first part of our adventure, we realized that any type of non-conservation implies the existence of *surprises* in nature. Well, here are some of them.

Since precisely uniform motion does not exist, a system moving in one dimension only – such as the hand of a clock – always has the possibility of moving a bit in the opposite direction, thus leading to incorrect readings. Indeed, quantum theory predicts that clocks have essential limitations:

- ▷ Perfect clocks do not exist.

The deep implications of this statement will become clear step by step.

It is also impossible to avoid that an object makes small displacement sideways. In fact, quantum theory implies that, strictly speaking,

- ▷ Neither uniform nor one-dimensional motion exists.

Also this statement harbours many additional surprises.

Quantum limitations apply also to metre rules. It is impossible to ensure that the rule is completely at rest with respect to the object being measured. Thus the quantum of action implies again, on the one hand, that measurements are possible, and on the other hand:

- ▷ Measurement accuracy is limited.

It also follows from the quantum of action that any inertial or freely-falling observer must be *large*, as only large systems approximate inertial motion.

- ▷ An observer cannot be microscopic.

If humans were not macroscopic, they could neither observe nor study motion.

Because of the finite accuracy with which microscopic motion can be observed, we discover that

- ▷ *Faster-than-light motion* is possible in the microscopic domain.

Quantum theory thus predicts *tachyons*, at least over short time intervals. For the same reason,

- ▷ *Motion backwards in time* is possible over microscopic times and distances.

In short, a quantum of action implies the existence of microscopic time travel. However, this remains impossible in the macroscopic domain, such as everyday life.

But there is more. Imagine a moving car suddenly disappearing for good. In such a situation, neither momentum nor energy would be conserved. The action change for such a disappearance is large compared to  $\hbar$ , so that its observation would contradict even classical physics – as you may wish to check. However, the quantum of action allows a *microscopic* particle, such as an electron, to disappear for a *short* time, provided it reappears afterwards.

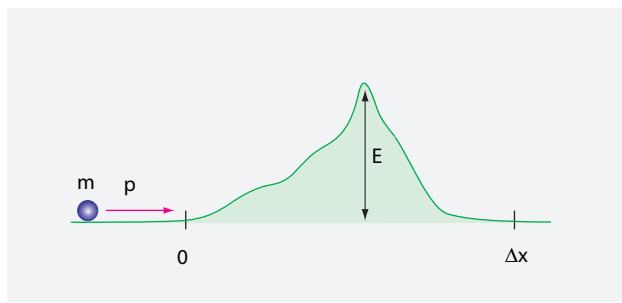
- ▷ The quantum of action implies that there is no permanence in nature.

The quantum of action also implies:

- ▷ The vacuum is not empty.

If we look at empty space twice, the two observations being separated by a tiny time interval, some energy will be observed the second time. If the time interval is short enough, the quantum of action will lead to the observation of radiation or matter particles. Indeed, particles can appear anywhere from nowhere, and disappear just afterwards: the action limit requires it. In summary, nature exhibits short-term appearance and disappearance of matter and radiation. In other words, the classical idea of an *empty* vacuum is correct only when the vacuum is observed over a *long* time.

The quantum of action implies that compass needles cannot work. If we look twice in quick succession at a compass needle, or even at a house, we usually observe that it stays oriented in the same direction. But since physical action has the same dimensions as angular momentum, a minimum value for action implies a minimum value for angular momentum. Even a macroscopic object has a minimum value for its rotation. In other words, quantum theory predicts



**FIGURE 8** Hills are never high enough.

▷ Everything rotates.

An object can be non-rotating only approximately, when observations are separated by long time intervals.

For microscopic systems, the quantum limits on rotation have specific effects. If the rotation angle can be observed – as for molecules – the system behaves like a macroscopic object: its position and orientation are fuzzy. But for a system whose rotation angle cannot be observed, the quantum of action limits the angular momentum to multiples of  $\hbar/2$ . In particular, all microscopic bound systems – such as molecules, atoms, or nuclei – contain rotational motion and rotating components.

#### TRANSFORMATION, LIFE AND DEMOCRITUS

Vol. I, page 20

At the beginning of our adventure, we mentioned that the Greeks distinguished three types of changes: transport, growth, and transformation. We also mentioned that Democritus had deduced that all these types of changes – including life and death – were in fact the same, and due to the motion of atoms. The quantum of action makes exactly this point.

First of all, a minimum action implies that cages in zoos are dangerous and banks are not safe. A cage is a feature that needs a lot of energy to overcome. Physically speaking, the wall of a cage is an energy hill, resembling the real hill shown in Figure 8. Imagine that a particle with momentum  $p$  approaches one side of the hill, which is assumed to have width  $\Delta x$ .

In everyday life – and thus in classical physics – the particle will never be observed on the other side of the hill if its kinetic energy  $p^2/2m$  is less than the height  $E$  of the hill. But imagine that the missing momentum to overcome the hill,  $\Delta p = \sqrt{2mE} - p$ , satisfies  $\Delta x \Delta p \leq \hbar/2$ . The particle will have the possibility to overcome the hill, despite its insufficient energy. The quantum of action thus implies that a hill of width

$$\Delta x \leq \frac{\hbar/2}{\sqrt{2mE} - p} \quad (4)$$

is *not* an obstacle to a particle of mass  $m$ . But this is not all. Since the value of the particle momentum  $p$  is itself undetermined, a particle can overcome the hill even if the hill is *wider* than the value (4) – although the broader it is, the lower the probability will be.

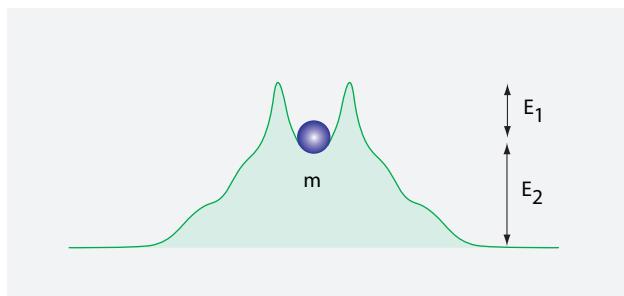


FIGURE 9 Leaving enclosures.

Page 89

So any particle can overcome *any* obstacle. This is called the *tunnelling effect*, for obvious reasons. Classically, tunnelling is impossible. In quantum theory, the feat is possible, because the wave function does not vanish at the location of the hill; sloppily speaking, the wave function is non-zero inside the hill. It thus will be also non-zero behind the hill. As a result, quantum systems can penetrate or ‘tunnel’ through hills.

In short, the minimum-action principle implies that there are no tight boxes in nature. Thanks to the tunnelling effect,

- ▷ Matter is not impenetrable.

Challenge 14 s

The penetrability of all matter is in contrast to everyday, classical observation. Can you explain why lion cages work *despite* the quantum of action?

By the way, the quantum of action also implies that a particle with a kinetic energy greater than the energy height of a hill can be *reflected* by the hill. Also this effect is impossible in classical physics.

The minimum-action principle also implies that bookshelves are dangerous. Why? Shelves are obstacles to motion. A book on a shelf is in the same situation as the mass in Figure 9: the mass is surrounded by energy hills hindering its escape to the outer, lower-energy world. But thanks to the tunnelling effect, escape is always possible. The same picture applies to a branch of a tree, a nail in a wall, or anything attached to anything else. Things can never be permanently fixed together. In particular, we will discover that every example of light emission – even radioactivity – results from this effect.

In summary, the quantum of action thus implies that

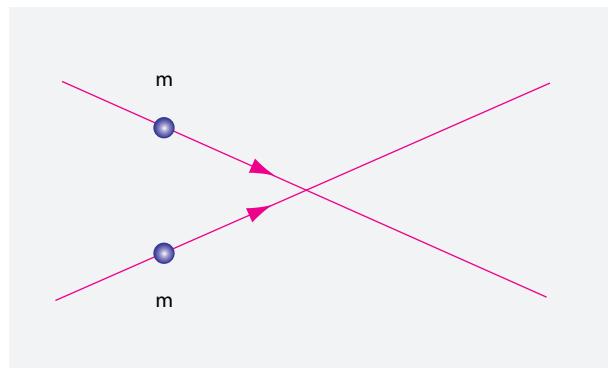
- ▷ Decay is part of nature.

Ref. 8

Challenge 15 s

Note that decay often appears in everyday life, under a different name: *breaking*. In fact, all breakages require the quantum of action for their description. Obviously, the cause of breaking is often classical, but the *mechanism* of breaking is always quantum. Only objects that obey quantum theory can break. In short, there are no stable excited systems in nature. For the same reason, by the way, no memory can be perfect. (Can you confirm this?)

Taking a more general view, *ageing* and *death* also result from the quantum of action. Death, like ageing, is a composition of breaking processes. When dying, the mechanisms in a living being break. Breaking is a form of decay, and is due to tunnelling. Death is



**FIGURE 10** Identical objects with crossing paths.

thus a quantum process. Classically, death does not exist. Might this be the reason why so many people believe in immortality or eternal youth?

**Challenge 16 s**

We will also discover that the quantum of action is the reason for the importance of the action observable in classical physics. In fact, the existence of a *smallest* action is the reason for the *least*-action principle of classical physics.

**Challenge 17 s**

A minimum action also implies that matter cannot be continuous, but must be composed of smallest entities. Indeed, any flow of a truly continuous material would contradict the quantum principle. Can you give the precise argument? Of course, at this point in our adventure, the non-continuity of matter is no longer a surprise. But the quantum of action implies that even *radiation* cannot be continuous. As Albert Einstein was the first to state clearly, light is made of quantum particles.

Even more generally, the quantum of action implies that in nature

- ▷ All flows and all waves are made of microscopic particles.

The term ‘microscopic’ (or ‘quantum’) is essential, as such particles do *not* behave like little stones. We have already encountered several differences, and we will encounter others shortly. For these reasons, there should be a special name for microscopic particles; but so far all proposals, of which *quanton* is the most popular, have failed to catch on.

**Challenge 18 s**

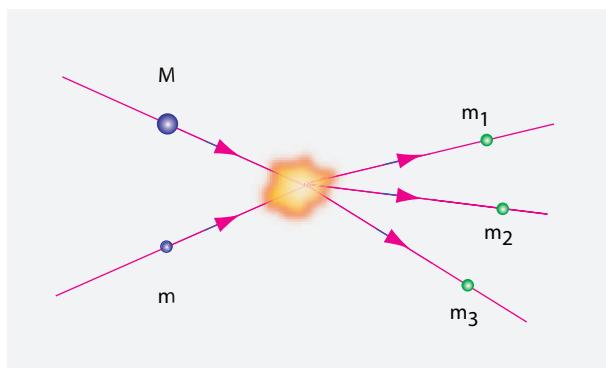
The quantum of action has several strange consequences for microscopic particles. Take two such particles with the same mass and composition. Imagine that their paths cross, and that at the crossing they approach each other very closely, as shown in [Figure 10](#). A minimum action implies that in such a situation, if the distance becomes small enough, the two particles can switch roles, without anybody being able to avoid, or notice, it. Thus, in a volume of gas it is *impossible* – thanks to the quantum of action – to follow particles moving around and to say which particle is which. Can you confirm this deduction, and specify the conditions, using the indeterminacy relations? In summary

- ▷ In nature it is impossible to distinguish between identical particles.

**Challenge 19 s**

Can you guess what happens in the case of light?

But matter deserves still more attention. Imagine again two particles – even two different ones – approaching each other very closely, as shown in [Figure 11](#). We know that if



**FIGURE 11** Transformation through reaction.

the approach distance gets small, things get fuzzy. Now, the minimum-action principle makes it possible for something to happen in that small domain as long as resulting outgoing products have the same total linear momentum, angular momentum and energy as the incoming ones. Indeed, ruling out such processes would imply that arbitrarily small actions could be observed, thus eliminating nature's fuzziness, as you may wish to check for yourself. In short,

Challenge 20 e

- ▷ The quantum of action allows transformation of matter.

One also says that the quantum of action allows particle *reactions*. In fact, we will discover that *all* kinds of reactions in nature, including breathing, digestion, and all other chemical and nuclear reactions, are due just to the existence of the quantum of action.

One type of process that is especially dear to us is *growth*. The quantum of action implies that all growth happens in small steps. Indeed,

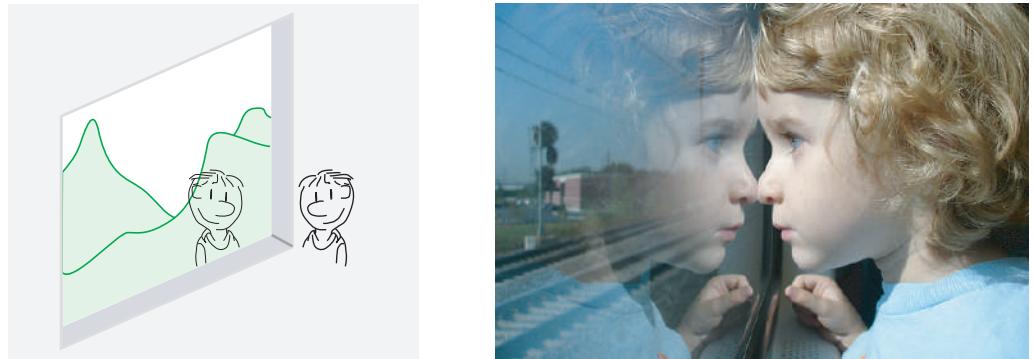
- ▷ All growth processes in nature are quantum processes.

Above all, as mentioned already, the quantum of action explains life. Only the quantum of action makes reproduction and heredity possible. Birth, sexuality and death are consequences of the quantum of action.

So Democritus was both right and wrong. He was right in deducing fundamental constituents for matter and radiation. He was right in unifying all change in nature – from transport to transformation and growth – as motion of particles. But he was wrong in assuming that the small particles behave like stones. As we will show in the following, the smallest particles behave like *quantons*: they behave randomly, and they behave partly as waves and partly as particles.

#### RANDOMNESS – A CONSEQUENCE OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

What happens if we try to measure a change smaller than the quantum of action? Nature has a simple answer: we get *random results*. If we build an experiment that tries to produce a change or action of the size of a quarter of the quantum of action, the experiment will produce, for example, a change of *one* quantum of action in a quarter of the cases,



**FIGURE 12** A famous quantum effect: how do train windows manage to show two superimposed images? (Photo © Greta Mansour)

and *no change* in three quarters of the cases,\* thus giving an *average* of one quarter of  $\hbar$ .

- ▷ Attempts to measure actions below  $\hbar$  lead to random results.

If you want to condense quantum physics in one key statement, this is it.

The quantum of action leads to randomness at microscopic level. This connection can be seen also in the following way. Because of the indeterminacy relations, it is impossible to obtain definite values for both the momentum and the position of a particle. Obviously, definite values are also impossible for the individual components of an experimental set-up or an observer. Therefore, initial conditions – both for a system and for an experimental set-up – cannot be exactly duplicated. The quantum of action thus implies that whenever an experiment on a microscopic system is performed twice, the outcomes will (usually) be different. The outcomes could only be the same if both the system and the observer were in exactly the same configuration each time. However, because of the second principle of thermodynamics, and because of the quantum of action, reproducing a configuration is impossible. Therefore,

- ▷ Microscopic systems behave randomly.

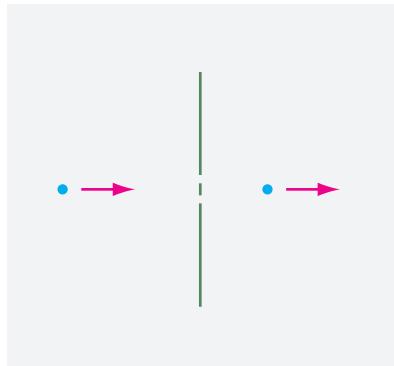
Obviously, there will be some *average* outcome; but in all cases, microscopic observations are *probabilistic*. Many find this conclusion of quantum theory the most difficult to swallow. But fact is: the quantum of action implies that the behaviour of quantum systems is strikingly different from that of classical systems. The conclusion is unavoidable:

- ▷ Nature behaves randomly.

Can we observe randomness in everyday life? Yes. Every *window* proves that nature behaves randomly on a microscopic scale. Everybody knows that we can use a train window either to look at the *outside* landscape or, by concentrating on the reflected image, to ob-

---

\* In this context, 'no change' means 'no change' in the physical variable to be measured; generally speaking, there is always some change, but not necessarily in the variable being measured.

**FIGURE 13** A particle and a screen with two nearby slits.

serve some interesting person *inside* the carriage. In other words, observations like that of Figure 12 show that glass reflects some of the light particles and lets some others pass through. More precisely, glass reflects a random selection of light particles; yet the average proportion is constant. In these properties, partial reflection is similar to the tunneling effect. Indeed, the partial reflection of photons in glass is a result of the quantum of action. Again, the situation can be *described* by classical physics, but the precise amount of reflection cannot be *explained* without quantum theory. We retain:

- ▷ Quantons move randomly.

Without the quantum of action, train journeys would be much more boring.

#### WAVES – A CONSEQUENCE OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

The quantum of action implies an important result about the *paths* of particles. If a particle travels from one point to another, there is no way to say which path it has taken in between. Indeed, in order to distinguish between two possible, but slightly different, paths, actions smaller than  $\hbar$  would have to be measured reliably. In particular, if a particle is sent through a screen with two sufficiently close slits, as illustrated in Figure 13, it is impossible to say which slit the particle passed through. This impossibility is fundamental.

We already know phenomena of motion for which it is not possible to say with precision how something moves or which path is taken behind two slits: *waves* behave in this way. All waves are subject to the indeterminacy relations

$$\Delta\omega\Delta t \geq \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta k\Delta x \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (5)$$

A wave is a type of motion described by a *phase* that changes over space and time. This turns out to hold for all motion. In particular, this holds for matter.

We saw above that quantum systems are subject to

$$\Delta E\Delta t \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p\Delta x \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (6)$$

We are thus led to ascribe a frequency and a wavelength to a quantum system:

$$E = \hbar\omega \quad \text{and} \quad p = \hbar k = \hbar \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}. \quad (7)$$

The energy–frequency relation for *light* and the equivalent momentum–wavelength relation were deduced by Max Planck in 1899. In the years from 1905 onwards, Albert Einstein confirmed that the relations are valid for all examples of emission and absorption of light. In 1923 and 1924, Louis de Broglie\* predicted that the relation should hold also for all quantum *matter* particles. The experimental confirmation came a few years later.

Page 76 (This is thus another example of a discovery that was made about 20 years too late.) In short, the quantum of action implies:

- ▷ Matter particles behave like waves.

In particular, the quantum of action implies the existence of *interference* for streams of matter.

#### PARTICLES – A CONSEQUENCE OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

Vol. I, page 354 The quantum of action, the smallest change, implies that flows cannot be arbitrarily weak. This applies to *all* flows: in particular, it applies to rivers, solid matter flows, gas flows, light beams, energy flows, entropy flows, momentum flows, angular momentum flows, probability flows, signals of all kind, electrical charge flows, colour charge flows and weak charge flows.

Water flows in rivers, like any other matter flow, cannot be arbitrary small: the quantum of action implies that there is a smallest matter flow in nature. Depending on the situation, the smallest matter flow is a molecule, an atom or a smaller particle. Indeed, the quantum of action is also at the origin of the observation of a smallest charge in electric current. Since all matter can flow, the quantum of action implies:

- ▷ All matter has particle aspects.

In the same way, the quantum of action, the smallest change, implies that light cannot be arbitrarily faint. There is a smallest illumination in nature; it is called a *photon* or a *light quantum*. Now, light is a wave, and the argument can be made for any other wave as well. In short, the quantum of action thus implies:

- ▷ All waves have particle aspects.

---

\* Louis de Broglie (b. 1892 Dieppe, d. 1987 Paris), physicist and professor at the Sorbonne. The energy–frequency relation for light had earned Max Planck and Albert Einstein the Nobel Prize in Physics, in 1918 and 1921. De Broglie expanded the relation to predict the wave nature of the electron (and of all other quantum matter particles): this was the essence of his doctoral thesis. The prediction was first confirmed experimentally a few years later, in 1927. For the prediction of the wave nature of matter, de Broglie received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1929. Being an aristocrat, he did no more research after that. For example, it was Schrödinger who then wrote down the wave equation, even though de Broglie could equally have done so.

This has been proved for light waves, water waves, X-rays, sound waves, plasma waves, fluid whirls and any other wave type that has ever been observed. There is one exception: gravitational waves have finally been observed in 2016, many decades after their prediction; it is expected that their particle-like aspects, the *gravitons*, also exist, though this might take a long time to prove by experiment.

In summary, the quantum of action states:

- ▷ If something moves, it is made of quantum particles, or quantons.

Later on we will explore and specify the exact differences between a quantum particle and a small stone or a grain of sand. We will discover that matter quantons move differently, behave differently under rotation, and behave differently under exchange.

### QUANTUM INFORMATION

In computer science, the smallest unit of change is called a ‘bit change’. The existence of a smallest change in nature implies that computer science – or information science – can be used to describe nature, and in particular quantum theory. This analogy has attracted much research in the past decades, and explored many interesting questions: Is unlimited information storage possible? Can information be read out and copied completely? Can information be transmitted while keeping it secret? Can information transmission and storage be performed independently of noise? Can quantum physics be used to make new types of computers? So far, the answer to all these questions is negative; but the hope to change the situation is not dead yet.

The analogy between quantum theory and information science is limited: information science can describe only the ‘software’ side of devices. For a physicist, the ‘hardware’ side of nature is central. The hardware of nature enters the description whenever the actual value  $\hbar$  of the quantum of action must be introduced.

As we explore the similarities and differences between nature and information science, we will discover that the quantum of action implies that macroscopic physical systems cannot be copied – or ‘cloned’, as quantum theorists like to say. Nature does not allow copies of macroscopic objects. In other words:

- ▷ Perfect copying machines do not exist.

The quantum of action makes it impossible to gather and use all information in a way that allows production of a perfect copy.

The exploration of copying machines will remind us again that the precise order in which measurements are performed in an experiment matters. When the order of measurements can be reversed without affecting the net result, physicists speak of ‘commutation’. The quantum of action implies:

- ▷ Physical observables do not commute.

We will also find that the quantum of action implies that systems are not always independent, but can be *entangled*. This term, introduced by Erwin Schrödinger, de-

scribes one of the most absurd consequences of quantum theory. Entanglement makes everything in nature connected to everything else. Entanglement produces effects that *seem* (but are not) faster than light.

▷ Entanglement produces a (fake) form of non-locality.

**Ref. 9** Entanglement implies that trustworthy communication cannot exist.

**Page 157** We will also discover that *decoherence* is an ubiquitous process in nature that influences all quantum systems. For example, it allows measurements on the one hand and makes quantum computers impossible on the other.

### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

Even if we accept that no experiment performed so far contradicts the minimum action, we still have to check that the minimum action does not contradict reason. In particular, the minimum action must also be consistent with all *imagined* experiments. This is not self-evident.

\* \*

**Challenge 21 s** Where is the quantum scale in a pendulum clock?

\* \*

**Vol. III, page 85** When electromagnetic fields come into play, the value of the action (usually) depends on the choice of the vector potential, and thus on the choice of gauge. We saw in the part on electrodynamics that a suitable choice of gauge can change the value of the action by adding or subtracting any desired amount. Nevertheless, there is a smallest action in nature. This is possible, because in quantum theory, physical gauge changes cannot add or subtract any amount, but only multiples of *twice* the minimum value. Thus they do not allow us to go below the minimum action.

\* \*

**Challenge 22 s** Adult plants stop growing in the dark. Without light, the reactions necessary for growth cease. Can you show that this is a quantum effect, not explainable by classical physics?

\* \*

**Challenge 23 s** Most quantum processes in everyday life are electromagnetic. Can you show that the quantum of action must also hold for nuclear processes, i.e., for processes that are not electromagnetic?

\* \*

**Challenge 24 s** Is the quantum of action independent of the observer, even near the speed of light? This question was the reason why Planck contacted the young Einstein, inviting him to Berlin, thus introducing him to the international physics community.

\* \*

The quantum of action implies that tiny people, such as *Tom Thumb*, cannot exist. The

**Challenge 25 s** quantum of action implies that fractals cannot exist in nature. The quantum of action implies that ‘*Moore’s law*’ of semiconductor electronics, which states that the number of transistors on a chip doubles every two years, cannot be valid for ever. Why not?

\* \*

Take a horseshoe. The distance between the two ends is not fixed, since otherwise their position and velocity would be known at the same time, contradicting the indeterminacy relation. Of course, this reasoning is also valid for any other solid object. In short, both quantum mechanics and special relativity show that rigid bodies do not exist, albeit for different reasons.

\* \*

**Challenge 26 s** Angular momentum has the same dimensions as action. A smallest action implies that there is a smallest angular momentum in nature. How can this be, given that some particles have spin zero, i.e., have no angular momentum?

\* \*

**Challenge 27 s** Could we have started the whole discussion of quantum theory by stating that there is a minimum angular momentum instead of a minimum action?

\* \*

**Challenge 28 s** Niels Bohr, besides propagating the idea of a minimum action, was also an enthusiast of the so-called *complementarity principle*. This is the idea that certain pairs of observables of a system – such as position and momentum – have linked *precision*: if one of the pair is known to high precision, the other is necessarily known with low precision. Can you deduce this principle from the minimum action?

### THE DANGERS OF BUYING A CAN OF BEANS

**Ref. 10** Another way to show the absurd consequences of quantum theory is given by the ultimate product warning, which according to certain well-informed lawyers should be printed on every can of beans and on every product package. It shows in detail how deeply our human condition fools us.

Warning: care should be taken when **looking** at this product:

- It emits heat radiation.
- Bright light has the effect to compress this product.

Warning: care should be taken when **touching** this product:

- Part of it could heat up while another part cools down, causing severe burns.

Warning: care should be taken when **handling** this product:

- This product consists of at least 99.999 999 999 999 % empty space.
- This product contains particles moving with speeds higher than one million kilometres per hour.

- Every kilogram of this product contains the same amount of energy as liberated by about one hundred nuclear bombs.\*
- In case this product is brought in contact with antimatter, a catastrophic explosion will occur.
- In case this product is rotated, it will emit gravitational radiation.

Warning: care should be taken when **transporting** this product:

- The force needed depends on its velocity, as does its weight.
- This product will emit additional radiation when accelerated.
- This product attracts, with a force that increases with decreasing distance, every other object around, including its purchaser's kids.

Warning: care should be taken when **storing** this product:

- It is impossible to keep this product in a specific place and at rest at the same time.
- Except when stored underground at a depth of several kilometres, over time cosmic radiation will render this product radioactive.
- This product may disintegrate in the next  $10^{35}$  years.
- It could cool down and lift itself into the air.
- This product warps space and time in its vicinity, including the storage container.
- Even if stored in a closed container, this product is influenced and influences all other objects in the universe, including your parents in law.
- This product can disappear from its present location and reappear at any random place in the universe, including your neighbour's garage.

Warning: care should be taken when **travelling away from** this product:

- It will arrive at the expiration date before the purchaser does so.

Warning: care should be taken when **using** this product:

- Any use whatsoever will increase the entropy of the universe.
- The constituents of this product are exactly the same as those of any other object in the universe, including those of rotten fish.

All these statements are correct. The impression of a certain paranoid side to quantum physics is purely coincidental.

Ref. 11

---

\* A standard nuclear warhead has an explosive yield of about 0.2 megatons (implied is the standard explosive trinitrotoluene or TNT), about thirteen times the yield of the Hiroshima bomb, which was 15 kilotonne. A megatonne is defined as 1 Pcal=4.2 PJ, even though TNT delivers about 5 % slightly less energy than this value. In other words, a megaton is the energy content of about 47 g of matter. That is less than a handful for most solids or liquids.

### A SUMMARY: QUANTUM PHYSICS, THE LAW AND INDOCTRINATION

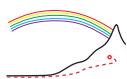
The mere existence of a quantum of action, a quantum of change, has many deep consequences: randomness, wave-particle duality, matter transformation, death, and, above all, new thinking habits.

Don't all the deductions from the quantum of action presented so far look wrong, or at least crazy? In fact, if you or your lawyer made some of the statements on quantum physics in court, maybe even under oath, you might end up in prison! However, all the above statements are correct: they are all confirmed by experiment. And there are many more surprises to come. You may have noticed that, in the preceding examples, we have made no explicit reference to electricity, to the nuclear interactions or to gravity. In these domains the surprises are even more astonishing. Observation of antimatter, electric current without resistance, the motion inside muscles, vacuum energy, nuclear reactions in stars, and – maybe one day – the boiling of empty space, will fascinate you as much as they have fascinated, and still fascinate, thousands of researchers.

**Challenge 29 d** In particular, the consequences of the quantum of action for the early universe are mind-boggling. Just try to explore for yourself its consequences for the big bang. Together, all these topics will lead us a long way towards the aim of our adventure. The consequences of the quantum of action are so strange, so incredible, and so numerous, that quantum physics can rightly be called the description of motion for *crazy* scientists. In a sense, this generalizes our previous definition of quantum physics as the description of motion related to pleasure.

**Page 167** Unfortunately, it is sometimes claimed that ‘nobody understands quantum theory’. This is wrong. In fact, it is worse than wrong: it is indoctrination and disinformation. Indoctrination and disinformation are methods that prevent people from making up their own mind and from enjoying life. In reality, the consequences of the quantum of action can be understood and enjoyed by everybody. In order to do so, our first task on our way towards completing our adventure will be to use the quantum of action to study our classical standard of motion: the motion of light.

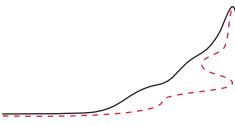
“ Nie und nirgends hat es Materie ohne Bewegung gegeben, oder kann es sie geben.  
Friedrich Engels, *Anti-Dühring*\* ”



**Ref. 12**

---

\* ‘Never and nowhere has matter existed, nor can it exist, without motion.’ Friedrich Engels (1820–1895) was one of the theoreticians of Marxism.



## CHAPTER 2

# LIGHT – THE STRANGE CONSEQUENCES OF THE QUANTUM OF ACTION

“ Alle Wesen leben vom Lichte,  
jedes glückliche Geschöpfe.

Friedrich Schiller, *Wilhelm Tell*.\*\*

Ref. 13

Since all the colours of materials are quantum effects, it becomes mandatory to study the properties of light itself. If a smallest change really exists, then there should also be a smallest illumination in nature. This conclusion was already drawn in ancient Greece, for example by Epicurus (341–271 BCE), who stated that light is a stream of little particles. The smallest possible illumination would then be that due to a single light particle. Today, the particles are called *light quanta* or *photons*. Incredibly, Epicurus himself could have checked his prediction with an experiment.

### HOW DO FAINT LAMPS BEHAVE?

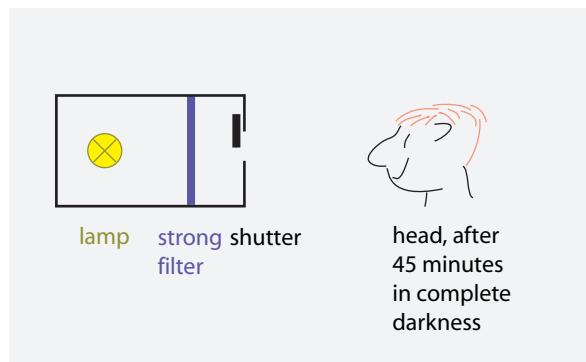
Ref. 14

Around 1930, Brumberg and Vavilov found a beautiful way to check the existence of photons using the naked eye and a lamp. Our eyes do not allow us to *consciously* detect single photons, but Brumberg and Vavilov found a way to circumvent this limitation. In fact, the experiment is so simple that it could have been performed many centuries earlier; but nobody had had a sufficiently daring imagination to try it.

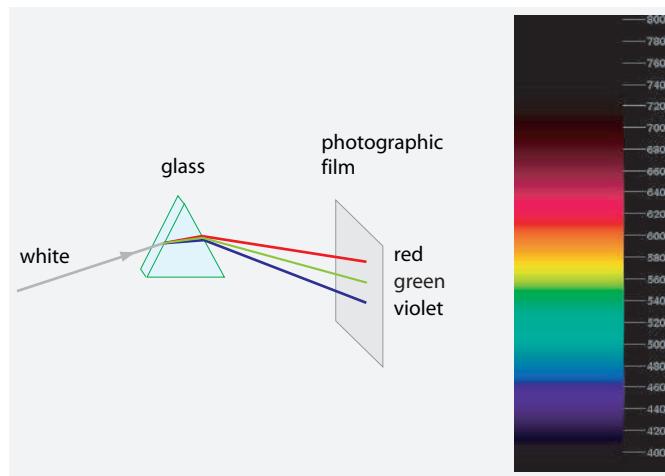
Brumberg and Vavilov constructed a mechanical shutter that could be opened for time intervals of 0.1 s. From the other side, in a completely dark room, they illuminated the opening with extremely weak green light: about 200 aW at 505 nm, as shown in Figure 14. At that intensity, whenever the shutter opens, on average about 50 photons can pass. This is just the sensitivity threshold of the eye. To perform the experiment, they repeatedly looked into the open shutter. The result was simple but surprising. Sometimes they observed light, and sometimes they did not. Whether they did or did not was completely random. Brumberg and Vavilov gave the simple explanation that at low lamp powers, because of fluctuations, the number of photons is above the eye threshold half the time, and below it the other half. The fluctuations are random, and so the conscious detection of light is as well. This would *not* happen if light were a *continuous* stream: in that case, the eye would detect light at each and every opening of the shutter. (At higher light intensities, the percentage of non-observations quickly decreases, in accordance with the explanation given.)

In short, a simple experiment proves:

\*\* ‘From light all beings live, each fair-created thing.’ Friedrich Schiller (b. 1759 Marbach, d. 1805 Weimar), poet, playwright and historian.



**FIGURE 14** How to experience single photon effects (see text).



**FIGURE 15** How does a white-light spectrum appear at extremely long screen distances? (The short-screen-distance spectrum shown, © Andrew Young, is optimized for CRT display, not for colour printing, as explained on [mintaka.sdsu.edu/GF/explain/optics/rendering.html](http://mintaka.sdsu.edu/GF/explain/optics/rendering.html).)

▷ Light is made of photons.

Nobody knows how the theory of light would have developed if this simple experiment had been performed 100 or even 2500 years earlier.

The reality of photons becomes more convincing if we use devices to help us. A simple way is to start with a screen behind a prism illuminated with white light, as shown in Figure 15. The light is split into colours. As the screen is placed further and further away, the illumination intensity cannot become arbitrarily small, as that would contradict the quantum of action. To check this prediction, we only need some black-and-white photographic film. Film is blackened by daylight of any colour; it becomes dark grey at medium intensities and light grey at lower intensities. Looking at an extremely light grey film under the microscope, we discover that, even under uniform illumination, the grey shade is actually composed of black spots, arranged more or less densely. All these spots have the same size, as shown in Figure 16. This regular size suggests that a photographic film reacts to single photons. Detailed research confirms this conjecture; in the twentieth century, the producers of photographic films have elucidated the underlying atomic mechanism in all its details.

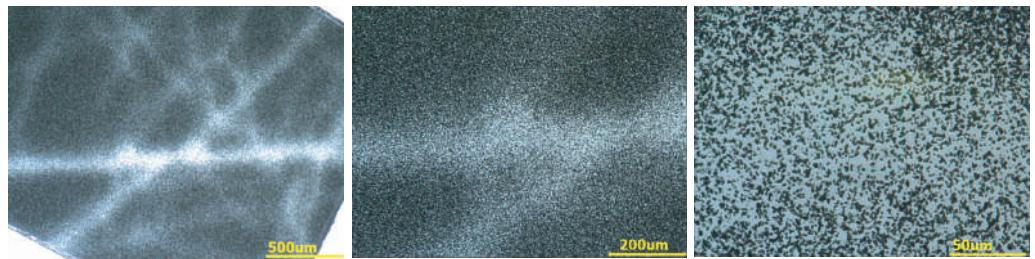


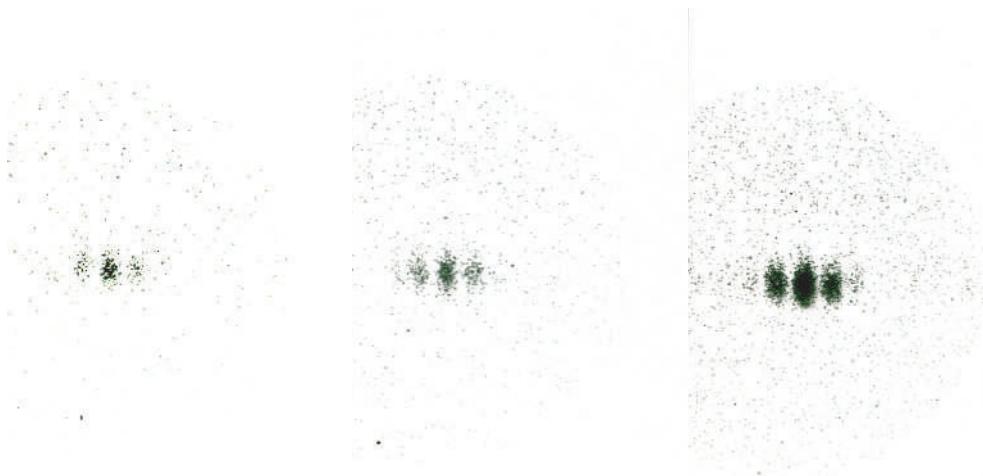
FIGURE 16 Exposed photographic film at increasing magnification (© Rich Evans).



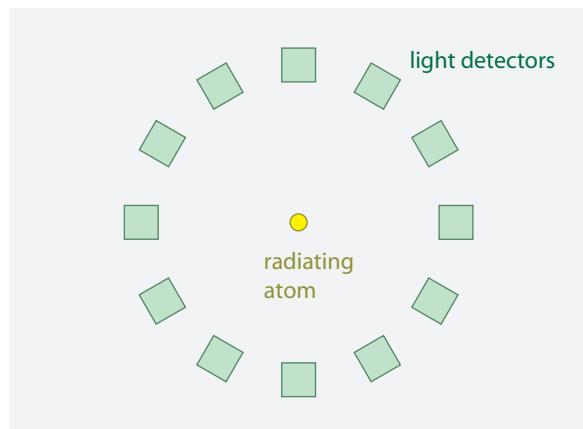
FIGURE 17 Detectors that allow photon counting: photomultiplier tubes (left), an avalanche photodiode (top right, c. 1 cm) and a multichannel plate (bottom right, c. 10 cm) (© Hamamatsu Photonics).

Single photons can be detected most elegantly with electronic devices. Such devices Ref. 15 can be photomultipliers, photodiodes, multichannel plates or rod cells in the eye; a selection is shown in Figure 17. Also these detectors show that low-intensity light does *not* produce a homogeneous colour: on the contrary, low-intensity produces a random pattern of equal spots, even when observing typical wave phenomena such as interference patterns, as shown in Figure 18. Today, recording and counting individual photons is a standard experimental procedure. Photon counters are part of many spectroscopy set-ups, such as those used to measure tiny concentrations of materials. For example, they are used to detect drugs in human hair.

All experiments thus show the same result: whenever sensitive light detectors are constructed with the aim of ‘seeing’ as accurately as possible – and thus in environments as



**FIGURE 18** Light waves are made of particles: observation of photons – black spots in these negatives – in a low intensity double slit experiment, with exposure times of 1, 2 and 5 s, using an image intensifier (© Delft University of Technology).



**FIGURE 19** An atom radiating one photon triggers only one detector and recoils in only one direction.

dark as possible – one finds that light manifests as a stream of *light quanta*. Nowadays they are usually called *photons*, a term that appeared in 1926. Light of low or high intensity corresponds to a stream with a small or large number of photons.

A particularly interesting example of a low-intensity source of light is a single atom. Atoms are tiny spheres. When atoms radiate light or X-rays, the radiation should be emitted as a spherical wave. But in all experiments – see Figure 19 for a typical set-up – the light emitted by an atom is *never* found to form a spherical wave, in contrast to what we might expect from everyday physics. Whenever a radiating atom is surrounded by many detectors, only a *single* detector is triggered. Only the average over many emissions and detections yields a spherical shape. The experiments shows clearly that partial photons cannot be detected.

All experiments in dim light thus show that the continuum description of light is

incorrect. All such experiments thus prove directly that light is a stream of particles, as Epicurus had proposed in ancient Greece. More precise measurements confirm the role of the quantum of action: every photon leads to the *same* amount of change. All photons of the same frequency blacken a film or trigger a scintillation screen in the same way. In short, the amount of change induced by a single photon is indeed the *smallest* amount of change that light can produce.

Vol. III, page 86

If there were no smallest action value, light could be packaged into arbitrarily small amounts. But nature is different. In simple terms: the classical description of light by a *continuous* vector potential  $A(t, x)$ , or electromagnetic field  $F(t, x)$ , whose evolution is described by a principle of least action, is *wrong*. Continuous functions do not describe the observed particle effects. A modified description is required. The modification has to be significant only at low light intensities, since at high, everyday intensities the classical Lagrangian describes all experimental observations with sufficient accuracy.\*

Ref. 16

At which intensities does light cease to behave as a continuous wave? Human eyesight does not allow us to consciously distinguish single photons, although experiments show that the hardware of the eye is in principle able to do so. The faintest stars that can be seen at night produce a light intensity of about  $0.6 \text{ nW/m}^2$ . Since the pupil of the eye is small, and we are not able to see individual photons, photons must have energies smaller than  $100 \text{ aJ}$ . Brumberg and Vavilov's experiment yields an upper limit of around  $20 \text{ aJ}$ .

An exact value for the quantum of action found in light must be deduced from laboratory experiment. Some examples are given in the following.

## PHOTONS

In general, all experiments show that a beam of light of frequency  $f$  or angular frequency  $\omega$ , which determines its colour, is accurately described as a stream of photons, each with the same energy  $E$  given by

$$E = \hbar 2\pi f = \hbar \omega . \quad (8)$$

This relation was first deduced by Max Planck in 1899. He found that for light, the smallest measurable action is given by the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . In short, *colour* is a property of photons. A coloured light beam is a hailstorm of corresponding photons.

Vol. III, page 149

Page 214

The value of *Planck's constant* can be determined from measurements of black bodies or other light sources. All such measurements coincide and yield

$$\hbar = 1.054\,571\,726(47) \cdot 10^{-34} \text{ Js} , \quad (9)$$

Challenge 30 e

a value so small that we can understand why photons go unnoticed by humans. For example, a green photon with a wavelength of  $555 \text{ nm}$  has an energy of  $0.37 \text{ aJ}$ . Indeed, in normal light conditions the photons are so numerous that the continuum approximation for the electromagnetic field is highly accurate. In the dark, the insensitivity of the signal processing of the human eye – in particular the slowness of the light receptors – makes photon counting impossible. However, the eye is not far from the maximum possible sensitivity. From the numbers given above about dim stars, we can estimate that humans

Ref. 16

Challenge 31 ny

---

\* The transition from the classical case to the quantum case used to be called *quantization*. This concept, and the ideas behind it, are only of historical interest today.

are able to see *consciously*, under ideal conditions, flashes of about half a dozen photons; in normal conditions, the numbers are about ten times higher.

**Challenge 32 s** Let us explore the other properties of photons. Above all, photons have no measurable (rest) mass and no measurable electric charge. Can you confirm this? In fact, experiments can only provide an upper limit for both quantities. The present experimental upper limit for the (rest) mass of a photon is  $10^{-52}$  kg, and for the charge is  $5 \cdot 10^{-30}$  times the electron charge. These limits are so small that we can safely say that both the mass and the charge of the photon vanish.

**Ref. 17** We know that intense light can *push* objects. Since the energy, the lack of mass and the speed of photons are known, we deduce that the photon momentum is given by

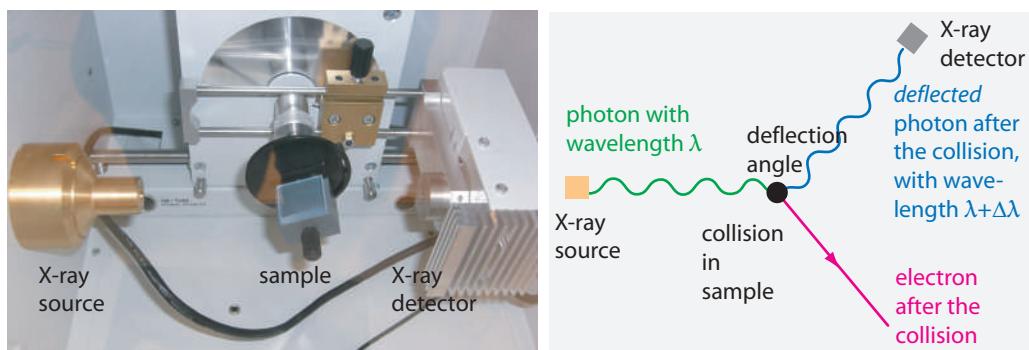
$$p = \frac{E}{c} = \hbar \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{p} = \hbar \mathbf{k}. \quad (10)$$

**Challenge 33 e** In other words, if light is made of particles, we should be able to play billiard with them. This is indeed possible, as Arthur Compton showed in a famous experiment in 1923. He directed X-rays, which are high-energy photons, onto graphite, a material in which electrons move almost freely. He found that whenever the electrons in the material are hit by the X-ray photons, the deflected X-rays change colour. His experiment is shown in [Figure 20](#). As expected, the strength of the hit is related to the deflection angle of the photon. From the colour change and the reflection angle, Compton confirmed that the photon momentum indeed satisfies the expression  $\mathbf{p} = \hbar \mathbf{k}$ .

All other experiments agree that photons have momentum. For example, when an atom *emits* light, the atom feels a *recoil*. The momentum again turns out to be given by the expression  $\mathbf{p} = \hbar \mathbf{k}$ . In short, the quantum of action determines the momentum of the photon.

**Challenge 34 s** The value of a photon's momentum respects the indeterminacy relation. Just as it is impossible to measure exactly both the wavelength of a wave and the position of its crest, so it is impossible to measure both the momentum and the position of a photon. Can you confirm this? In other words, the value of the photon momentum is a direct consequence of the quantum of action.

**Vol. III, page 123** From our study of classical physics, we know that light has a property beyond its colour: light can be *polarized*. That is only a complicated way to say that light can *turn* the objects that it shines on. In other words, light has an angular momentum oriented (mainly) along the axis of propagation. What about photons? Measurements consistently find that each light quantum carries an *angular momentum* given by  $L = \hbar$ . It is called its *helicity*. The quantity is similar to one found for massive particles: one therefore also speaks of the *spin* of a photon. In short, photons somehow ‘turn’ – in a direction either parallel or antiparallel to their direction of motion. Again, the magnitude of the photon helicity, or spin, is no surprise; it confirms the classical relation  $L = E/\omega$  between energy and angular momentum that we found in the section on classical electrodynamics. Note that, counterintuitively, the angular momentum of a single photon is fixed, and thus independent of its energy. Even the most energetic photons have  $L = \hbar$ . Of course, the value of the helicity also respects the limit given by the quantum of action. The many consequences of the helicity (spin) value  $\hbar$  will become clear in the following.



**FIGURE 20** A modern version of Compton’s experiment fits on a table. The experiment shows that photons have momentum: X-rays – and thus the photons they consist of – change frequency when they hit the electrons in matter in exactly the same way as predicted from colliding particles (© Helene Hoffmann).

### WHAT IS LIGHT?

“ La lumière est un mouvement luminaire de corps lumineux.

Blaise Pascal\*

In the seventeenth century, Blaise Pascal used the above statement about light to make fun of certain physicists, ridiculing the blatant use of a circular definition. Of course, he was right: in his time, the definition was indeed circular, as no meaning could be given to any of the terms. But whenever physicists study an observation with care, philosophers lose out. All those originally undefined terms now have a definite meaning and the circular definition is resolved. Light is indeed a type of motion; this motion can rightly be called ‘luminous’ because, in contrast to the motion of material bodies, it has the unique property  $v = c$ ; the luminous bodies, called *light quanta* or *photons*, are characterized, and differentiated from all other particles, by their dispersion relation  $E = cp$ , their energy  $E = \hbar\omega$ , their spin  $L = \hbar$ , the vanishing of all other quantum numbers, and the property of being the quanta of the electromagnetic field.

In short, *light is a stream of photons*. It is indeed a ‘luminous movement of luminous bodies’. Photons provide our first example of a general property of the world on small scales: *all waves and all flows in nature are made of quantum particles*. Large numbers of (coherent) quantum particles – or *quantons* – behave and form as waves. We will see shortly that this is the case even for matter. Quantons are the fundamental constituents of *all* waves and *all* flows, without exception. Thus, the everyday continuum description of light is similar in many respects to the description of water as a continuous fluid: photons are the atoms of light, and continuity is an approximation valid for large numbers of particles. Single quantons often behave like classical particles.

Physics books used to discuss at length a so-called *wave-particle duality*. Let us be clear from the start: quantons, or quantum particles, are *neither* classical waves *nor* clas-

\* ‘Light is the luminous movement of luminous bodies.’ Blaise Pascal (b. 1623 Clermont, d. 1662 Paris), important mathematician and physicist up to the age of 26, after which he became a theologian and philosopher.

sical particles. In the microscopic world, quantons are the fundamental objects.

However, there is much that is still unclear. Where, inside matter, do these monochromatic photons come from? Even more interestingly, if light is made of quantons, all electromagnetic fields, even static ones, must be made of photons as well. However, in static fields nothing is flowing. How is this apparent contradiction resolved? And what implications does the particle aspect have for these static fields? What is the difference between quantons and classical particles? The properties of photons require more careful study.

### THE SIZE OF PHOTONS

First of all, we might ask: what are these photons made of? All experiments so far, performed down to the present limit of about  $10^{-20}$  m, give the same answer: ‘we can’t find anything’. This is consistent with both a vanishing mass and a vanishing size of photons. Indeed, we would intuitively expect a body with a finite size to have a finite mass. Thus, although experiments can give only an upper limit, it is consistent to claim that a photon has *zero size*.

A particle with zero size cannot have any constituents. Thus a photon cannot be divided into smaller entities: photons are not composite. For this reason, they are called *elementary* particles. We will soon give some further strong arguments for this result. (Can you find one?) Nevertheless, the conclusion is strange. How can a photon have vanishing size, have no constituents, and still be *something*? This is a hard question; the answer will appear only in the last volume of our adventure. At the moment we simply have to accept the situation as it is. We therefore turn to an easier question.

**Challenge 35 s**

### ARE PHOTONS COUNTABLE? – SQUEEZED LIGHT

“Also gibt es sie doch.

Max Planck\*

We saw above that the simplest way to count photons is to distribute them across a large screen and then to absorb them. But this method is not entirely satisfactory, as it destroys the photons. How can we count photons without destroying them?

One way is to reflect photons in a mirror and measure the recoil of the mirror. It seems almost unbelievable, but nowadays this effect is becoming measurable even for small numbers of photons. For example, it has to be taken into account in relation to the laser mirrors used in gravitational wave detectors, whose position has to be measured with high precision.

Another way of counting photons without destroying them involves the use of special high-quality laser cavities. It is possible to count photons by the effect they have on atoms cleverly placed inside such a cavity.

In other words, light intensity can indeed be measured without absorption. These measurement show an important issue: even the best light beams, from the most sophist-

**Vol. II, page 181**

\* ‘Thus they do exist after all.’ Max Planck, in his later years, said this after standing silently, for a long time, in front of an apparatus that counted single photons by producing a click for each photon it detected. For a large part of his life, Planck was sceptical of the photon concept, even though his own experiments and conclusions were the starting point for its introduction.

icated lasers, *fluctuate* in intensity. There are *no* steady beams. This comes as no surprise: if a light beam did *not* fluctuate, observing it twice would yield a vanishing value for the action. However, there is a minimum action in nature, namely  $\hbar$ . Thus any beam and any flow in nature *must* fluctuate. But there is more.

A light beam is described, in a cross section, by its intensity and phase. The change – or action – that occurs while a beam propagates is given by the product of intensity and phase. Experiments confirm the obvious deduction: the intensity and phase of a beam behave like the momentum and position of a particle in that they obey an indeterminacy relation. You can deduce it yourself, in the same way as we deduced Heisenberg's relations. Using as characteristic intensity  $I = E/\omega$ , the beam energy divided by the angular frequency, and calling the phase  $\varphi$ , we get\*

$$\Delta I \Delta \varphi \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (12)$$

Equivalently, the indeterminacy product for the average photon number  $n = I/\hbar = E/\hbar\omega$  and the phase  $\varphi$  obeys:

$$\Delta n \Delta \varphi \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (13)$$

For light emitted from an ordinary lamp, so-called *thermal light*, the indeterminacy product on the left-hand side of the above inequality is a large number. Equivalently, the indeterminacy product for the action (12) is a large multiple of the quantum of action.

For laser beams, i.e., beams of *coherent light*,\*\* the indeterminacy product is close to 1/2. An illustration of coherent light is given in Figure 22.

Ref. 19

Today it is possible to produce light for which the product of the two indeterminacies in equation (13) is near 1/2, but whose two values *differ* (in the units of the so-called *phasor space* illustrated in Figure 21). Such light is called *non-classical* or *squeezed*. The photon statistics is either hyper- or sub-Poissonian. Such light beams require involved laboratory set-ups for their production and are used in many modern research applications. Non-classical light has to be treated extremely carefully, as the smallest disturbances transforms it back into ordinary coherent (or even thermal light), in which Poisson (or even Bose-Einstein) statistics hold again. A general overview of the main types of light beams is given in Figure 21, together with their intensity and phase behaviour. (Several properties shown in the figure are defined for a single phase space cell only.)

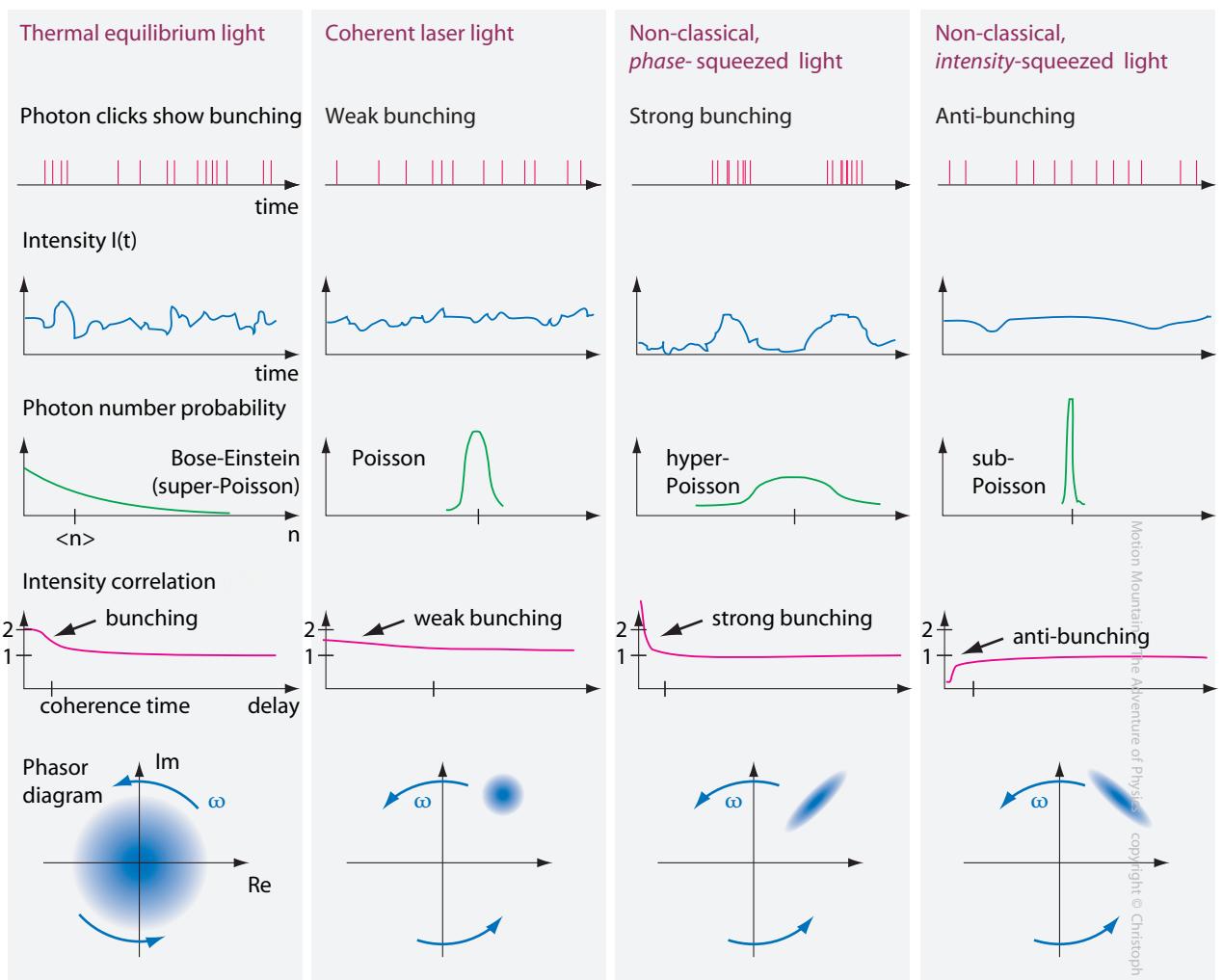
---

\* A large photon number is assumed in the expression. This is obvious, as  $\Delta\varphi$  cannot grow beyond all bounds. The exact relations are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta I \Delta \cos \varphi &\geq \frac{\hbar}{2} |\langle \sin \varphi \rangle| \\ \Delta I \Delta \sin \varphi &\geq \frac{\hbar}{2} |\langle \cos \varphi \rangle| \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

where  $\langle x \rangle$  denotes the expectation value of the observable  $x$ .

\*\* Coherent light is light for which the photon number probability distribution is Poissonian; in particular, the variance is equal to the mean photon number. Coherent light is best described as composed of photons in coherent quantum states. Such a (canonical) *coherent state*, or *Glauber state*, is formally a state with  $\Delta\varphi \rightarrow 1/n$  and  $\Delta n \rightarrow n$ .

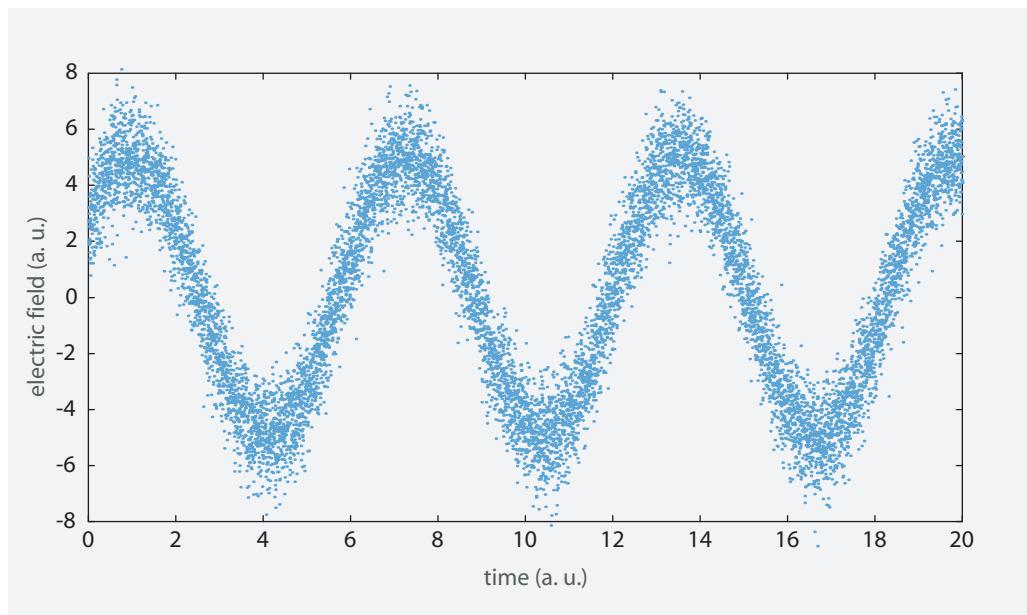


**FIGURE 21** Four types of light and their photon properties: thermal light, laser light, and two extreme types of non-classical, squeezed light.

One extreme of non-classical light is *phase-squeezed light*. Since a phase-squeezed light beam has an (almost) determined phase, the photon number in such a beam fluctuates from zero to (almost) infinity. In other words, in order to produce coherent laser light that approximates a pure sine wave as perfectly as possible, we must accept that the photon number is as undetermined as possible. Such a beam has extremely small phase fluctuations that provide high precision in interferometry; the phase noise is as low as possible.

The other extreme of non-classical light is a beam with a given, fixed number of photons, and thus with an extremely high phase indeterminacy. In such an *amplitude-squeezed light beam*, the phase fluctuates erratically.\* This sort of squeezed, non-classical

\* The most appropriate quantum states to describe such light are called *number states*, sometimes *Fock states*. These states are stationary, thus eigenstates of the Hamiltonian, and contain a fixed number of photons.



**FIGURE 22** A simple way to illustrate the indeterminacy of a light beam’s intensity and phase: the measured electric field of a coherent electromagnetic wave with low intensity, consisting of about a dozen photons. The cloudy sine wave corresponds to the phasor diagram at the bottom of the second column in the previous overview. For large number of photons, the relative noise amplitude is negligible. (© Rüdiger Paschotta)

light is ideal for precision intensity measurements as it provides the lowest intensity noise available. This kind of light shows *anti-bunching* of photons. To gain more insight, sketch the graphs corresponding to Figure 22 for phase-squeezed and for amplitude-squeezed light.

#### Challenge 36 s

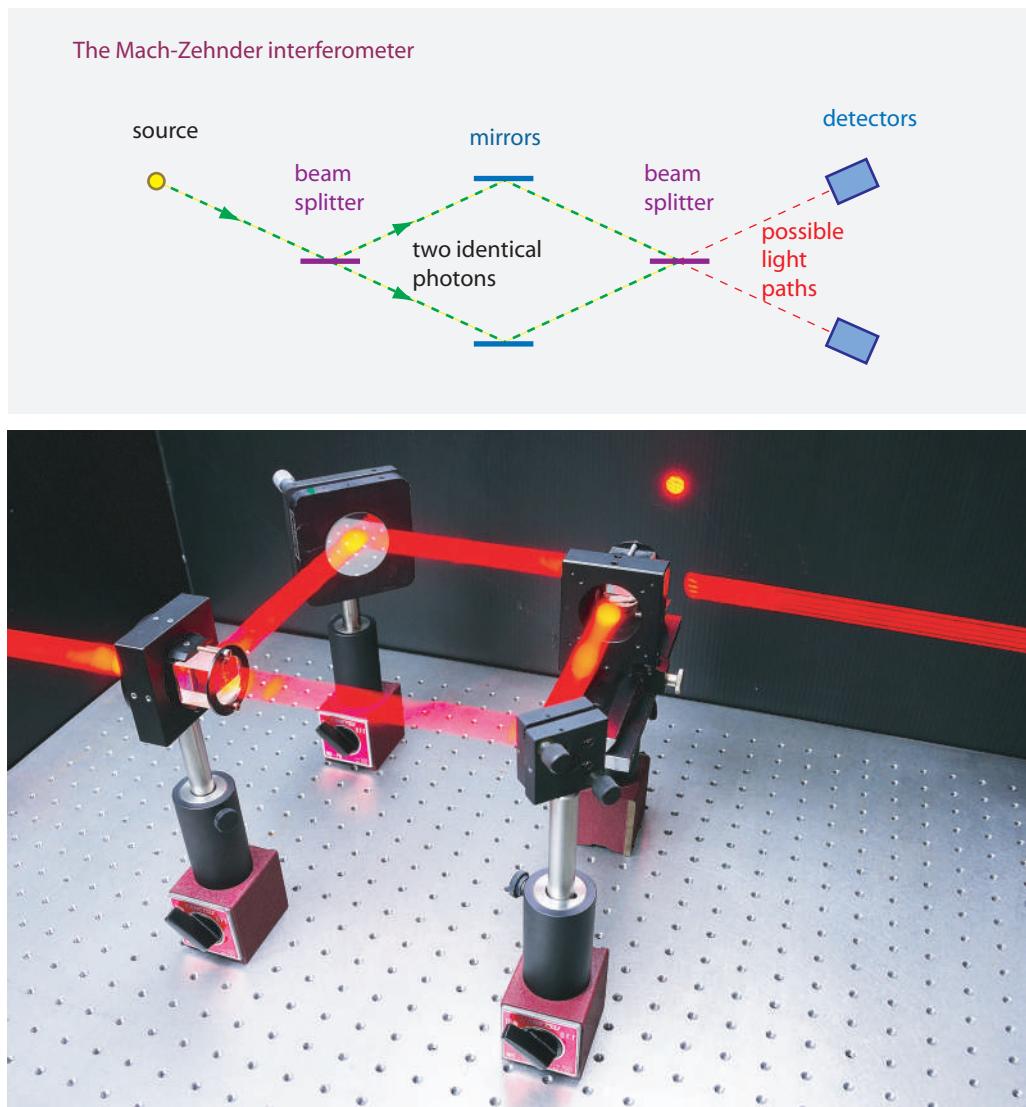
In contrast, the *coherent light* that is emitted by laser pointers and other lasers lies between the two extreme types of squeezed light: the phase and photon number indeterminacies are of similar magnitude.

The observations about thermal light, coherent laser light and non-classical light highlight an important property of nature: the number of photons in a light beam is not a well-defined quantity. In general, it is undetermined, and it *fluctuates*. Photons, unlike stones, cannot be counted precisely – as long as they are propagating and not absorbed. In flight, it is only possible to determine an approximate, average photon number, within the limits set by indeterminacy. Is it correct to claim that the number of photons at the beginning of a beam is not necessarily the same as the number at the end of the beam?

#### Challenge 37 ny

The fluctuations in the number of photons are of most importance at optical frequencies. At radio frequencies, the photon number fluctuations are usually negligible, due to the low photon energies and the usually high photon numbers involved. Conversely, at gamma-ray energies, wave effects play little role. For example, we saw that in deep, dark intergalactic space, far from any star, there are about 400 photons per cubic centimetre; they form the cosmic background radiation. This photon density number, like the number of photons in a light beam, also has a measurement indeterminacy. Can you estimate it?

#### Challenge 38 s



**FIGURE 23** The Mach-Zehnder interferometer and a practical realization, about 0.5 m in size (© Félix Dieu and Gaël Osowiecki).

In short, unlike pebbles, *photons are countable, but their number is not fixed*. And this is not the only difference between photons and pebbles.

#### THE POSITIONS OF PHOTONS

Where is a photon when it moves in a beam of light? Quantum theory gives a simple answer: nowhere in particular. This is proved most spectacularly by experiments with interferometers, such as the basic interferometer shown in [Figure 23](#). Interferometers show that even a beam made of a *single* photon can be split, led along two different paths, and then recombined. The resulting interference shows that the single photon cannot be

Challenge 39 e

Page 49

said to have taken either of the two paths. If one of the two paths is blocked, the pattern on the screen changes. In other words, somehow the photon must have taken both paths at the same time. Photons cannot be localized: they have no position.\*

We come to the conclusion that macroscopic light pulses have paths, but the individual photons in it do not. Photons have neither position nor paths. Only large numbers of photons can have positions and paths, and then only approximately.

The impossibility of localizing photons can be quantified. Interference shows that it is impossible to localize photons in the direction *transverse* to the motion. It might seem less difficult to localize photons *along* the direction of motion, when it is part of a light pulse, but this is a mistake. The quantum of action implies that the indeterminacy in the longitudinal position is given at least by the wavelength of the light. Can you confirm this? It turns out that photons can only be localized within a *coherence length*. In fact, the transversal and the longitudinal coherence length differ in the general case. The longitudinal coherence length (divided by  $c$ ) is also called temporal coherence, or simply, the *coherence time*. It is also indicated in Figure 21. The impossibility of localizing photons is a consequence of the quantum of action. For example, the transverse coherence length is due to the indeterminacy of the transverse momentum; the action values for paths leading to points separated by less than a coherence length differ by less than the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . Whenever a photon is detected somewhere, e.g., by absorption, a *precise* statement on its direction or its origin *cannot* be made. Sometimes, in special cases, there can be a high probability for a certain direction or source, though.

Lack of localisation means that photons *cannot* be simply visualized as short wave trains. For example, we can increase the coherence length by sending light through a narrow filter. Photons are truly *unlocalizable* entities, specific to the quantum world. Photons are neither little stones nor little wave packets. Conversely, ‘light path’, ‘light pulse position’ and ‘coherence’ are properties of a photon ensemble, and do *not* apply to a single photon.

Whenever photons can *almost* be localized along their direction of motion, as in coherent light, we can ask how photons are lined up, one after the other, in a light beam. Of course, we have just seen that it does not make sense to speak of their *precise* position. But do photons in a perfect beam arrive at almost-regular intervals?

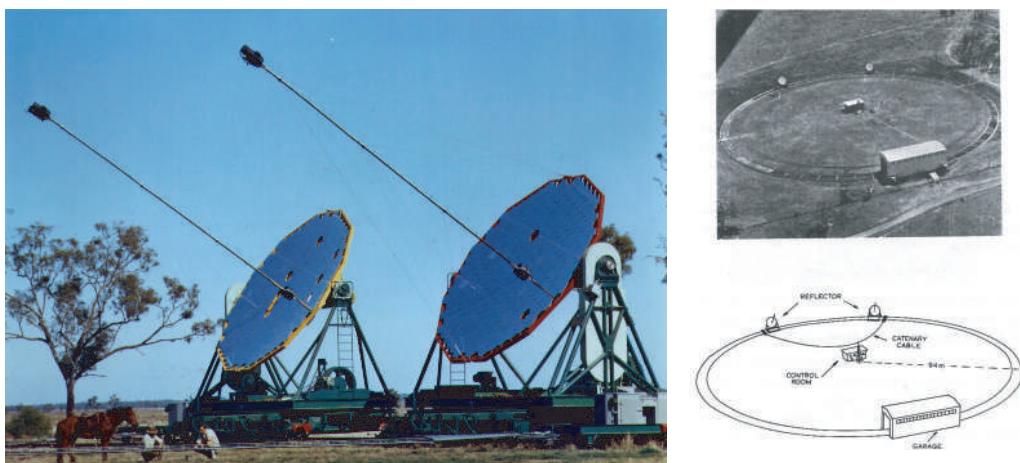
Ref. 20

To the shame of physicists, the study of photon correlations was initiated by two astronomers, Robert Hanbury Brown and Richard Twiss, in 1956, and met with several years of disbelief. They varied the transversal distance of the two detectors shown in Figure 24 – from a few to 188 m – and measured the intensity correlations between them. Hanbury Brown and Twiss found that the intensity fluctuations within the volume of coherence are correlated. Thus the photons themselves are correlated. With this experiment, they were able to measure the diameter of numerous distant stars.

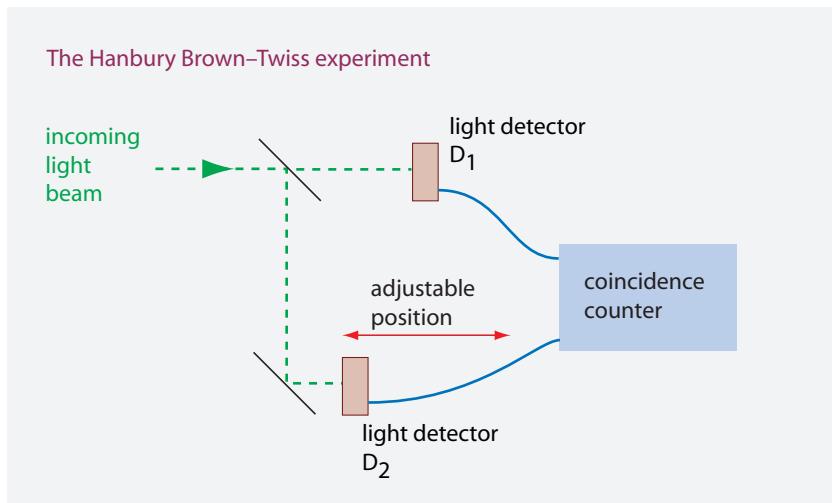
Inspired by the success of Hanbury Brown and Twiss, researchers developed a simple method to measure the probability that a second photon in a light beam arrives at a given time after the first one. They simply split the beam, put one detector in the first branch, and varied the position of a second detector in the other branch. The set-up is sketched in Figure 25. Such an experiment is nowadays called a *Hanbury Brown Twiss experiment*.

---

\* We cannot avoid this conclusion by saying that photons are *split* at the beam splitter: if we place a detector in each arm, we find that they never detect a photon at the same time. Photons cannot be divided.



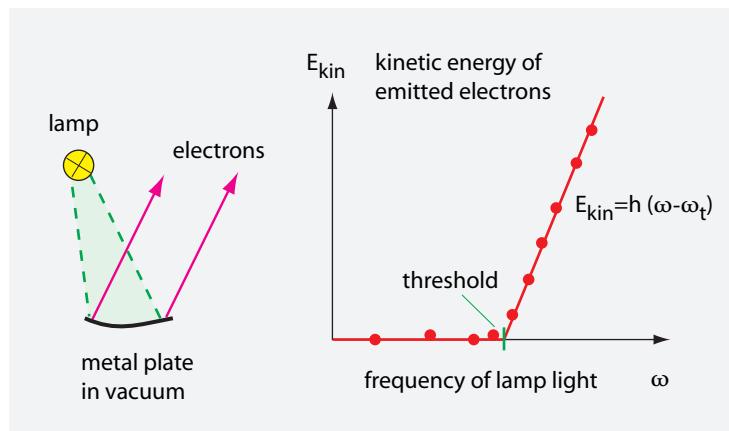
**FIGURE 24** The original experimental set-up with which Hanbury Brown and Twiss measured stellar diameters at Narrabri in Australia. The distance between the two light collectors could be changed by moving them on rails. The light detectors are at the end of the poles and each of them, as they wrote, ‘collected light as rain in a bucket.’ (© John Davis).



**FIGURE 25** How to measure photon statistics with an electronic intensity correlator or coincidence counter, the variation being measured by varying the position of a detector.

One finds that, for coherent light within the volume of coherence, the clicks in the two counters – and thus the photons themselves – are *correlated*. To be more precise, such experiments show that whenever the first photon hits, the second photon is most likely to hit just afterwards. Thus, photons in light beams are *bunched*. Bunching is one of the many results showing that photons are quantons, that they are indeed necessary to describe light, and that they are unlocalizable entities. As we will see below, the result also implies that photons are bosons.

Every light beam has an upper time limit for bunching: the *coherence time*. For times longer than the coherence time, the probability for bunching is low, and independent of the time interval, as shown in Figure 25. The coherence time characterizes every light



**FIGURE 26** The kinetic energy of electrons emitted in the photoelectric effect.

Ref. 21

Page 49

beam. In fact, it is often easier to think in terms of the *coherence length* of a light beam. For thermal light, the coherence length is only a few micrometres: a small multiple of the wavelength. The largest coherence lengths, of over 300 000 km, are obtained with research lasers that have an extremely narrow laser bandwidth of just 1 Hz. Interestingly, coherent light is even found in nature: several special stars have been found to emit it.

Although the intensity of a good laser beam is almost constant, the photons do not arrive at regular intervals. Even the best laser light shows bunching, though with different statistics and to a lesser degree than lamp light, as illustrated in Figure 21. Light whose photons arrive regularly, thus exhibiting so-called (*photon*) *anti-bunching*, is obviously non-classical in the sense defined above; such light can be produced only by special experimental arrangements. Extreme examples of this phenomenon are being investigated at present by several research groups aiming to construct light sources that emit one photon at a time, at regular time intervals, as reliably as possible. In short, we can state that the precise photon statistics in a light beam depends on the mechanism of the light source.

In summary, experiments force us to conclude that light is made of photons, but also that photons cannot be localized in light beams. It makes no sense to talk about the position of a photon in general; the idea makes sense only in some special situations, and then only approximately and as a statistical average.

#### ARE PHOTONS NECESSARY?

In light of the results uncovered so far, the answer to the above question is obvious. But the issue is tricky. In textbooks, the *photoelectric effect* is usually cited as the first and most obvious experimental proof of the existence of photons. In 1887, Heinrich Hertz observed that for certain metals, such as lithium or caesium, incident ultraviolet light leads to charging of the metal. Later studies of the effect showed that the light causes emission of electrons, and that the energy of the ejected electrons does not depend on the intensity of the light, but only on the difference between  $\hbar$  times its frequency and a material-dependent threshold energy. Figure 26 summarizes the experiment and the measurements.

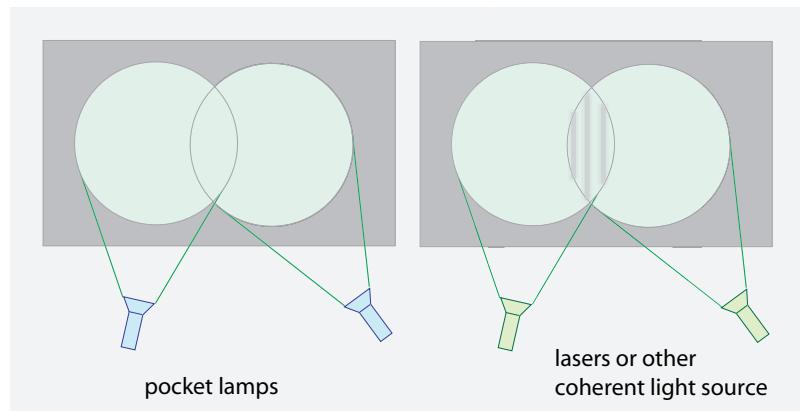
In classical physics, the photoelectric effect is difficult to explain. But in 1905, Albert Ref. 22 Einstein deduced the measurements from the assumption that light is made of photons of energy  $E = \hbar\omega$ . He imagined that this energy is used partly to take the electron over the threshold, and partly to give it kinetic energy. More photons only lead to more electrons, not to faster ones. In 1921, Einstein received the Nobel Prize for the explanation of the photoelectric effect. But Einstein was a *genius*: he deduced the correct result by a somewhat incorrect reasoning. The (small) mistake was the assumption that a classical, continuous light beam would produce a different effect. In fact, it is easy to see that a classical, continuous electromagnetic field interacting with discrete matter, made of discrete atoms containing discrete electrons, would lead to exactly the same result, as long as the motion of electrons is described by quantum theory. Several researchers confirmed Ref. 23 this early in the twentieth century. The photoelectric effect by itself does *not* imply the existence of photons.

Indeed, many researchers in the past were unconvinced that the photoelectric effect shows the existence of photons. Historically, the most important argument for the *necessity* of light quanta was given by Henri Poincaré. In 1911 and 1912, aged 57 and only a few months before his death, he published two influential papers proving that the radiation law of black bodies – in which the quantum of action had been discovered by Max Planck Ref. 24 – requires the existence of photons. He also showed that the amount of radiation emitted by a hot body is *finite* only because of the *quantum* nature of the processes leading to light emission. A description of these processes in terms of classical electrodynamics would lead to (almost) *infinite* amounts of radiated energy. Poincaré’s two influential papers convinced most physicists that it was worthwhile to study quantum phenomena in more detail. Poincaré did not know about the action limit  $S \geq \hbar$ ; yet his argument is based on the observation that light of a given frequency has a minimum intensity, namely a single photon. Such a one-photon beam may be split into two beams, for example by using a half-silvered mirror. However, taken together, those two beams never contain more than a single photon.

Another interesting experiment that requires photons is the observation of ‘molecules Ref. 25 of photons’. In 1995, Jacobson et al. predicted that the de Broglie wavelength of a *packet* of photons could be observed. According to quantum theory, the packet wavelength is given by the wavelength of a single photon divided by the number of photons in the packet. The team argued that the packet wavelength could be observable if such a packet could be split and recombined without destroying the cohesion within it. In 1999, this effect was indeed observed by de Pádua and his research group in Brazil. They used a careful set-up with a nonlinear crystal to create what they call a *biphoton*, and observed its interference properties, finding a reduction in the effective wavelength by the predicted factor of two. Since then, packages with three and even four entangled photons have been created and Ref. 26 observed.

Yet another argument for the necessity of photons is the above-mentioned recoil felt Ref. 43 by atoms emitting light. The recoil measured in these cases is best explained by the emission of a photon in a particular direction. In contrast, classical electrodynamics predicts the emission of a spherical wave, with no preferred direction.

Obviously, the observation of *non-classical light*, also called *squeezed light*, also argues Ref. 49 for the existence of photons, as squeezed light proves that photons are indeed an *intrinsic* aspect of light, necessary even when interactions with matter play no role. The same is



**FIGURE 27** Two situations in which light crosses light: different light sources lead to different results.

true for the Hanbury Brown–Twiss effect.

Finally, the spontaneous decay of excited atomic states also requires the existence of photons. This cannot be explained by a continuum description of light.

In summary, the concept of a photon is indeed necessary for a precise description of light; but the details are often subtle, as the properties of photons are unusual and require a change in our habits of thought. To avoid these issues, most textbooks stop discussing photons after coming to the photoelectric effect. This is a pity, as it is only then that things get interesting. Ponder the following. Obviously, all electromagnetic fields are made of photons. At present, photons can be counted for gamma rays, X-rays, ultraviolet light, visible light and infrared light. However, for lower frequencies, such as radio waves, photons have not yet been detected. Can you imagine what would be necessary to count the photons emitted from a radio station? This issue leads directly to the most important question of all:

Challenge 40 s

#### INTERFERENCE: HOW CAN A WAVE BE MADE UP OF PARTICLES?

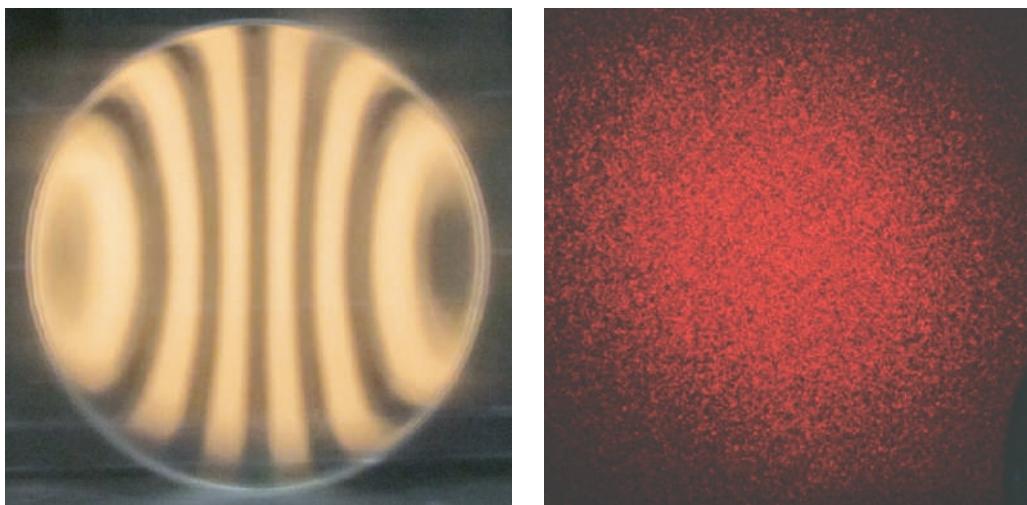
“ Die ganzen fünfzig Jahre bewusster Grübelei haben mich der Antwort auf die Frage ‘Was sind Lichtquanten?’ nicht näher gebracht. Heute glaubt zwar jeder Lump er wisse es, aber er täuscht sich. ”

Albert Einstein, 1951 \*

If a light wave is made of particles, we must be able to explain each and every wave property in terms of photons. The experiments mentioned above already hint that this is possible only because photons are *quantum* particles. Let us take a more detailed look at this connection.

Light can *cross* other light undisturbed, for example when the light beams from two pocket lamps shine through each other. This observation is not hard to explain with

\* ‘Fifty years of conscious brooding have not brought me nearer to the answer to the question ‘What are light quanta?’ Nowadays every bounder thinks he knows it, but he is wrong.’ Einstein wrote this a few years before his death in a letter to Michele Besso.  
Ref. 28



**FIGURE 28** Examples of interference patterns that appear when coherent light beams cross: the interference produced by a self-made parabolic telescope mirror of 27 cm diameter, and a speckle laser pattern on a rough surface (© Mel Bartels, Epzcaw).

Vol. V, page 131

photons; since photons do not interact with each other, and are point-like, they ‘never’ hit each other. In fact, there *is* an extremely small positive probability for their interaction, as we will find out later, but this effect is not observable in everyday life.

But if two *coherent* light beams, i.e., two light beams of identical frequency and fixed phase relation cross, we observe alternating bright and dark regions: so-called *interference fringes*. The schematic set-up is shown in Figure 27. Examples of actual interference effects are given in Figure 28 and Figure 29. How do these interference fringes appear?\* How can it be that photons are not detected in the dark regions? We already know the only possible answer: the brightness at a given place corresponds to the *probability* that a photon will arrive there. The fringes imply:

- ▷ Photons behave like moving little *arrows*.

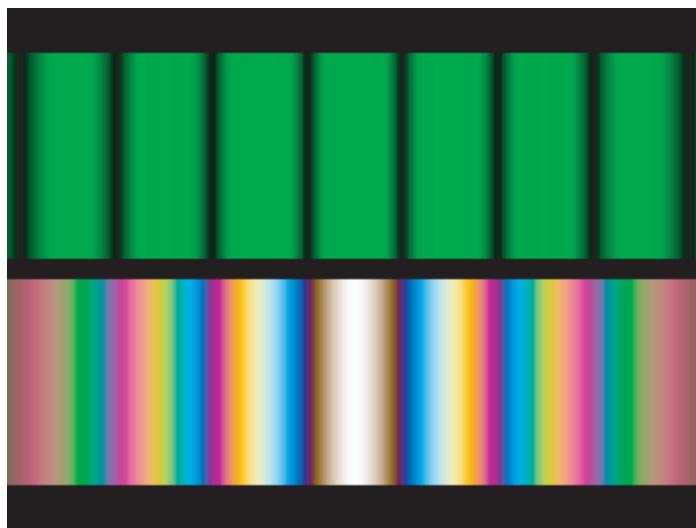
Some further thought leads to the following description:

- The arrow is always perpendicular to the direction of motion.
- The arrow’s direction stays fixed in space when the photons move.
- The length of an arrow shrinks with the square of the distance travelled.
- *The probability of a photon arriving somewhere is given by the square of an arrow.*
- *The final arrow is the sum of all the arrows arriving there by all possible paths.*
- Photons emitted by single-coloured sources are emitted with arrows of constant length pointing in the direction *wt*; in other words, such sources spit out photons with a *rotating mouth*.
- Photons emitted by incoherent sources – e.g., thermal sources, such as pocket lamps – are emitted with arrows of constant length pointing in *random* directions.

---

\* If lasers are used, fringes can only be observed if the two beams are derived from a single beam by splitting, or if two expensive high-precision lasers are used. (Why?)

Challenge 41 s



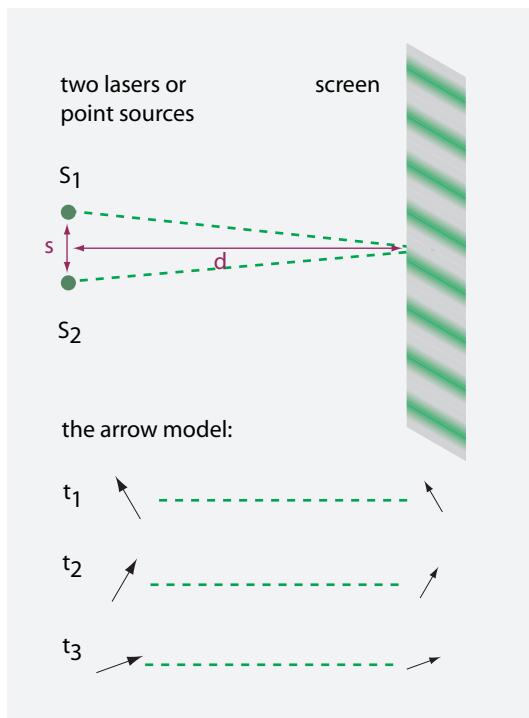
**FIGURE 29** Top: calculated interference patterns – and indistinguishable from observed ones under ideal, “textbook” conditions – produced by two parallel narrow slits illuminated with green light and with white light. Bottom: two Gaussian beams interfering at an angle (© Dietrich Zawischa, Rüdiger Paschotta).

With this simple model\* we can explain the wave behaviour of light. In particular, we can describe the interference stripes seen in laser experiments, as shown schematically in Figure 30. You can check that in some regions the two arrows travelling through the two slits add up to zero *for all times*. No photons are detected there: those regions are black. In other regions, the arrows always add up to the maximal value. These regions are always bright. Regions in between have intermediate shades. Obviously, in the case of usual pocket lamps, shown in the left-hand diagram of Figure 27, the brightness in the common region also behaves as expected: the averages simply add up.

Obviously, the photon model implies that an interference pattern is built up as the sum of a large number of single-photon hits. Using low-intensity beams, we should therefore be able to see how these little spots slowly build up an interference pattern by accumulating in the bright regions and never hitting the dark regions. This is indeed the case, as

---

\* The model gives a correct description of light except that it neglects polarization. To add polarization, it is necessary to combine arrows that rotate in both senses around the direction of motion.



**FIGURE 30** Interference and the description of light with arrows (at three instants of time).

[Page 43](#) we have seen earlier on. All experiments confirm this description.

In other words, interference is the superposition of coherent light fields or, more generally, of coherent electromagnetic fields. Coherent light fields have specific, more regular photon behaviour, than incoherent light fields. We will explore the details of photon statistics in more detail shortly.

In summary, photons are quantum particles. Quantum particles can produce interference patterns – and all other wave effects – when they appear in large numbers, because they are described by an arrow whose length squared gives the probability for its detection.

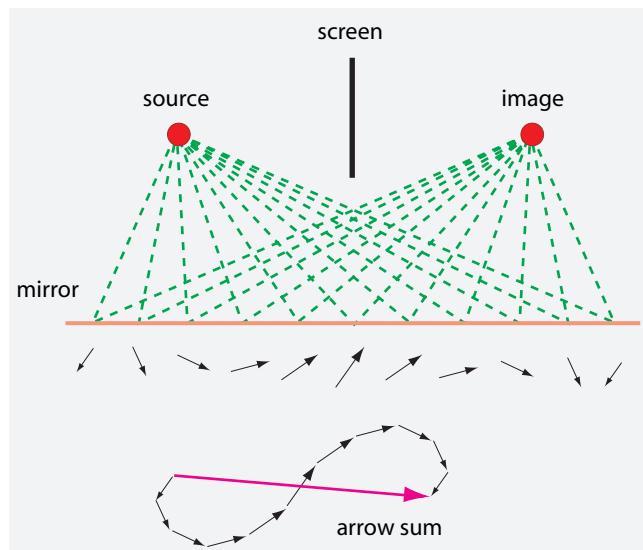
#### INTERFERENCE OF A SINGLE PHOTON

It is important to point out that interference between two light beams is *not* the result of two different photons cancelling each other out or being added together. Such cancellation would contradict conservation of energy and momentum. Interference is an effect applicable to each photon separately – as shown in the previous section – because each photon is spread out over the whole set-up: each photon takes all possible paths. As Paul Dirac stressed:

[Ref. 29](#)

- ▷ Each photon interferes only with itself.

Interference of a photon with itself only occurs because photons are quantons, and not classical particles.



**FIGURE 31** Light reflected by a mirror, and the corresponding arrows (at an instant of time).

Page 51

Dirac's oft-quoted statement leads to a famous paradox: if a photon can interfere only with itself, how can two laser beams from two different lasers interfere with each other? The answer given by quantum physics is simple but strange: in the region where the beams interfere – as mentioned above – it is impossible to say from which source a photon has come. The photons in the crossing region *cannot* be said to come from a specific source. Photons, also in the interference region, are quantons, and they indeed interfere only with themselves.

Another description of the situation is the following:

- ▷ A photon interferes only within its volume of coherence. And in that volume, it is impossible to distinguish photons.

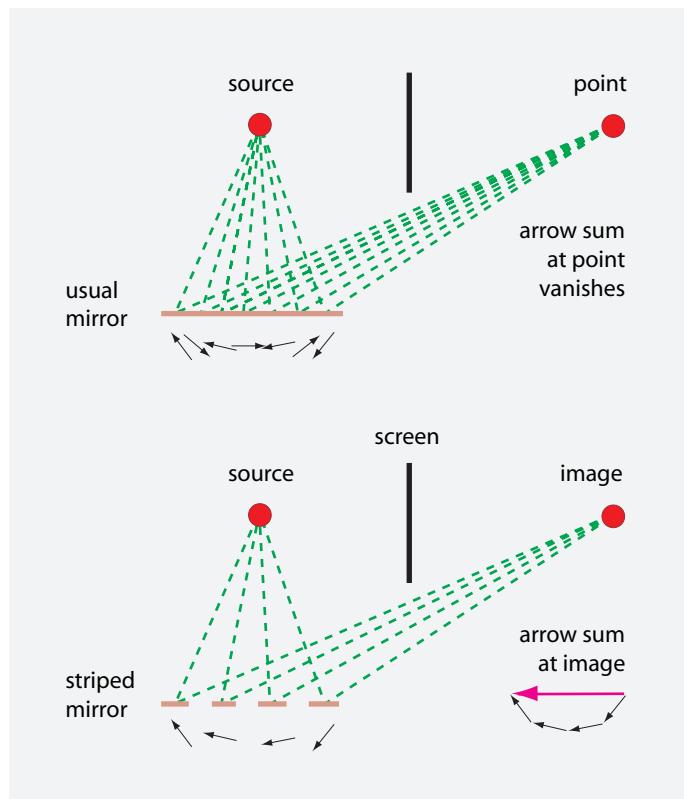
Page 66

In the coherence volume formed by the longitudinal and transversal coherence length – sometimes also called a *phase space cell* – we cannot completely say that light is a flow of photons, because a flow cannot be defined in it. Despite regular claims to the contrary, Dirac's statement is correct, as we will see below. It is a strange consequence of the quantum of action.

#### REFLECTION AND DIFFRACTION DEDUCED FROM PHOTON ARROWS

Waves also show *diffraction*. Diffraction is the change of propagation direction of light or any other wave near edges. To understand this phenomenon with photons, let us start with a simple mirror, and study *reflection* first. Photons (like all quantum particles) move from source to detector by *all* possible paths. As Richard Feynman,<sup>\*</sup> who discovered this explanation, liked to stress, the term 'all' has to be taken literally. This is not a big deal in

<sup>\*</sup> Richard ('Dick') Phillips Feynman (b. 1918 New York City, d. 1988 Los Angeles), physicist, was one of the founders of quantum electrodynamics. He also discovered the 'sum-over-histories' reformulation of quantum theory, made important contributions to the theory of the weak interaction and to



**FIGURE 32** The light reflected by a badly-placed mirror and by a grating.

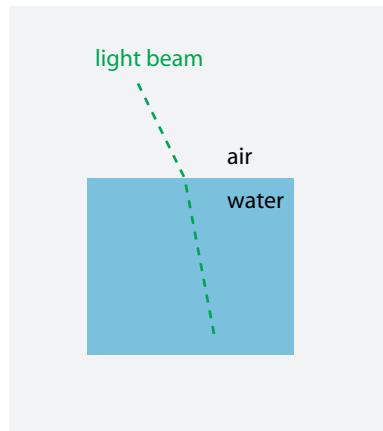
the explanation of interference. But in order to understand a mirror, we have to include all possibilities, however crazy they seem, as shown in [Figure 31](#).

As stated above, a light source emits rotating arrows. To determine the probability that light arrives at a certain location within the image, we have to add up all the arrows arriving at the same time at that location. For each path, the arrow orientation at the image is shown – for convenience only – below the corresponding segment of the mirror. The angle and length of the arriving arrow depends on the path. Note that the sum of all the arrows does not vanish: light does indeed arrive at the image. Moreover, the largest contribution comes from the paths near to the middle. If we were to perform the same calculation for another image location, (almost) no light would get there.

In short, the rule that reflection occurs with the incoming angle equal to the outgoing angle is an approximation, following from the arrow model of light. In fact, a detailed

---

quantum gravity, and co-authored a famous textbook, the *Feynman Lectures on Physics*, now online at [www.feynmanlectures.info](http://www.feynmanlectures.info). He is one of those theoretical physicists who made his career mainly by performing complex calculations – but he backtracked with age, most successfully in his teachings and physics books, which are all worth reading. He was deeply dedicated to physics and to enlarging knowledge, and was a collector of surprising physical explanations. He helped building the nuclear bomb, wrote papers in topless bars, avoided to take any professional responsibility, and was famously arrogant and disrespectful of authority. He wrote several popular books on the events of his life. Though he tried to surpass the genius of Wolfgang Pauli throughout his life, he failed in this endeavour. He shared the 1965 Nobel Prize in Physics for his work on quantum electrodynamics.



**FIGURE 33** If light were made of little stones, they would move faster in water.

calculation, with more arrows, shows that the approximation is quite precise: the errors are much smaller than the wavelength of the light.

The proof that light does indeed take all these strange paths is given by a more specialized mirror. As shown in Figure 32, we can repeat the experiment with a mirror that reflects only along certain stripes. In this case, the stripes have been carefully chosen so that the corresponding path lengths lead to arrows with a bias in one direction, namely to the left. The arrow addition now shows that such a specialized mirror – usually called a *grating* – allows light to be reflected in unusual directions. Indeed, this behaviour is standard for waves: it is called *diffraction*. In short, the arrow model for photons allows us to describe this wave property of light, provided that photons follow the ‘crazy’ probability scheme. Do not get upset! As was said above, quantum theory is the theory for crazy people.

You may wish to check that the arrow model, with the approximations it generates by summing over all possible paths, automatically ensures that the quantum of action is indeed the smallest action that can be observed.

Challenge 42 s

Challenge 43 e

Challenge 44 e

Challenge 45 e

#### REFRACTION AND PARTIAL REFLECTION FROM PHOTON ARROWS

All waves have a *signal velocity*. The signal velocity also depends on the medium in which they propagate. As a consequence, waves show *refraction* when they move from one medium into another with different signal velocity. Interestingly, the naive particle picture of photons as little stones would imply that light is faster in materials with high refractive indices: the so-called *dense* materials. (See Figure 33.) Can you confirm this? However, experiments show that light in dense materials moves *slowly*. The wave picture has no difficulty explaining this observation. (Can you confirm this?) Historically, this was one of the arguments *against* the particle theory of light. In contrast, the arrow model of light presented above is able to explain refraction properly. It is not difficult: try it.

Waves also *reflect partially* from materials such as glass. This is one of the most difficult wave properties to explain with photons. But it is one of the few effects that is *not* explained by a classical wave theory of light. However, it *is* explained by the arrow model, as we will find out. Partial reflection confirms the first two rules of the arrow model. Par-

[Page 57](#) tial reflection shows that photons indeed behave *randomly*: some are reflected and other are not, without any selection criterion. The distinction is purely statistical. More about this issue shortly.

### FROM PHOTONS TO WAVES

In waves, the fields *oscillate in time and space*. One way to show how waves can be made of particles is to show how to build up a sine wave using a large number of photons. A sine wave is a coherent state of light. The way to build them up was explained in detail by Roy Glauber. In fact, to build a pure sine wave, we need a superposition of a beam with one photon, a beam with two photons, a beam with three photons, and so on. Together, they give a perfect sine wave. As expected, its photon number fluctuates to the highest possible degree.

If we repeat the calculation for non-ideal beams, we find that the indeterminacy relation for energy and time is respected: every emitted beam will possess a certain spectral width. Purely monochromatic light does not exist. Similarly, no system that emits a wave *at random* can produce a monochromatic wave. All experiments confirm these results.

In addition, waves can be *polarized*. So far, we have disregarded this property. In the photon picture, polarization is the result of carefully superposing beams of photons spinning clockwise and anticlockwise. Indeed, we know that linear polarization can be seen as a result of superposing circularly-polarized light of both signs, using the proper phase. What seemed a curiosity in classical optics turns out to be a fundamental justification for quantum theory.

Finally, photons are *indistinguishable*. When two photons of the same colour cross, there is no way to say afterwards which of the two is which. The quantum of action makes this impossible. The indistinguishability of photons has an interesting consequence. It is impossible to say which emitted photon corresponds to which arriving photon. In other words, there is no way to follow the path of a photon, as we are used to following the path of a billiard ball. Photons are indeed indistinguishable. In addition, the experiment by Hanbury Brown and Twiss implies that photons are bosons. We will discover more details about the specific indistinguishability of bosons later on.

In summary, we find that light waves *can* indeed be described as being built of particles. However, this is only correct with the proviso that *photons*

- are not precisely countable – never with a precision better than  $\sqrt{N}$ ,
- are not localizable – never with a precision better than the coherence length,
- have no size, no charge and no (rest) mass,
- show a phase that increases as  $\omega t$ , i.e., as the product of frequency and time,
- carry spin 1,
- of the same frequency are indistinguishable bosons – within a coherence volume,
- can take any path whatsoever – as long as allowed by the boundary conditions,
- have no discernable origin, and
- have a detection probability given by the square of the sum of amplitudes\* for all allowed paths leading to the point of detection.

[Page 52](#)

[Ref. 31](#)

[Page 112](#)

---

\* The amplitude of a photon field, however, cannot and should not be identified with the wave function of any massive spin 1 particle.

In other words, light can be described as made of particles *only* if these particles have special, *quantum* properties. These quantum properties differ from everyday particles and allow photons to behave like waves whenever they are present in large numbers.

### CAN LIGHT MOVE FASTER THAN LIGHT? – REAL AND VIRTUAL PHOTONS

In a vacuum, light can move faster than  $c$ , as well as slower than  $c$ . The quantum principle provides the details. As long as this principle is obeyed, the speed of a short light flash can differ – though only by a tiny amount – from the ‘official’ value. Can you estimate the allowable difference in arrival time for a light flash coming from the dawn of time?

Challenge 46 ny

The arrow description for photons gives the same result. If we take into account the crazy possibility that photons can move with any speed, we find that all speeds very different from  $c$  cancel out. The only variation that remains, translated into distances, is the indeterminacy of about one wavelength in the longitudinal direction, which we mentioned above.

Challenge 47 ny

In short, light, or real photons, can indeed move faster than light, though only by an amount allowed by the quantum of action. For everyday situations, i.e., for high values of the action, all quantum effects average out, including light and photon velocities different from  $c$ .

**Ref. 32** Not only the position, but also the energy of a single photon can be undefined. For example, certain materials split one photon of energy  $\hbar\omega$  into two photons, whose two energies add up to the original one. Quantum mechanics implies that the energy partitioning is known only when the energy of one of the two photons is measured. Only at that very instant is the energy of the second photon known. Before the measurement, both photons have undefined energies. The process of energy fixing takes place *instantaneously*, even if the second photon is far away. We will explain below the background to this and similar strange effects, which *seem* to be faster than light. In fact, despite the appearance, these observations do *not* involve faster-than-light transmission of energy or information.

Page 153

More bizarre consequences of the quantum of action appear when we study *static* electric fields, such as the field around a charged metal sphere. Obviously, such a field must also be made of photons. How do they move? It turns out that static electric fields are made of *virtual* photons. Virtual photons are photons that do not appear as free particles: they only appear for an extremely short time before they disappear again. In the case of a static electric field, they are *longitudinally* polarized, and do not carry energy away. Virtual photons, like other virtual particles, are ‘shadows’ of particles that obey

$$\Delta x \Delta p \leq \hbar/2 . \quad (14)$$

Page 193

Rather than obeying the usual indeterminacy relation, they obey the opposite relation, which expresses their very brief appearance. Despite their intrinsically short life, and despite the impossibility of detecting them directly, virtual particles have important effects. We will explore them in detail shortly.

In fact, the vector potential  $A$  allows *four* polarizations, corresponding to the four coordinates  $(t, x, y, z)$ . It turns out that for the photons one usually talks about – the free or *real* photons – the polarizations in the  $t$  and  $z$  directions cancel out, so that one

observes only the  $x$  and  $y$  polarizations in actual experiments.

For bound or *virtual* photons, the situation is different. All four polarizations are possible. Indeed, the  $z$  and  $t$  polarizations of virtual photons – which do not appear for real photons, i.e., for free photons – are the ones that can be said to be the building blocks of *static* electric and magnetic fields.

In other words, static electric and magnetic fields are continuous flows of virtual photons. In contrast to real photons, virtual photons can have mass, can have spin directions not pointing along the path of motion, and can have momentum opposite to their direction of motion. Exchange of virtual photons leads to the *attraction* of bodies of different charge. In fact, virtual photons *necessarily* appear in any description of electromagnetic interactions. Later on we will discuss their effects further – including the famous attraction of neutral bodies.

Vol. V, page 123

Vol. II, page 72

We have seen already early on that virtual photons, for example those that are needed to describe collisions of charges, must be able to move with speeds higher than that of light. This description is required in order to ensure that the speed of light remains a limit in all experiments.

In summary, it might be intriguing to note that virtual photons, in contrast to real photons, are not bound by the speed of light; but it is also fair to say that virtual photons move faster-than-light only in a *formal* sense.

### INDETERMINACY OF ELECTRIC FIELDS

We have seen that the quantum of action implies an indeterminacy for light intensity. Since light is an electromagnetic wave, this indeterminacy implies similar, separate limits for electric and magnetic fields at a given point in space. This conclusion was first drawn in 1933 by Bohr and Rosenfeld. They started from the effects of the fields on a test particle of mass  $m$  and charge  $q$ , which are described by:

$$m\mathbf{a} = q(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{b}) . \quad (15)$$

Challenge 49 ny

Since it is impossible to measure both the momentum and the position of a particle, they deduced an indeterminacy for the electrical field, given by

$$\Delta E = \frac{\hbar}{q \Delta x t} , \quad (16)$$

where  $t$  is the measurement time and  $\Delta x$  is the position indeterminacy. Thus every value of an electric field, and similarly of a magnetic field, possesses an indeterminacy. The state of the electromagnetic field behaves like the state of matter in this respect: both follow an indeterminacy relation.

### HOW CAN VIRTUAL PHOTON EXCHANGE LEAD TO ATTRACTION?

Exchange of real photons always leads to recoil. But exchange of *virtual* photons can lead either to attraction or repulsion, depending on the signs of the two charges involved. This is worth looking at.

We start with two localized charges of same sign, located both on the  $x$ -axis, and want to determine the momentum transferred from the charge on the right side via a virtual photon to the charge on the left side.

For the virtual photon, the important part of its state *in momentum space* is its imaginary part, which, *if emitted by a negative charge*, has a positive peak (delta function shape) at the negative of its momentum value and a negative peak at its positive momentum value.

When the virtual photon hits the other charged particle, on the left, it can push it either to the left or to the right. The probability amplitude for each process is given by the particle charge times the photon momentum state value times  $i$  times time. Both amplitudes need to be added.

In the case that the second particle has the same charge as the first, the effect of the virtual photon absorption in momentum space is to add a wave function that originally was antisymmetric and positively valued on the positive axis, and that is then shifted to the left, to a second wave function which originally was the negative of the first, but is then shifted to the right. The result for this one-photon absorption process is a real-valued, antisymmetric function in momentum space, with positive values for negative momenta, and negative values for positive momenta.

To understand repulsion, we need to add the wave function for this one-photon process to the zero-photon (thus unmodified) function of the second particle, and then square the sum. This unmodified function was positive in the case of same charges. The squaring process of the sum yields a probability distribution in momentum space whose maximum is at a negative momentum value; thus the second particle has been *repelled* from the first.

If the charges had different signs, the maximum of the sum would be at a positive momentum value, and the second particle would be *attracted* to the first. In short, attraction or repulsion is determined by the interference between the wave function for one-photon absorption (more precisely, for odd-photon-number absorption) and the wave function for zero-photon absorption (more precisely, for even-photon-number absorption).

### CAN TWO PHOTONS INTERFERE?

Page 59 In 1930, Paul Dirac made the famous statement already mentioned earlier on:

- Ref. 29
- ▷ Each photon interferes only with itself. Interference between two different photons never occurs.

Ref. 34 Often this statement is misinterpreted as implying that light from two separate photon sources cannot interfere. Unfortunately, this false interpretation has spread through a part of the literature. Everybody can check that this statement is incorrect with a radio: signals from two distant radio stations transmitting on the same frequency lead to beats in amplitude, i.e., to *wave interference*. (This should not to be confused with the more common *radio interference*, which usually is simply a superposition of intensities.) Radio transmitters are coherent sources of photons, and any radio receiver shows that signals from two different sources can indeed interfere.

In 1949, interference of fields emitted from two different photon sources has been

Ref. 35 demonstrated also with *microwave* beams. From the nineteen fifties onwards, numerous experiments with two lasers and even with two thermal light sources have shown light interference. For example, in 1963, Magyar and Mandel used two ruby lasers emitting light pulses and a rapid shutter camera to produce spatial interference fringes.

However, all these experimental results with two interfering sources do not contradict the statement by Dirac. Indeed, two photons cannot interfere for several reasons.

- Interference is a result of the space-time propagation of waves; photons appear only when the energy–momentum picture is used, mainly when interaction with matter takes place. The description of space-time propagation and the particle picture are mutually exclusive – this is one aspect of the complementary principle. Why does Dirac seem to mix the two in his statement? Dirac employs the term ‘photon’ in a very general sense, as quantized state of the electromagnetic field. When two coherent beams are superposed, the quantized entities, the photons, cannot be ascribed to either of the sources. Interference results from superposition of two coherent states, not of two particles.
- Interference is only possible if one *cannot know* where the detected photon comes from. The quantum mechanical description of the field in a situation of interference never allows ascribing photons of the superposed field to one of the sources. In other words, if it is possible to say from which source a detected photon comes from, interference *cannot* be observed.
- Interference between two coherent beams requires a correlated or fixed phase between them, i.e., an undetermined particle number; in other words, interference is possible if and only if the photon number for each of the two beams is unknown. And a beam has an unknown photon number when the number indeterminacy is of similar size as the average number.

The statement of Dirac thus depends on the definition of the term ‘photon’. A better choice of words is to say that interference is always between two (indistinguishable) histories, but never between two quantum particles. Or, as expressed above:

- ▷ A photon interferes only *within* its volume of coherence, i.e., within its own cell of phase space. Outside, there is no interference. And inside that volume or cell, it is impossible to distinguish photons, states or histories.

The concept of ‘photon’ remains deep even today. The quantum particle model of coherence and light remains fascinating to this day. Summarizing, we can say: *Two different electromagnetic beams can interfere, but two different photons cannot.*

### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT PHOTONS

Can one explain refraction with photons? Newton was not able to do so, but today we can. In refraction by a horizontal surface, as shown in Figure 34, the situation is translationally invariant along the horizontal direction. Therefore, the momentum component along this direction is conserved:  $p_1 \sin \alpha_1 = p_2 \sin \alpha_2$ . The photon energy  $E = E_1 = E_2$  is obviously conserved. The index of refraction  $n$  is defined in terms of momentum and

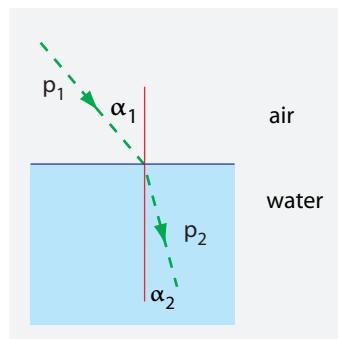


FIGURE 34 Refraction and photons.

Challenge 50 e energy as

$$n = \frac{cp}{E} . \quad (17)$$

The ‘law’ of refraction follows:

$$\frac{\sin \alpha_1}{\sin \alpha_2} = n . \quad (18)$$

The relation is known since the middle ages.

There is an important issue here. In a material, the velocity of a photon  $v = \delta E / \delta p$  in a light ray *differs* from the phase velocity  $u = E / p$  that enters into the calculation. In summary, inside matter, the concept of photon must be used with extreme care.

\* \*

If an electromagnetic wave has amplitude  $A$ , the photon density  $d$  is

$$d = \frac{A^2}{\hbar \omega} . \quad (19)$$

Challenge 51 ny Can you show this?

\* \*

Challenge 52 e Show that for a laser pulse in vacuum, the coherence volume increases during propagation, whereas the volume occupied in phase space remains constant. Its entropy is constant, as its path is reversible.

\* \*

A typical effect of the quantum ‘laws’ is the yellow colour of the lamps used for street illumination in most cities. They emit pure yellow light of (almost) a single frequency; that is why no other colours can be distinguished in their light. According to classical electrodynamics, harmonics of that light frequency should also be emitted. Experiments show, however, that this is not the case; classical electrodynamics is thus wrong. Is this argument correct?

Challenge 53 s



**FIGURE 35** The blue shades of the sky and the colours of clouds are due to various degrees of Rayleigh, Mie and Tyndall scattering (© Giorgio di Iorio).

Challenge 54 ny

How can you check whether a single-photon-triggered bomb is functional without exploding it? This famous puzzle, posed by Avshalom Elitzur and Lev Vaidman, requires interference for its solution. Can you find a way?

\* \*

What happens to photons that hit an object but are not absorbed or transmitted? Generally speaking, they are scattered. *Scattering* is the name for any process that changes the motion of light (or that of any other wave). The details of the scattering process depend on the object; some scattering processes only change the direction of motion, others also change the frequency. [Table 3](#) gives an overview of processes that scatter light.

All scattering properties depend on the material that produces the deflection of light. Among others, the study of scattering processes explains many colours of transparent materials, as we will see below.

Page 171  
Challenge 55 e

We note that the bending of light due to gravity is not called scattering. Why not?

#### A SUMMARY ON LIGHT: PARTICLE AND WAVE

In summary, light is a stream of light quanta or photons. A single photon is the smallest possible light intensity of a given colour. Photons, like all quantons, are quite different from everyday particles. In fact, we can argue that the only (classical) particle aspects of photons are their quantized energy, momentum and spin. In all other respects, photons are *not* like little stones. Photons move with the speed of light. Photons cannot be localized in light beams. Photons are indistinguishable. Photons are bosons. Photons have no mass, no charge and no size. It is more accurate to say that *photons are calculating devices to precisely describe observations about light*.

Ref. 36

**TABLE 3** Types of light scattering.

SCATTERING TYPE	SCATTERER	DETAILS	EXAMPLES
Rayleigh scattering	atoms, molecules	elastic, intensity changes as $1/\lambda^4$ , scatterers smaller than $\lambda/10$	blue sky, red evening sky, blue cigarette smoke
Mie scattering	transparent objects, droplets	elastic, intensity changes as $1/\lambda^{0.5}$ to $1/\lambda^2$ , scatterer size around $\lambda$	blue sky, red evenings, blue distant mountains
Geometric scattering	edges	elastic, scatterer size larger than $\lambda$	better called <i>diffraction</i> , used in interference
Tyndall scattering	non-transparent objects	elastic, angle weakly or not wavelength-dependent	smog, white clouds, fog, white cigarette smoke
Smekal–Raman scattering	excited atoms, molecules	inelastic, light gains energy	used in lidar investigations of the atmosphere
Inverse Raman scattering	atoms, molecules	inelastic, light loses energy	used in material research
Thomson scattering	electrons	elastic	used for electron density determination
Compton scattering	electrons	inelastic, X-ray lose energy	proves particle nature of light (see page 46)
Brillouin scattering	acoustic phonons, density variations in solids/fluids	inelastic, frequency shift of a few GHz	used to study phonons and to diagnose optical fibres
Von Laue or X-ray scattering	crystalline solids	elastic, due to interference at crystal planes	used to determine crystal structures; also called <i>Bragg diffraction</i>

The strange properties of photons are the reason why earlier attempts to describe light as a stream of (classical) particles, such as the attempt of Newton, failed miserably, and were rightly ridiculed by other scientists. Indeed, Newton upheld his theory against all experimental evidence – especially with regard to light's wave properties – which is something that a physicist should never do. Only after people had accepted that light is a wave, and then discovered and understood that quantum particles are fundamentally different from classical particles, was the quanton description successful.

The quantum of action implies that *all waves are streams of quantons*. In fact, all waves

are *correlated* streams of quantons. This is true for light, for any other form of radiation, and for all forms of matter waves.

The indeterminacy relations show that even a single quanton can be regarded as a wave; however, whenever it interacts with the rest of the world, it behaves as a particle. In fact, it is *essential* that all waves be made of quantons: if they were not, then interactions would be non-local, and objects could not be localized at all, contrary to experience.

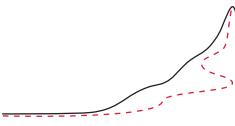
To decide whether the wave or the particle description is more appropriate, we can use the following criterion. Whenever matter and light interact, it is more appropriate to describe electromagnetic radiation as a wave if the wavelength  $\lambda$  satisfies

$$\lambda \gg \frac{\hbar c}{kT}, \quad (20)$$

where  $k = 1.4 \cdot 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$  is Boltzmann's constant and  $T$  is the temperature of the particle. If the wavelength is much *smaller* than the quantity on the right-hand side, the particle description is most appropriate. If the two sides are of the same order of magnitude, both descriptions play a role. Can you explain the criterion?

Challenge 56 e





## CHAPTER 3

# MOTION OF MATTER – BEYOND CLASSICAL PHYSICS

“ All great things begin as blasphemies.”  
George Bernard Shaw

The existence of a smallest action has numerous important consequences for the motion of matter. We start with a few experimental results that show that the quantum of action is indeed the smallest measurable action value, also in the case of matter. Then we show that the quantum of action implies the existence of a phase and thus of the wave properties of matter. Finally, from the quantum of action, we deduce for the motion of matter the same description that we already found for light: matter particles behave like rotating arrows.

### WINE GLASSES, PENCILS AND ATOMS – NO REST

“ Otium cum dignitate.\*  
Cicero, *De oratore*.

If the quantum of action is the smallest observable change in a physical system, then two observations of the same system must always differ. Thus there cannot be perfect rest in nature. Is that true? Experiments show that this is indeed the case.

A simple consequence of the lack of perfect rest is the impossibility of completely filling a glass of wine. If we call a glass at maximum capacity (including surface tension effects, to make the argument precise) ‘full’, we immediately see that the situation requires the liquid’s surface to be completely at rest. This is never observed. Indeed, a completely quiet surface would admit two successive observations that differ by less than  $\hbar$ . We could try to reduce all motions by reducing the temperature of the system. To achieve absolute rest we would need to reach absolute zero temperature. Experiments show that this is impossible. (Indeed, this impossibility, the so-called *third ‘law’ of thermodynamics*, is equivalent to the existence of a minimum action.) All experiments confirm: *There is no rest in nature*. In other words, the quantum of action proves the old truth that a glass of wine is always partially empty *and* partially full.

The absence of microscopic rest, predicted by the quantum of action, is confirmed in many experiments. For example, a pencil standing on its tip *cannot* remain vertical, as shown in Figure 36, even if it is isolated from all disturbances, such as vibrations, air molecules and thermal motion. This – admittedly very academic – conclusion follows

---

\*\* ‘Rest with dignity.’

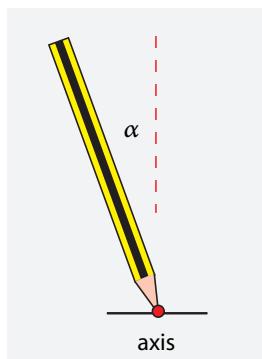


FIGURE 36 A falling pencil.

**Challenge 57 d** from the indeterminacy relation. In fact, it is even possible to calculate the time after which a pencil *must* have fallen over. In practice however, pencils fall over much earlier, because in usual conditions, external disturbances are much larger than the effects of the quantum of action.

**Page 79**

But the most important consequence of the absence of rest is another. The absence of rest for the electrons inside atoms prevents them from falling into the nuclei, despite their mutual attraction. In other words, the existence and the size of atoms, and thus of all matter, is a direct consequence of the absence of microscopic rest! We will explore this consequence in more detail below. Since we are made of atoms, we can say: we only exist and live because of the quantum of action.

#### NO INFINITE MEASUREMENT PRECISION

Not only does the quantum of action prevent the existence of rest; the quantum of action also prevents the observation or measurement of rest. In order to check whether an object is at rest, we need to observe its position with high precision. Because of the wave properties of light, we need a high-energy photon: only a high-energy photon has a small wavelength and thus allows a precise position measurement. As a result of this high energy, however, the object is disturbed. Worse, the disturbance itself is not precisely measurable; so there is no way to determine the original position even by taking the disturbance into account. In short, perfect rest cannot be observed – even if it existed.

Indeed, all experiments in which systems have been observed with highest precision confirm that perfect rest does not exist. The absence of rest has been confirmed for electrons, neutrons, protons, ions, atoms, molecules, atomic condensates and crystals. The absence of rest has been even confirmed for objects with a mass of about a tonne, as used in certain gravitational wave detectors. No object is ever at rest.

The same argument on measurement limitations also shows that no measurement, of any observable, can ever be performed to infinite precision. This is another of the far-reaching consequences of the quantum of action.

#### COOL GAS

The quantum of action implies that rest is impossible in nature. In fact, even at extremely low temperatures, all particles inside matter are in motion. This fundamental lack of rest

is said to be due to the so-called *zero-point fluctuations*. A good example is provided by the recent measurements of Bose–Einstein condensates. They are trapped gases, with a small number of atoms (between ten and a few million), cooled to extremely low temperatures (around 1 nK). The traps allow to keep the atoms suspended in mid-vacuum. These cool and trapped gases can be observed with high precision. Using elaborate experimental techniques, Bose–Einstein condensates can be put into states for which  $\Delta p \Delta x$  is almost exactly equal to  $\hbar/2$  – though never lower than this value. These experiments confirm directly that there is no observable rest, but a fundamental *fuzziness* in nature. And the fuzziness is described by the quantum of action.

**Challenge 58** s This leads to an interesting puzzle. In a normal object, the distance between the atoms is much larger than their de Broglie wavelength. (Can you confirm this?) But today it is possible to cool objects to extremely low temperatures. At sufficiently low temperatures, less than 1 nK, the wavelength of the atoms may be larger than their separation. Can you imagine what happens in such cases?

**Ref. 37**  
**Challenge 59** s

### FLows AND THE QUANTIZATION OF MATTER

“ Die Bewegung ist die Daseinsform der Materie.  
Friedrich Engels, *Anti-Dühring*.<sup>\*</sup>

Not only does the quantum of action make rest impossible, it also makes impossible any situation that does not change in time. The most important examples of (apparently) stationary situations are *flows*. The quantum of action implies that *no* flow can be stationary. More precisely, a smallest action implies that no flow can be continuous. *All flows fluctuate*. In nature, all flows are made of smallest entities: all flows are made of quantum particles. We saw above that this is valid for light; it also applies to matter flows. Two simple kinds of flow from our everyday experience directly confirm this consequence from the quantum of action: flows of fluids and flows of electricity.

### FLUID FLOWS AND QUANTONS

The flow of matter also exhibits smallest units. We mentioned early on in our adventure that a consequence of the particulate structure of liquids is that oil or any other smooth liquid produces *noise* when it flows through even the smoothest of pipes. We mentioned that the noise we hear in our ears in situations of absolute silence – for example, in a snowy and windless landscape in the mountains or in an anechoic chamber – is partly due to the granularity of blood flow in the veins. All experiments confirm that all flows of matter produce vibrations. This is a consequence of the quantum of action, and of the resulting granularity of matter. In fact, the quantum of action can be determined from noise measurements in fluids.

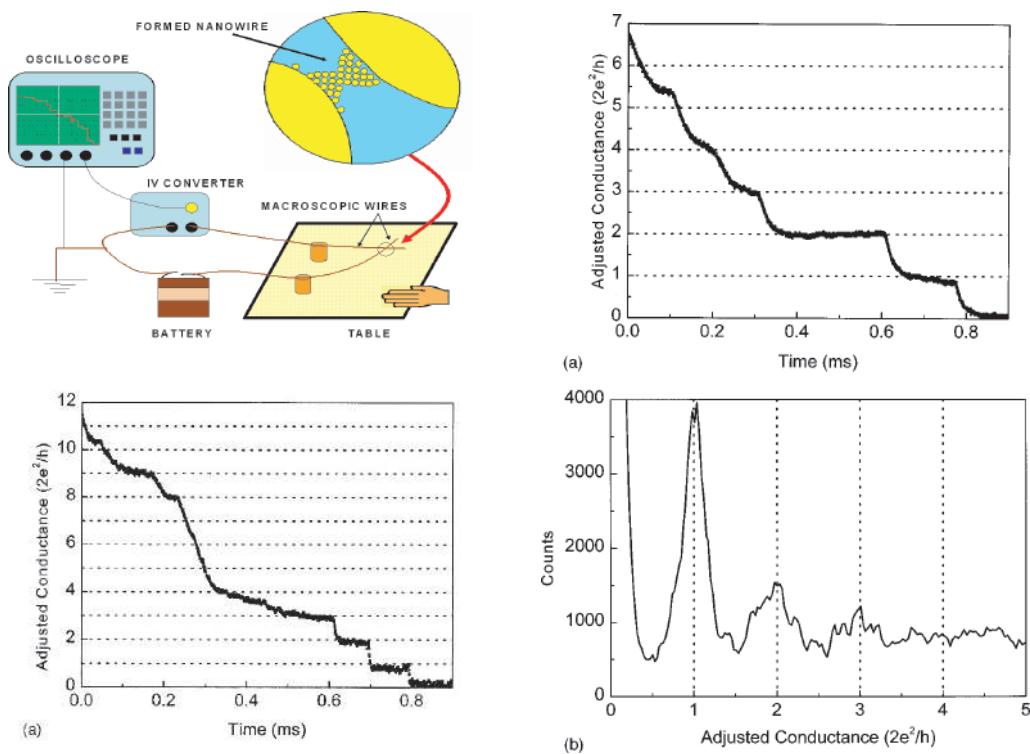
**Vol. I, page 391**

### KNOCKING TABLES AND QUANTIZED CONDUCTIVITY

If electrical current were a continuous flow, it would be possible to observe action values as small as desired. The simplest counter-example was discovered in 1996, by José Costa-Krämer and his colleagues. They put two metal wires on top of each other on a kitchen

**Ref. 12** \* ‘Motion is matter’s way of being.’

**Ref. 38, Ref. 39**



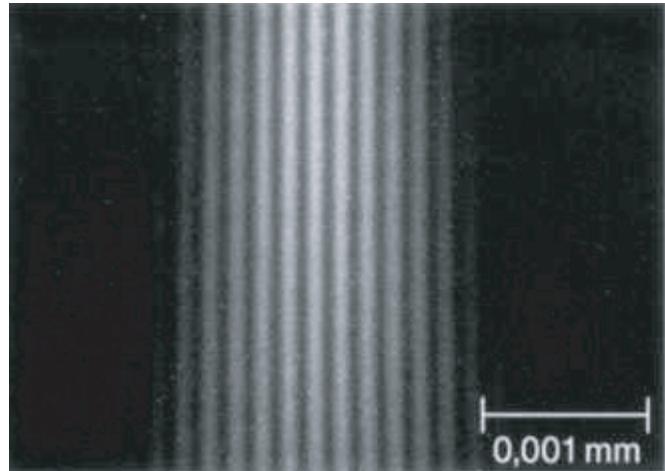
**FIGURE 37** Steps in the flow of electricity in metal wire crossings: the set-up, the nanowires at the basis of the effect, and three measurement results (© José Costa-Krämer, AAPT from Ref. 39).

table and attached a battery, a current-voltage converter – or simply a resistor – and a storage oscilloscope to them. Then they measured the electrical current while *knocking* on the table. That is all.

Knocking the table breaks the contact between the two wires. In the last millisecond before the wires detach, the conductivity and thus the electrical current diminishes in regular steps of about  $7 \mu\text{A}$ , as can easily be seen on the oscilloscope. Figure 37 shows such a measurement. This simple experiment could have beaten, if it had been performed a few years earlier, a number of other, enormously expensive experiments which discovered this same quantization at costs of several million euro each, using complex set-ups at extremely low temperatures.

In fact, the quantization of conductivity appears in any electrical contact with a small cross-section. In such situations the quantum of action implies that the conductivity can only be a multiple of  $2e^2/\hbar \approx (12\,906 \Omega)^{-1}$ . Can you confirm this result? Note that electrical conductivity can be as small as required; only the *quantized* electrical conductivity has the minimum value of  $2e^2/\hbar$ .

Many more elaborate experiments confirm the observation of conductance steps. They force us to conclude that there is a *smallest electric charge* in nature. This smallest charge has the same value as the charge of an electron. Indeed, electrons turn out to be part of every atom, in a construction to be explained shortly. In metals, a large number of electrons can move freely: that is why metals conduct electricity so well and work as



**FIGURE 38** Electrons beams diffract and interfere at multiple slits (© Claus Jönsson).

mirrors.

In short, matter and electricity flow in smallest units. Depending on the flowing material, the smallest flowing units of matter may be ‘molecules’, ‘atoms’, ‘ions’, or ‘electrons’. All of them are *quantum* particles, or *quantons*. In short, the quantum of action implies that matter is made of quantons. Matter quantons share some properties with ordinary stones, but also differ from them in many ways. A stone has position and momentum, mass and acceleration, size, shape, structure, orientation and angular momentum, and colour. We now explore each of these properties for quantons, and see how they are related to the quantum of action.

#### MATTER QUANTONS AND THEIR MOTION – MATTER WAVES

**Ref. 40** In 1923 and 1924, the influential physicist Louis de Broglie pondered the consequences of the quantum of action for matter particles. He knew that in the case of light, the quantum of action connects wave behaviour to particle behaviour. He reasoned that the same should apply to matter. It dawned to him that streams of matter particles with the same momentum should behave as waves, just as streams of light quanta do. He thus predicted that like for light, coherent matter flows should have a wavelength  $\lambda$  and angular frequency  $\omega$  given by

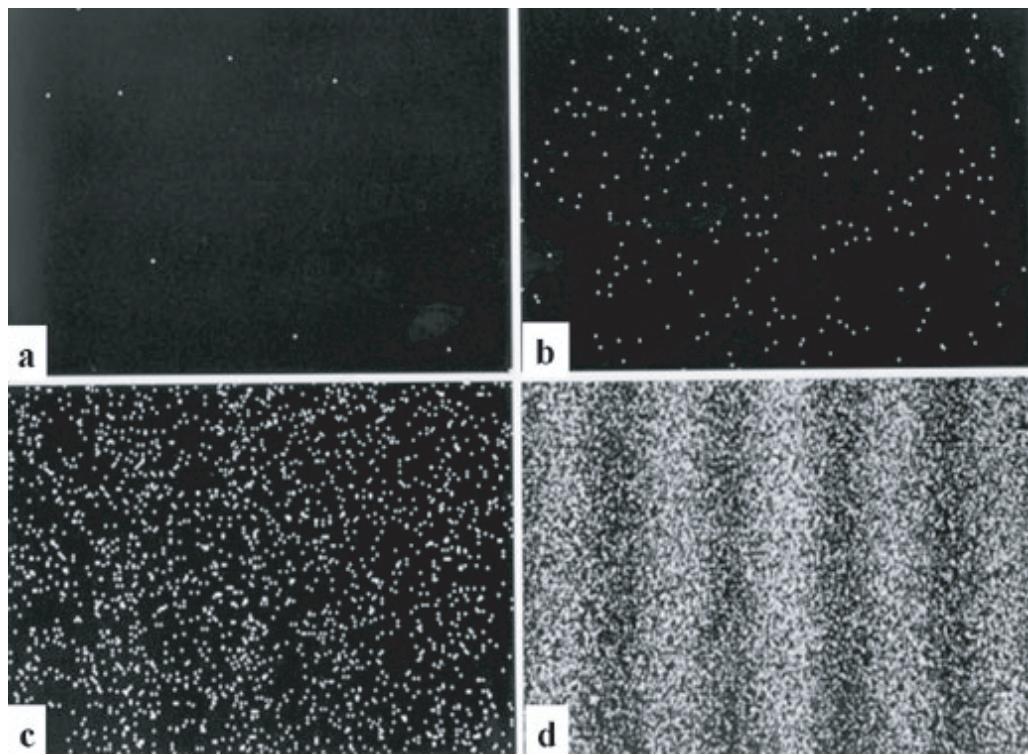
$$\lambda = \frac{2\pi\hbar}{p} \quad \text{and} \quad \omega = \frac{E}{\hbar}, \quad (21)$$

where  $p$  and  $E$  are the momentum and the energy, respectively, of the single particles. Equivalently, we can write the relations as

$$\mathbf{p} = \hbar\mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad E = \hbar\omega. \quad (22)$$

All these relations state that matter quantons also behave as waves. For everyday objects, the predicted wavelength is unmeasurably small – though not for microscopic particles.

Soon after de Broglie’s prediction, experiments began to confirm it. Matter streams



**FIGURE 39** Formation over time of the interference pattern of electrons, here in a low-intensity double-slit experiment: (a) 8 electrons, (b) 270 electrons, (c) 2000 electrons, (d) 6000 electrons, after 20 minutes of exposure. The last image corresponds to the situation shown in the previous figure. (© Tonomura Akira/Hitachi).

were observed to diffract, refract and interfere; and all observations matched the values predicted by de Broglie. Because of the smallness of the wavelength of quantons, careful experiments are needed to detect these effects. But one by one, all experimental confirmations of the wave properties of light were repeated for matter beams. For example, just as light is diffracted when it passes around an edge or through a slit, matter is also diffracted in these situations. This is true even for electrons, the simplest particles of everyday matter, as shown in [Figure 38](#). In fact, the experiment with electrons is quite difficult. It was first performed by Claus Jönsson in Tübingen in 1961; in the year 2002 it was voted the most beautiful experiment in all of physics. Many years after Jönsson, the experiment was repeated with a modified electron microscope, as shown in [Figure 39](#).

Ref. 41

Inspired by light interferometers, researchers began to build *matter* interferometers. Matter interferometers have been used in many beautiful experiments, as we will find out. Today, matter interferometers work with beams of electrons, nucleons, nuclei, atoms, or even large molecules. Just as observations of light interference prove the wave character of light, so the interference patterns observed with matter beams prove the wave character of matter. They also confirm the value of  $\hbar$ .

Vol. V, page 143

Ref. 42

Vol. III, page 101

Like light, matter is made of particles; like light, matter behaves as a wave when large numbers of particles with the same momentum are involved. But although beams of large

molecules behave as waves, everyday objects – such as cars on a motorway – do not. There are several reasons for this. First, for cars on a motorway the relevant wavelength is extremely small. Secondly, the speeds of the cars vary too much. Thirdly, cars can be counted. In summary, streams of cars with the same speed cannot be made coherent.

If matter behaves like a wave, we can draw a strange conclusion. For any wave, the position and the wavelength cannot both be sharply defined simultaneously: the indeterminacies of the wave number  $k = 2\pi/\lambda$  and of the position  $X$  obey the relation

$$\Delta k \Delta X \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (23)$$

Similarly, for every wave the angular frequency  $\omega = 2\pi f$  and the instant  $T$  of its peak amplitude cannot both be sharply defined. Their indeterminacies are related by

$$\Delta \omega \Delta T \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (24)$$

Using de Broglie's wave properties of matter (22), we get

$$\Delta p \Delta X \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta E \Delta T \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (25)$$

These famous relations are called *Heisenberg's indeterminacy relations*. They were discovered by Werner Heisenberg in 1925. They are valid for all quantum particles, be they matter or radiation. The indeterminacy relations state that there is no way to simultaneously ascribe a precise momentum and position to a quantum system, nor to simultaneously ascribe a precise energy and age. The more accurately one quantity is known, the less accurately the other is.\* As a result, matter quantons – rather like stones – can *always* be localized, but always only approximately. On the other hand, we saw that photons often cannot be localized.

Both indeterminacy relations have been checked experimentally in great detail. All experiments confirm them. In fact, every experiment proving that matter behaves like a wave is a confirmation of the indeterminacy relation – and vice versa.

When two variables are linked by indeterminacy relations, one says that they are *complementary* to each other. Niels Bohr systematically explored all possible such pairs. You can also do that for yourself. Bohr was deeply fascinated by the existence of a complementarity principle, and he later extended it in philosophical directions. In a well-known scene, somebody asked him what was the quantity complementary to precision. He answered: 'clarity'.

We remark that the usual, *real*, matter quantons always move more slowly than light. Due to the inherent fuzziness of quantum motion, it should not come to a surprise that exceptions exist. Indeed, in some extremely special cases, the quantum of action allows the existence of particles that move faster than light – so-called *virtual* particles – which we will meet later on.

**Challenge 61 s**

Page 193

---

\* A policeman stopped the car being driven by Werner Heisenberg. 'Do you know how fast you were driving?' 'No, but I know exactly where I was!'

In summary, the quantum of action means that matter quantons do not behave like point-like stones, but as waves. In particular, like for waves, the values of position and momentum cannot both be exactly defined for quantons. The values are fuzzy – position and momentum are undetermined. The more precisely one of the two is known, the less precisely the other is known.

### MASS AND ACCELERATION OF QUANTONS

Matter quantons, like stones, have mass. Indeed, hits by single electrons, atoms or molecules can be detected, if sensitive measurement set-ups are used. Quantons can also be slowed down or accelerated. We have already explored some of these experiments in the section on electrodynamics. However, quantons differ from pebbles. Using the time-energy indeterminacy relation, you can deduce that

$$a \leq \frac{2mc^3}{\hbar}. \quad (26)$$

Thus there is a *maximum acceleration* for quantons.\* Indeed, no particle has ever been observed with a higher acceleration than this value. In fact, no particle has ever been observed with an acceleration anywhere *near* this value. The quantum of action thus prevents rest but also limits acceleration.

Ref. 43

### WHY ARE ATOMS NOT FLAT? WHY DO SHAPES EXIST?

The quantum of action determines all sizes in nature. In particular, it determines all *shapes*. Let us start to explore this topic.

Experiments show that all *composed* quantons, such as atoms or molecules, have structures of finite size and often with complex shape. The size and the shape of every composed quanton are due to the motion of their constituents. The motion of the constituents is due to the quantum of action; but how do they move?

Ref. 44

In 1901, Jean Perrin and independently, in 1904, Nagaoka Hantaro proposed that atoms are small ‘solar systems’. In 1913, Niels Bohr used this idea, combining it with the quantum of action, and found that he could predict the size and the colour of hydrogen atoms, two properties that had not until then been understood. We will perform the calculations below. Even Bohr knew that the calculations were not completely understood, because they seemed to assume that hydrogen atoms were flat, like the solar system is. But first of all, atoms are observed to be spherical. Secondly, a flat shape would contradict the quantum of action. Indeed, the quantum of action implies that the motion of quantum constituents is fuzzy. Therefore, all composed quantons, such as atoms or molecules, must be made of *clouds* of constituents.

Page 181

Challenge 64 e

Ref. 45

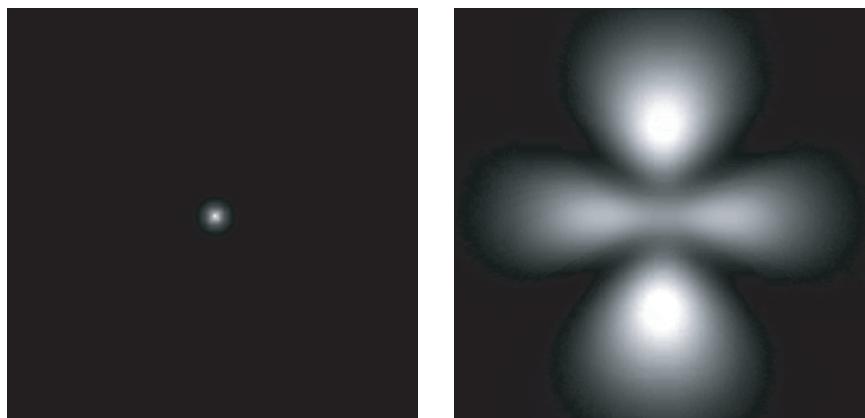
---

\* We note that this acceleration limit is different from the acceleration limit due to general relativity:

$$a \leq \frac{c^4}{4Gm}. \quad (27)$$

In particular, the quantum limit (26) applies to microscopic particles, whereas the general-relativistic limit applies to macroscopic systems. Can you confirm that in each domain the relevant limit is the smaller of the two?

Challenge 63 e



**FIGURE 40** Probability clouds: a hydrogen atom in its spherical ground state (left) and in a non-spherical excited state (right) as seen by an observer travelling around it (QuickTime film produced with Dean Dauger's software package 'Atom in a Box', available at [daugerresearch.com](http://daugerresearch.com)).

In short, the quantum of action predicts:

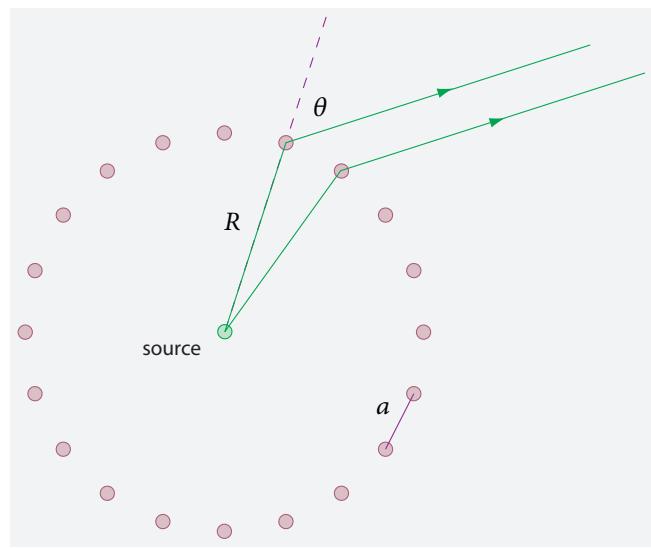
- ▷ Atoms are spherical clouds.

Experiment and theory confirm that the shape of any atom is due to the cloud, or probability distribution, of its lightest components, the electrons. The quantum of action thus states that atoms or molecules are not hard balls, as Democritus or Dalton believed, but that they are clouds. *Matter is made of clouds*.

Atomic electron clouds are not infinitely hard, but can to a certain degree interpenetrate and be deformed. The region where this deformation occurs is called a chemical *bond*. Bonds lead to molecules. Molecules, being composed of atoms, are composed of (deformed) spherical clouds. Bonds also lead to liquids, solids, flowers and people. A detailed exploration confirms that all shapes, from the simplest molecules to the shape of people, are due to the interactions between electrons and nuclei of the constituent atoms. Nowadays, molecular shapes can be calculated to high precision. Small molecules, like water, have shapes that are fairly rigid, though endowed with a certain degree of elasticity. Large molecules, such as polymers or peptides, have flexible shapes. These shape changes are essential for their effects inside cells and thus for our survival. A large body of biophysical and biochemical research is exploring molecular shape effects.

In summary, the quantum of action implies that shapes exist – and that they fluctuate. For example, if a long molecule is held fixed at its two ends, it cannot remain at rest in between. Such experiments are easy to perform nowadays, for example with DNA. In fact, all experiments confirm that the quantum of action prevents rest, produces sizes and shapes, and enables chemistry and life.

In nature, all sizes and shapes are due to the quantum of action. Now, every macroscopic object and every quantum object with a non-spherical shape is able to rotate. We therefore explore what the quantum of action can say about rotation.



**FIGURE 41** The quantization of angular momentum.

### ROTATION, QUANTIZATION OF ANGULAR MOMENTUM, AND THE LACK OF NORTH POLES

“Triste è quel discepolo che non avanza il suo maestro.

Leonardo da Vinci\*

Ref. 46

In everyday life, rotation is a frequent type of motion. Wheels are all around us. It turns out that the quantum of action has important consequences for rotational motion. First of all, we note that action and angular momentum have the same physical dimension: both are measured in Js or Nms. It only takes a little thought to show that if matter or radiation has a momentum and wavelength related by the quantum of action, then angular momentum is fixed in multiples of the quantum of action. This beautiful argument is due to Dicke and Wittke.

Imagine a circular fence, made of  $N$  vertical steel bars spaced apart at a distance  $a = 2\pi R/N$ , as shown in Figure 41. At the centre of the fence, imagine a source of matter or radiation that can emit particles towards the fence in any chosen direction. The linear momentum of such a particle is  $p = \hbar k = 2\pi\hbar/\lambda$ . At the fence slits, the wave will interfere. Outside the fence, the direction of the motion of the particle is determined by the condition of positive interference. In other words, the angle  $\theta$ , describing the direction of motion outside the fence, is given by  $a \sin \theta = M\lambda$ , where  $M$  is an integer. Through the deflection due to the interference process, the fence receives a linear momentum  $p \sin \theta$ , or an angular momentum  $L = pR \sin \theta$ . Combining all these expressions, we find that the angular momentum transferred to the fence is

$$L = NM\hbar . \quad (28)$$

Challenge 65 e

---

\* ‘Sad is that disciple who does not surpass his master.’ This statement from one of his notebooks, the Codice Forster III, is sculpted in large letters in the chemistry aula of the University of Rome *La Sapienza*.

In other words, the angular momentum of the fence is an integer multiple of  $\hbar$ . Fences can only have integer intrinsic angular momenta (in units of  $\hbar$ ). The generalization of the argument to all bodies is also correct. (Of course, this latter statement is only a hint, not a proof.)

- ▷ The measured intrinsic angular momentum of bodies is always a multiple of  $\hbar$ .

Quantum theory thus states that every object's angular momentum increases in steps. Angular momentum is quantized. This result is confirmed by all experiments.

But rotation has more interesting aspects. Thanks to the quantum of action, just as linear momentum is usually fuzzy, so is angular momentum. There is an indeterminacy Ref. 47 relation for angular momentum  $L$ . The complementary variable is the phase angle  $\varphi$  of Ref. 48 the rotation. The indeterminacy relation can be expressed in several ways. The simplest Page 48 approximation – and thus *not* the exact expression – is

$$\Delta L \Delta \varphi \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (29)$$

This is obviously an approximation: the relation is only valid for large angular momenta. In any case, the expression tells us that rotation behaves similarly to translation. The expression cannot be valid for small angular momentum values, as  $\Delta\varphi$  by definition cannot grow beyond  $2\pi$ . In particular, angular-momentum eigenstates have  $\Delta L = 0$ .\*

The indeterminacy of angular momentum appears for all macroscopic bodies. We can say that the indeterminacy appears for all cases when the angular phase of the system can be measured.

The quantization and indeterminacy of angular momentum have important consequences. Classically speaking, the poles of the Earth are the places that do not move when observed by a non-rotating observer. Therefore, at those places matter would have a defined position and a defined momentum. However, the quantum of action forbids this. There cannot be a North Pole on Earth. More precisely, the idea of a *fixed* rotational axis is an approximation, not valid in general. This applies in particular to rotating quantum particles.

### ROTATION OF QUANTONS

The effects of the quantum of action on the rotation of microscopic particles, such as atoms, molecules or nuclei, are especially interesting. We note again that action and angular momentum have the same units. The precision with which angular momentum

---

\* An *exact* formulation of the indeterminacy relation for angular momentum is

$$\Delta L \Delta \varphi \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} |1 - 2\pi P(\pi)|, \quad (30)$$

where  $P(\pi)$  is the normalized probability that the angular position has the value  $\pi$ . For an angular-momentum eigenstate, one has  $\Delta\varphi = \pi/\sqrt{3}$  and  $P(\pi) = 1/2\pi$ . This exact expression has been tested and Ref. 49 confirmed by experiments.

can be measured depends on the precision of the rotation angle. But if a *microscopic* particle rotates, this rotation might be unobservable: a situation in fundamental contrast with the case of *macroscopic* objects. Experiments indeed confirm that many microscopic particles have unobservable rotation angles. For example, in many (but not all) cases, an atomic nucleus rotated by half a turn cannot be distinguished from the unrotated nucleus.

If a microscopic particle has a *smallest* unobservable rotation angle, the quantum of action implies that the angular momentum of that particle *cannot* be zero. It must always be rotating. Therefore we need to check, for each particle, what its smallest unobservable angle of rotation is. Physicists have checked all particles in nature in experiments, and found smallest unobservable angles (depending on the particle type) of  $0, 4\pi, 2\pi, 4\pi/3, \pi, 4\pi/5, 2\pi/3$  etc.

Let us take an example. Certain nuclei have a smallest unobservable rotation angle of *half* a turn. This is the case for a prolate nucleus (one that looks like a rugby ball) turning around its short axis, such as a  $^{23}\text{Na}$  nucleus. In this case, both the largest observable rotation angle and the indeterminacy are thus a *quarter* turn. Since the change, or action, produced by a rotation is the number of turns multiplied by the angular momentum, we find that the angular momentum of this nucleus is  $2 \cdot \hbar$ .

As a general result, we deduce from the minimum angle values that the angular momentum of a microscopic particle can be  $0, \hbar/2, \hbar, 3\hbar/2, 2\hbar, 5\hbar/2, 3\hbar$  etc. In other words, the intrinsic angular momentum of a particle, usually called its *spin*, is an integer multiple of  $\hbar/2$ . Spin describes how a particle behaves under rotations.

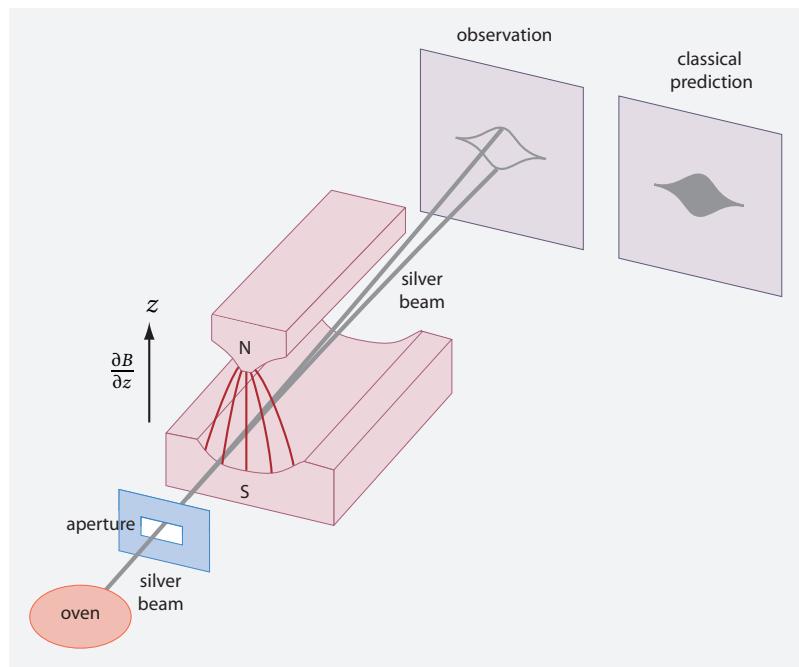
How can a particle rotate? At this point, we do not yet know how to *picture* the rotation. But we can *feel* it – just as we showed that light is made of rotating entities: all matter, including electrons, can be *polarized*. This is shown clearly by the famous Stern–Gerlach experiment.

### SILVER, STERN AND GERLACH – POLARIZATION OF QUANTONS

After a year of hard work, in 1922, Otto Stern and Walther Gerlach\* completed a beautiful experiment to investigate the polarization of matter quantons. They knew that inhomogeneous magnetic fields act as polarizers for rotating charges. Rotating charges are present in every atom. Therefore they let a beam of silver atoms, extracted from an oven by evaporation, pass an inhomogeneous magnetic field. They found that the beam splits into *two separate* beams, as shown in Figure 42. No atoms leave the magnetic field region in intermediate directions. This is in full contrast to what would be expected from classical physics.

The splitting into *two* beams is an intrinsic property of silver atoms; today we know that it is due to their spin. Silver atoms have spin  $\hbar/2$ , and depending on their orientation in space, they are deflected either in the direction of the field inhomogeneity or against it. The splitting of the beam is a pure quantum effect: there are no intermediate options. Indeed, the Stern–Gerlach experiment provides one of the clearest demonstrations that classical physics does not work well in the microscopic domain. In 1922, the

\* Otto Stern (1888–1969) and Walther Gerlach (1889–1979) worked together at the University of Frankfurt. For his subsequent measurement of the anomalous magnetic moment of the proton, Stern received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1943, after he had to flee National Socialism.



**FIGURE 42** The Stern–Gerlach experiment.

result seemed so strange that it was studied in great detail all over the world.

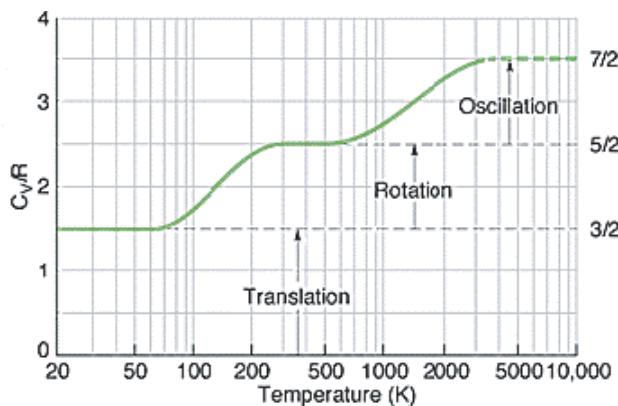
When one of the two beams – say the ‘up’ beam – is passed through a second set-up, all the atoms end up in the ‘up’ beam. The other possible exit, the ‘down’ beam, remains unused in this case. In other words, the up and down beams, in contrast to the original beam, cannot be split further. This is not surprising.

But if the second set-up is rotated by  $\pi/2$  with respect to the first, again two beams – ‘right’ and ‘left’ – are formed, and it does not matter whether the incoming beam is directly from the oven or from the ‘up’ part of the beam. A partially-rotated set-up yields a partial, uneven split. The proportions of the two final beams depend on the angle of rotation of the second set-up.

We note directly that if we split the beam from the oven first vertically and then horizontally, we get a different result from splitting the beam in the opposite order. (You can check this yourself.) Splitting processes do not commute. When the order of two operations makes a difference to the net result, physicists call them *non-commutative*. Since all measurements are also physical processes, we deduce that, in general, measurements and processes in quantum systems are non-commutative.

Beam splitting is direction-dependent. Matter beams behave almost in the same way as polarized light beams. Indeed, the inhomogeneous magnetic field acts on matter somewhat like a polarizer acts on light. The up and down beams, taken together, define a polarization direction. Indeed, the polarization direction can be rotated, with the help of a *homogeneous* magnetic field. And a rotated beam in a unrotated magnet behaves like an unrotated beam in a rotated magnet.

In summary, matter quantons can be polarized. We can picture polarization as the orientation of an internal rotation axis of the massive quanton. To be consistent, the



**FIGURE 43** An idealized graph of the heat capacity of hydrogen over temperature (© Peter Eylan).

rotation axis must be imagined to precess around the direction of polarization. Thus, massive quantum particles resemble photons also in their polarizability.

#### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT QUANTUM MATTER

“ It is possible to walk while reading, but not to read while walking.

Serge Pahaut

The quantum of action implies that there are *no fractals* in nature. Everything is made of particles. And particles are clouds. Quantum theory requires that all shapes in nature be ‘fuzzy’ *clouds*.

\* \*

Can atoms rotate? Can an atom that falls on the floor roll under the table? Can atoms be put into high-speed rotation? The answer is ‘no’ to all these questions, because angular Ref. 51 momentum is quantized; moreover, atoms are not solid objects, but clouds. The macroscopic case of an object turning more and more slowly until it stops does not exist in the microscopic world. The quantum of action does not allow it.

\* \*

Light is refracted when it enters dense matter. Do matter waves behave similarly? Yes, they do. In 1995, David Pritchard showed this for sodium waves entering a gas of helium Ref. 52 and xenon.

\* \*

Many quantum effects yield curves that show steps. An important example is the molar heat of hydrogen H<sub>2</sub> gas, shown in Figure 43. In increasing the temperature from 20 to 8 000 K, the molar heat is shows two steps, first from 3R/2 to 5R/2, and then to 7R/2. Can you explain the reason?

\* \*

Most examples of quantum motion given so far are due to electromagnetic effects. Can

**Challenge 67 s** you argue that the quantum of action must also apply to nuclear motion, and in particular, to the nuclear interactions?

\* \*

There are many other formulations of the indeterminacy principle. An interesting one is due to de Sabbata and Sivaram, who explained in 1992 that the following intriguing relation between temperature and time also holds:

$$\Delta T \Delta t \geq \hbar/k. \quad (31)$$

**Ref. 53** Here,  $k$  is the Boltzmann constant. All experimental tests so far have confirmed the result.

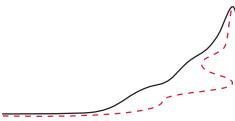
\* \*

**Challenge 68 e** Here is a trick question: what is the moment of inertia of an electron? Why?

#### FIRST SUMMARY ON THE MOTION OF QUANTUM PARTICLES

In summary, the ‘digital’ beam splitting seen in the Stern–Gerlach experiment and the wave properties of matter force us to rethink our description of motion. They show that microscopic matter motion follows from the quantum of action, the smallest observable action value. In special relativity, the existence of a maximum speed forced us to introduce the concept of space-time, and then to refine our description of motion. In general relativity, the maximum force obliged us to introduce the concepts of horizon and curvature, and then again to refine our description of motion. At the present point, the existence of the quantum of action and the wave behaviour of matter force us to take two similar steps: we first introduce the concept of a wave function, and then we refine our description of matter motion.





## CHAPTER 4

# THE QUANTUM DESCRIPTION OF MATTER AND ITS MOTION

Ref. 54

“ Die Quanten sind doch eine hoffnungslose Schweinerei! \*\* Max Born

In everyday life and in classical physics, we say that a system *has* a position, that it *is* oriented in a certain direction, that it *has* an axis of rotation, and that it *is* in a state with specific momentum. In classical physics, we can talk in this way because the *state* – the situation a system ‘*is*’ in and the properties a system ‘*has*’ – coincide with the *results of measurement*. They coincide because measurements can always be imagined to have a negligible effect on the system.

However, because of the existence of a smallest action, the interaction necessary to perform a measurement on a system *cannot* be made arbitrarily small. Therefore, the quantum of action makes it *impossible* for us to continue saying that a system *has* momentum, *has* position or *has* an axis of rotation. The quantum of action forces us to use the idea of the rotating arrow and to introduce the concept of *wave function* or *state function*. Let us see why and how.

### STATES AND MEASUREMENTS – THE WAVE FUNCTION

Page 83

The Stern–Gerlach experiment shows that the measured values of spin *orientation* are *not* intrinsic, but result from the measurement process (in this case, from the interaction with the applied inhomogeneous field). This is in contrast to the spin *magnitude*, which is intrinsic and independent of state and measurement. In short, the quantum of action forces us to distinguish carefully three concepts:

- the state of the system;
- the operation of measurement;
- the result or outcome of the measurement.

In contrast to the classical, everyday case, the *state* of a quantum system – the properties a system ‘*has*’ – is *not* described by the outcomes of measurements. The simplest illustration of this difference is the system made of a single particle in the Stern–Gerlach experiment. The experiment shows that a spin measurement on a general (oven) particle state sometimes gives ‘up’ (say +1), and sometimes gives ‘down’ (say -1). So a general atom, in an oven state, has no intrinsic orientation. Only *after* the measurement, an atom is either in an ‘up’ state or in a ‘down’ state.

---

\*\* ‘Those quanta are a hopeless dirty mess!’

It is also found that feeding ‘up’ states into a second measurement apparatus gives only ‘up’ states: thus certain special states, called *eigenstates*, do remain unaffected by measurement.

Finally, the Stern–Gerlach experiment and its variations show that states can be rotated by applied fields: atom states have a direction or orientation in space. The experiments also show that the states rotate as the atoms move through space.

The experimental observations can be described in a straightforward way. Since measurements are operations that take a state as input and produce an output state and a measurement result, we can say:

- ▷ *States* are described by rotating arrows, or rotating vectors.
- ▷ *Measurements* of observables are operations on the state vectors.
- ▷ *Measurement results* are *real numbers*; and like in classical physics, they usually depend on the observer.

In particular, we have distinguished two quantities that are not distinguished in classical physics: states and measurement results. Given this distinction, quantum theory follows quite simply, as we shall see.

Given that the quantum of action is not vanishingly small, any measurement of an observable quantity is an interaction with a system and thus a transformation of its state. Therefore, quantum physics describes physical observables as *operators*, or equivalently, as transformations. The Stern–Gerlach experiment shows this clearly: the interaction with the field influences the atoms: some in one way, and some in another way. In fact, all experiments show:

- ▷ Mathematically, states are *complex vectors*, or rotating arrows, in an abstract space. This space of all possible states or arrows is a *Hilbert space*.
- ▷ Mathematically, measurements are linear transformations, more precisely, they are described by self-adjoint, or *Hermitean*, *operators* (or matrices).
- ▷ Mathematically, *changes of viewpoint* are described by *unitary operators* (or matrices) that act on states, or arrows, and on measurement operators.

Page 237

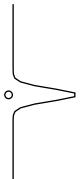
Quantum-mechanical experiments also show that a measurement of an observable can only give a result that is an *eigenvalue* of the corresponding transformation. The resulting states after the measurement, those exceptional states that are *not* influenced when the corresponding variable is measured, are the *eigenvectors*. In short, every expert on motion must know what an eigenvalue and an eigenvector is.

For any linear transformation  $T$ , those special vectors  $\psi$  that are transformed into multiples of themselves,

$$T\psi = \lambda\psi \quad (32)$$

are called *eigenvectors* (or *eigenstates*), and the multiplication factor  $\lambda$  is called the associated *eigenvalue*. Experiments show:

- ▷ The state of the system *after* a measurement is given by the eigenvector corresponding to the measured eigenvalue.



In the Stern–Gerlach experiment, the eigenstates are the ‘up’ and the ‘down’ states. In general, the eigenstates are those states that do not change when the corresponding variable is measured. Eigenvalues of Hermitean operators are always real, so that consistency is ensured: all measurement results are real numbers.

In summary, the quantum of action obliges us to distinguish between three concepts that are mixed together in classical physics: the *state* of a system, a *measurement* on the system, and the *measurement result*. The quantum of action forces us to change the vocabulary with which we describe nature, and obliges to use more differentiated concepts. Now follows the main step: the description of *motion* with these concepts. This is what is usually called ‘quantum theory’.

#### VISUALIZING THE WAVE FUNCTION: ROTATING ARROWS AND PROBABILITY CLOUDS

We just described the state of a quanton with an arrow. In fact, this is an approximation for localized quantons. More precisely,

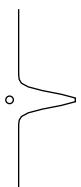
- ▷ The state of a quantum particle is described by a spatial distribution of arrows, a so-called *wave function*.

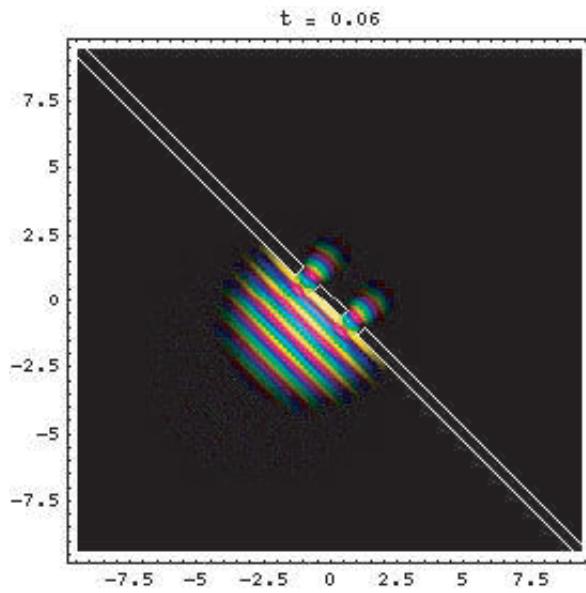
To develop a visual image of the wave function, we first imagine a quantum particle that is localized as much as possible. In this case, the wave function for a free quanton can be described simply by a single rotating arrow.

Experiments show that when a *localized* quanton travels through space, the attached arrow rotates. If the particle is non-relativistic and if spin can be neglected, the rotation takes place in a plane perpendicular to the direction of motion. The end of the arrow then traces a *helix* around the direction of motion. In this case, the state at a given time is described by the angle of the arrow. This angle is the *quantum phase*. The quantum phase is responsible for the wave properties of matter, as we will see. The wavelength and the frequency of the helix are determined by the momentum and the kinetic energy of the particle.

If the particle is *not localized* – but still non-relativistic and still with negligible spin effects – the state, or the wave function, defines a rotating arrow *at each point in space*. The rotation still takes place in a plane perpendicular to the direction of motion. But now we have a distribution of arrows that all trace helices parallel to the direction of motion. At each point in space and time, the state has a quantum phase and a length of the arrow. The arrow lengths decrease towards spatial infinity.

Figure 44 shows an example of evolution of a wave function for non-relativistic particles with negligible spin effects. The direction of the arrow at each point is shown by the colour at the specific point. The length of the arrow is shown by the brightness of the colour. For non-relativistic particles with negligible spin effects, the wave function  $\psi(t, x)$  is thus described by a length and a phase: it is a *complex* number at each point in space. The phase is essential for interference and many other wave effects. What measurable property does the amplitude, the length of the local arrow, describe? The answer was given by the famous physicist Max Born:





**FIGURE 44** The motion of a wave function, the quantum state, through a double slit, showing both the particle and the wave properties of matter. The density of the state, related to the arrow length, is displayed by brightness, and the local phase is encoded in the colour. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

- ▷ The amplitude of the wave function is a *probability amplitude*. The square of the amplitude, i.e., the quantity  $|\psi(t, x)|^2$ , gives the probability to find the particle at the place  $x$  at time  $t$ .

In other terms, a wave function is a combination of two ideas: on the one hand, a wave function is a *cloud*; on the other hand, at each point of the cloud one has to imagine an arrow. Over time, the arrows rotate and the cloud changes shape.

- ▷ A wave function is a cloud of rotating arrows.

Describing the state of a matter particle with a cloud of rotating arrows is the essential step to picture the wave properties of matter.

We can clarify the situation further.

- ▷ In every process in which the phase of the wave function is not important, the cloud image of the wave function is sufficient and correct.

For example, the motion of atoms or molecules in gases or liquids can be imagined as the motion of cloudy objects. It needs to be stressed that the clouds in question are quite hard: it takes a lot of energy to deform atomic clouds. The hardness of a typical crystal is directly related to the hardness of the atomic clouds that are found inside. Atoms are extremely stiff, or hard clouds.

On the other hand,

- ▷ In every process in which the phase of the wave function does play a role,

the cloud image of the wave function needs to be expanded with rotating arrows at each point.

This is the case for interference processes of quantons, but also for the precise description of chemical bonds.

Teachers often discuss the best way to explain wave functions. Some teachers prefer to use the cloud model only, others prefer not to use any visualization at all. Both approaches are possible; but the most useful and helpful approach is to imagine the state or wave function of a *non-relativistic* quantum particle as an arrow at every point in space. The rotation frequency of the set of arrows is the *kinetic energy* of the particle; the wavelength of the arrow motion – the period of the helical curve that the tip of the arrows – or of the average arrow – traces during motion – is the *momentum* of the quantum particle.

An arrow at each point in space is a (mathematical) *field*. The field is concentrated in the region where the particle is located, and the amplitude of the field is related to the probability to find the particle. Therefore the state field, the wave function or state function, is an *arrow cloud*.

Note that even though the wave function can be seen as defining an arrow at every point in space, the wave function as a whole can also be described as one, single vector, this time in a Hilbert space. For free particles, i.e., particles that are not subject to external forces, the Hilbert space is infinite dimensional! Nevertheless, it is not hard to calculate in such spaces. The scalar product of two wave functions is the spatial integral of the product of the complex conjugate of the first function and the (unconjugated) second function. With this definition, all vector concepts (unit vectors, null vectors, basis vectors, etc.) can be meaningfully applied to wave functions.

In summary, for non-relativistic particles without spin effects, *the state or wave function of a quantum particle is a cloud, or a distributed wave, of rotating arrows*. This aspect of a quantum cloud is unusual. Since a quantum cloud is made of little arrows, every point of the cloud is described by a local density and a local orientation. This latter property does not occur in any cloud of everyday life.

For many decades it was tacitly assumed that a wave function cannot be visualized more simply than with a cloud of rotating arrows. Only the last years have shown that there are other visualization for such quantum clouds; one possible visualization is presented in the last volume of this series.

Page 237

Challenge 69 e

Vol. VI, page 174

### THE STATE EVOLUTION – THE SCHRÖDINGER EQUATION

The description of the state of a non-relativistic quanton with negligible spin effects as a rotating cloud *completely* determines how the wave function evolves in time. Indeed, for such quantum particles the evolution follows from the total energy, the sum of kinetic and potential energy  $T + V$ , and the properties of matter waves:

- ▷ The local rate of change of the state arrow  $\psi$  is produced by the local total

energy, or Hamiltonian,  $H = T + V$ :

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi = H\psi . \quad (33)$$

This famous equation is *Schrödinger's equation of motion*.<sup>\*</sup> This *evolution equation* applies to all quantum systems and is one of the high points of modern physics.

Ref. 55 In fact, Erwin Schrödinger had found his equation in two different ways. In his first paper, he deduced it from a variational principle. In his second paper, he deduced the evolution equation directly, by asking a simple question: how does the state evolve? He knew that the state of a quanton behaves both like a wave and like a particle. A wave is described by a field, which he denoted  $\psi(t, x)$ . If the state  $\psi$  behaves like a wave, then the corresponding wave function must be an amplitude  $W$  multiplied by a phase factor  $e^{ikx-\omega t}$ . The state can thus be written as

$$\psi(t, x) = W(t, x) e^{ikx-\omega t} . \quad (34)$$

The amplitude  $W$  is the *length* of the local arrow; the phase is the *orientation* of the local arrow. Equivalently, the amplitude is the local density of the cloud, and the phase is the local orientation of the cloud.

We know that the quantum wave must also behave like a particle of mass  $m$ . In particular, the non-relativistic relation between energy and momentum  $E = \mathbf{p}^2/2m + V(\mathbf{x})$  – where  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is the potential at position  $\mathbf{x}$  – must be fulfilled for these waves. The two Page 76 de Broglie relations (22) for matter wavelength and matter frequency then imply

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = H\psi = \frac{-\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \psi + V(\mathbf{x})\psi . \quad (35)$$

Page 181 This is the complete form of Schrödinger's wave equation.  $\nabla^2$  is the Laplace operator, essentially the second derivative over space. It states how the arrow wave, the wave function  $\psi$  associated to a particle, evolves over time. In 1926, this *wave equation* for the complex field  $\psi$  became instantly famous when Schrödinger used it, by inserting the potential felt by an electron near a proton, to calculate the energy levels of the hydrogen atom. In a hydrogen atom, light is emitted by the single electron inside that atom; therefore a precise description of the motion of the electron in a hydrogen atom allows us to describe the light frequencies it can emit. (We will perform the calculation and the comparison with experiment below.) First of all, the Schrödinger equation explained that only *discrete* colours are emitted by hydrogen. In addition, the frequencies of the emitted light were found to be in agreement with the prediction of the equation to five decimal places. Finally, the

---

\* Erwin Schrödinger (b. 1887 Vienna, d. 1961 Vienna) was famous for being a *physicien bohémien*, always living in a household with two women. In 1925 he discovered the equation that brought him international fame, and the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1933. He was also the first to show that the radiation discovered by Victor Hess in Vienna was indeed coming from the cosmos. He left Germany, and then again Austria, out of dislike for National Socialism, and was a professor in Dublin for many years. There he published his famous and influential book *What is life?*. In it, he came close to predicting the then-unknown nucleic acid DNA from theoretical insight alone.





FIGURE 45 Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961)

size of atoms was predicted correctly. These were important results, especially if we keep in mind that classical physics cannot even explain the existence of atoms, let alone their light emission! In contrast, quantum physics explains all properties of atoms and their colours to high precision. In other words, the discovery of the quantum of action led the description of the motion of matter to a new high point.

In fact, the exact description of matter quantons is only found when both *spin effects* and the *relativistic energy–momentum relation* are taken into account. We do this below. No deviations between the full relativistic calculations and experiments have ever been found. And even today, predictions and measurements of atomic spectra remain the most precise and accurate in the whole study of nature: in the cases that experimental precision allows it, the calculated values agree with experiments to 13 decimal places.

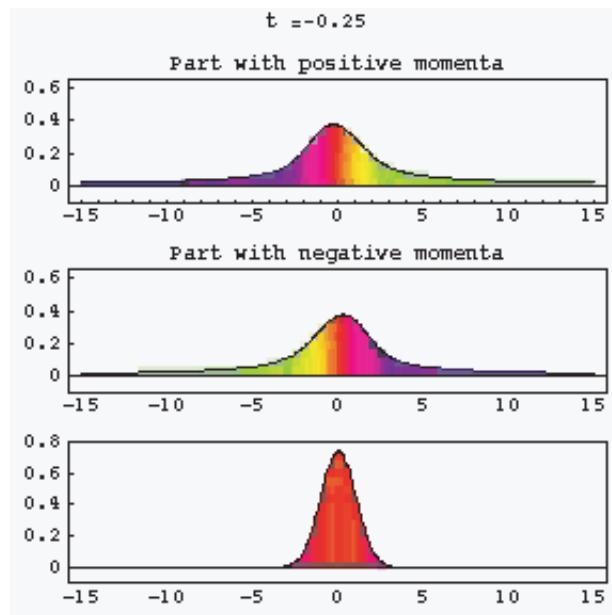
#### SELF-INTERFERENCE OF QUANTONS

**Page 76** Waves interfere. All experiments, including the examples shown in Figure 38 and Figure 39, confirm that all quantum particles, and in particular all matter quantons, show interference. Interference is a direct consequence of the Schrödinger equation, as the film of Figure 44 shows. The film illustrates the solution of the Schrödinger equation for a quantum particle moving through a double slit. The film visualizes how a double slit induces diffraction and interference for a matter particle.

It turns out that the Schrödinger equation completely reproduces and explains the observations of matter interference: also the interference of matter quantons is due to the evolution of clouds of rotating arrows. And like in all interference phenomena, the local intensity of the interference pattern turns out to be proportional to the square  $|W|^2$  of the local wave amplitude. And the local wave amplitude results from the phase of the interfering wave trains. The analogy with light interference is complete; even the formulae are the same.

We note that even though the wave function is spread out over the whole detection screen just before it hits the screen, it nevertheless yields only a localized spot on the screen. This effect, the so-called *collapse of the wave function*, is explored in detail below.





**FIGURE 46** The evolution of a wave function (lowest curve) with zero momentum, and the motion of its parts with positive and negative momenta. Local phase is encoded in the colour. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

### THE SPEED OF QUANTONS

Let us delve a little into the details of the description given by the Schrödinger equation (35). The equation expresses a simple connection: the classical speed of a matter particle is the *group velocity* of the wave function  $\psi$ . Seen from far away, the wave function thus moves like a *classical* particle would.

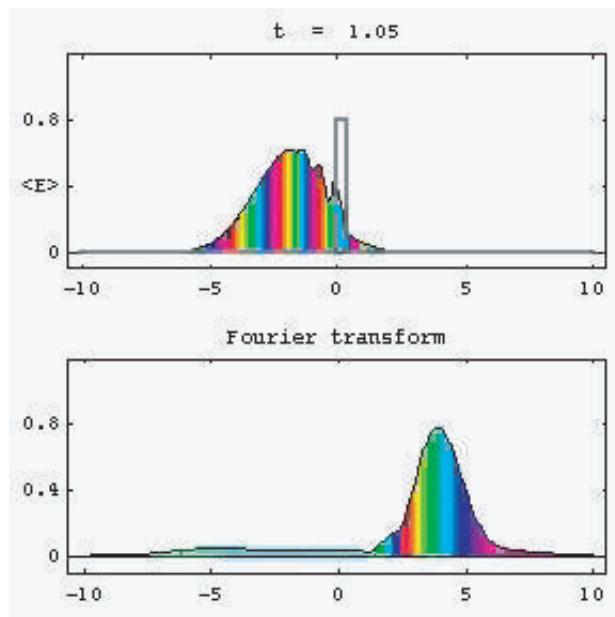
Page 153

But we know from classical physics that the group velocity is not always well defined: in cases where the group dissolves into several peaks, the concept of group velocity is not of much use. These are also the cases in which quantum motion is very different from classical motion, as we will soon discover. But for well-behaved cases, such as free or almost free particles, we find that the wave function moves in the same way as a classical particle does.

The Schrödinger equation makes another point: velocity and position of matter are not independent variables, and cannot be chosen at will. The initial condition of a system is given by the initial value of the wave function alone. No derivatives have to be (or can be) specified. Indeed, experiments confirm that quantum systems are described by a *first-order* evolution equation, in stark contrast to classical systems. The reason for this contrast is the quantum of action and the limit it poses on the possible state variables of a particle.

### DISPERSION OF QUANTONS

For free quantum particles, the Schrödinger's evolution equation implies *dispersion*, as illustrated in Figure 46. Imagine a wave function that is localized around a given starting position. Such a wave function describes a quantum system at rest. When time passes,



**FIGURE 47** The tunnelling of a wave function through a potential hill (the rectangular column): most of the wave function is reflected, and part of the wave function passes to the other side. Local phase is encoded in the colour. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

Challenge 70 e

Challenge 71 ny

this wave function will *spread out* in space. Indeed, Schrödinger's evolution equation is similar, mathematically, to a diffusion equation. In the same way that a drop of ink in water spreads out, also the state of a localized quantum particle will spread out in space. True, the most probable position stays unchanged, but the probability to find the particle at large distances from the starting position increases over time. For quantum particles, this spreading effect is indeed observed by all experiments. The spread is a consequence of the wave aspect of matter, and thus of the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . It occurs for quantons at rest and therefore also for quantons in motion. For macroscopic objects, the spreading effect is not observed, however: cars rarely move away from parking spaces. Indeed, quantum theory predicts that for macroscopic systems, the effect of spreading is negligibly small. Can you show why?

In summary, the wave aspect of matter leads to the spreading of wave functions. Wave functions show dispersion.

#### TUNNELLING AND LIMITS ON MEMORY – DAMPING OF QUANTONS

'Common sense' says that a slow ball cannot roll over a high hill. More precisely, classical physics says that if the kinetic energy  $T$  is smaller than the potential energy  $V$  that the ball would have at the top of the hill, then the ball cannot reach the top of the hill. In contrast, according to quantum theory, there is a positive probability of passing the hill for *any* energy of the ball.

In quantum theory, hills and obstacles are described by potential barriers, and objects by wave functions. Any initial wave function will spread *beyond* any potential barrier of finite height and width. The wave function will also be non-vanishing *at* the location of the barrier. In short, any object can overcome any hill or barrier, as shown in [Figure 48](#).

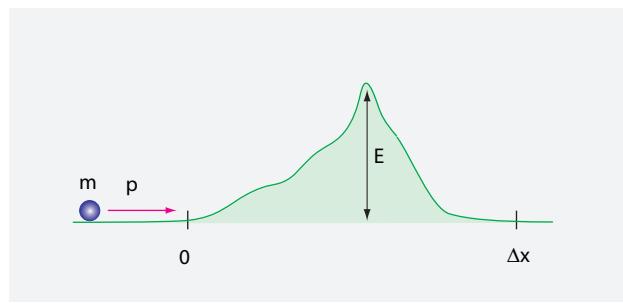


FIGURE 48 Climbing a hill.

This effect is called the *tunnelling effect*. It is in complete contrast to everyday experience – and to classical mechanics.

The tunnelling effect results from a new aspect contained in the quantum description of hills: in nature, any obstacle can be overcome with a *finite* effort. No obstacle is infinitely difficult to surmount. Indeed, only for a potential of infinite height would the wave function vanish and fail to spread to the other side. But such potentials exist only as approximations; in nature potentials are always of finite value.

Challenge 72 ny

How large is the tunnelling effect? Calculation shows that the transmission probability  $P$  is given approximately by

$$P \approx \frac{16T(V-T)}{V^2} e^{-\frac{2w}{\hbar}\sqrt{2m(V-T)}} \quad (36)$$

where  $w$  is the width of the hill,  $v$  its height, and  $m$  and  $T$  the mass and the kinetic energy of the particle. For a system of large number of particles, the probability is (at most) the product of the probabilities for the different particles.

Let us take the case of a car in a garage, and assume that the car is made of  $10^{28}$  atoms at room temperature. A typical garage wall has a thickness of 0.1 m and a potential height of  $V = 1 \text{ keV} = 160 \text{ eV}$  for the passage of an atom. We get that the probability of finding the car outside the garage is

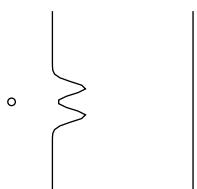
$$P \approx \left(10^{-10^{12}}\right)^{(10^{28})} \approx 10^{-10^{40}}. \quad (37)$$

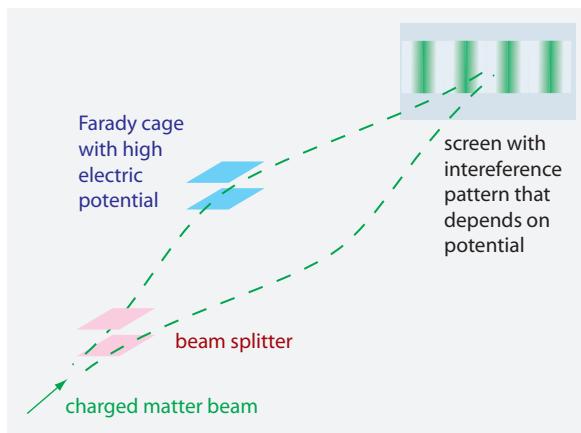
Challenge 73 e

The smallness of this value (just try to write it down, to be convinced) is the reason why it is never taken into account by the police when a car is reported missing. (Actually, the probability is even considerably smaller. Can you name at least one effect that has been forgotten in this simple calculation?)

Challenge 74 s

Obviously, tunnelling can be important only for small systems, made of a few particles, and for thin barriers, with a thickness of the order of  $\hbar/\sqrt{2m(V-T)}$ . For example, tunnelling of single atoms is observed in solids at high temperature, but is not important in daily life. For electrons, the effect is more pronounced: the barrier width  $w$





**FIGURE 49** A localized electric potential in an interferometer leads to a shift of the interference pattern.

for an appreciable tunnelling effect is

$$w \approx \frac{0.5 \text{ nm} \sqrt{aJ}}{\sqrt{V - T}} . \quad (38)$$

At room temperature, the kinetic energy  $T$  is of the order of  $6 \text{ zJ}$ ; increasing the temperature obviously increases the tunnelling. As a result, electrons tunnel quite easily through barriers that are a few atoms in width. Indeed, every TV tube uses tunnelling at high temperature to generate the electron beam producing the picture. The necessary heating is the reason why in the past, television tubes took some time to switch on.

#### Challenge 75 s

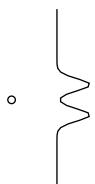
The tunnelling of electrons also limits the physical size of computer memories. Memory chips cannot be made arbitrary small. Silicon integrated circuits with one terabyte of random-access memory (RAM) will probably never exist. Can you imagine why? In fact, tunnelling limits the working of any type of memory, including that of our brain. Indeed, if we were much hotter than  $37^\circ\text{C}$ , we could not remember anything!

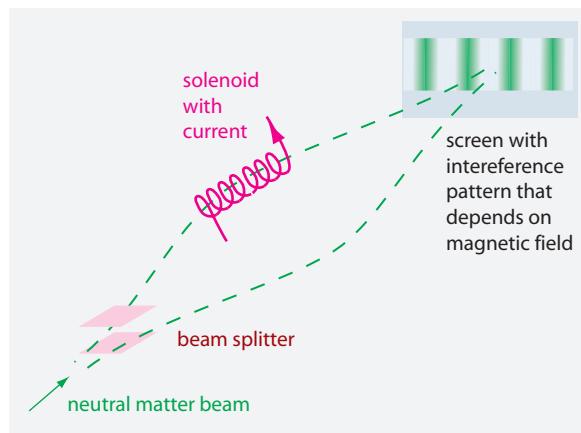
Since light is made of particles, it can also tunnel through potential barriers. The best – or highest – potential barriers for light are mirrors; mirrors have barrier heights of the order of one attojoule. Tunnelling implies that light *can* be detected behind any mirror. These so-called *evanescent waves* have indeed been detected; they are used in various high-precision experiments and devices.

### THE QUANTUM PHASE

We have seen that the *amplitude* of the wave function, the probability amplitude, shows the same effects as any wave: dispersion and damping. We now return to the *phase* of the wave function and explore it in more detail.

Whereas the amplitude of a wave function is easy to picture – just think of the (square root of the) density of a real cloud – the phase takes more effort. As mentioned, states or wave functions are *clouds with a local phase*: they are clouds of rotating arrows, i.e., clouds of objects that rotate and can be rotated. In case of an everyday water cloud, a local rotation of droplets has no effect of the cloud. In contrast, in quantum theory, the local rotation of the cloud, thus the local change of its phase, does have a measurable





**FIGURE 50** Magnetic fields change the phase of a spinning particle.

effect. Let us explore this point.

Page 56

The phase of free matter waves behaves like the phase of photons: it evolves with time, and thus increases along the path of a moving particle. The phase can be pictured by a small rotating arrow. The angular velocity with which the phase rotates is given by the famous relation  $\omega = E/\hbar$ . In short,

- ▷ We can picture the wave function of a free quantum particle as a moving cloud of arrows; the arrows rotate with constant frequency while the cloud disperses at the same time.

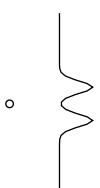
Above all, the phase is that aspect of the wave function that leads to interference effects. When two partial wave functions are separated and recombined after a relative phase change, the phase change will determine the interference pattern. This is the origin of the electron beam interference observations shown in Figure 38. Without the quantum phase, there would be no extinction and no interference.

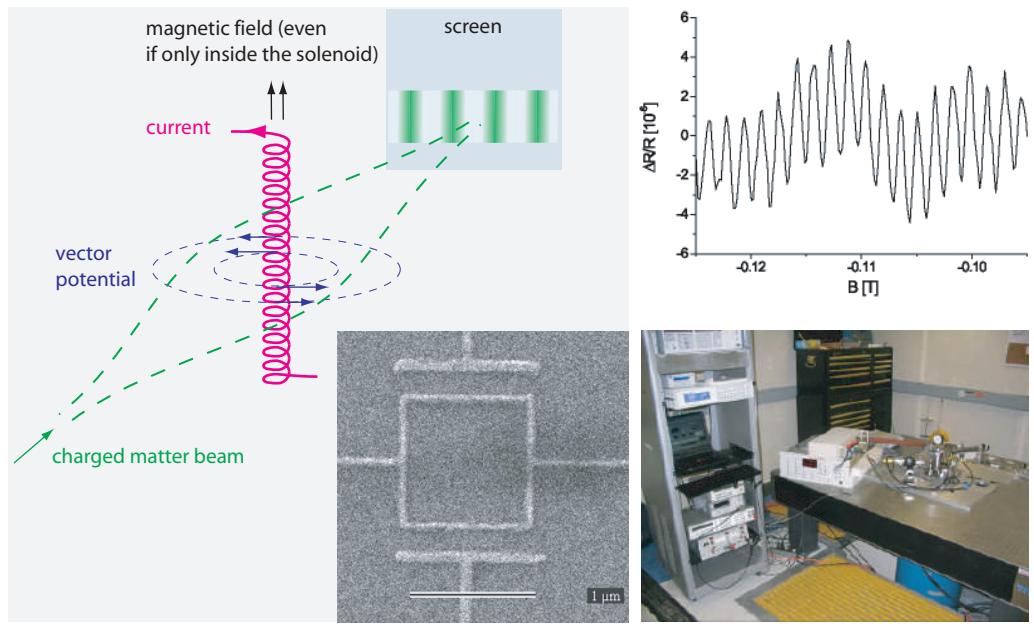
The phase of a wave function can be influenced in many ways. The simplest way is the use of electric fields. If the wave function of a *charged* particle is split, and one part is led through a region with an electric field, a phase change will result. The arrangement is shown in Figure 49. A periodic change of the electric potential should yield a periodic shift of the interference pattern. This is indeed observed.

Another simple case of phase manipulation is shown in Figure 50: also a magnetic field changes the phase of a spinning charged particle, and thus influences the interference behaviour.

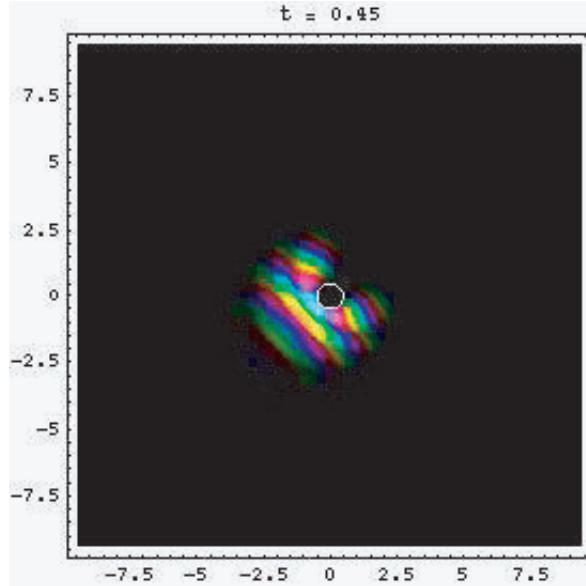
Ref. 57

A famous experiment shows the importance of the phase in an even more surprising way: the *Aharonov-Bohm effect*. The effect is famous for two reasons: it is counter-intuitive and it was predicted before it was observed. Look at the set-up shown in Figure 51. A matter wave of charged particles is split into two by a cylinder – positioned at a right angle to the matter’s path – and the matter wave recombines behind it. Inside the cylinder there is a magnetic field; outside, there is none. (A simple way to realize such a cylinder is a long solenoid.) Quantum physics predicts that an interference pattern will be observed, and that the position of the stripes will depend on the value of the mag-





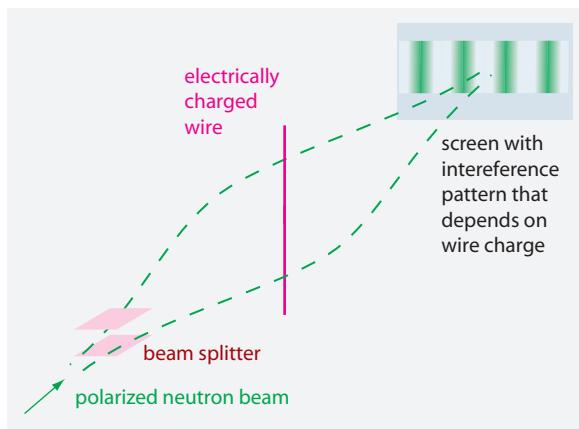
**FIGURE 51** The Aharonov-Bohm effect: the influence of the magnetic vector potential on interference (left) and a measurement confirmation (right), using a microscopic sample that transports electrons in thin metal wires (© Doru Cuturela).



**FIGURE 52** The motion of a wave function around a solenoid showing the Aharonov-Bohm effect. The density of the state is displayed by brightness, and the local phase is encoded in the colour. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

netic field. This happens even though the wave never enters the region with the field! The surprising effect has been observed in countless experiments.

The reason for the Aharonov-Bohm effect is simple: for a charged particle, the phase



**FIGURE 53** The Aharonov–Casher effect: the influence of charge on the phase leads to interference even for interfering neutrons.

Vol. III, page 83

of a wave function is determined by the vector potential  $\mathbf{A}$ , not by the magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}$ . The vector potential around a solenoid does not vanish – as we know from the section on electrodynamics – but circulates around the solenoid. This circulation distinguishes the two sides of the solenoid and leads to a phase shift – one that indeed depends on the magnetic field value – and thus produces interference, even though the particle never interacts with the magnetic field itself.

A further example for phase manipulation is the so-called *Aharonov–Casher effect*, which even occurs for neutral particles, as long as they have a magnetic moment, such as neutrons have. The phase of a *polarized* neutron will be influenced by an electric field, so that the arrangement shown in Figure 53 will show an interference pattern that depends on the applied electric potential.

Another case of phase manipulation will be presented later on: also gravitational fields can be used to rotate wave functions. Even the acceleration due to rotational motion can do so. In fact, it has been possible to measure the rotation of the Earth by observing the change of neutron beam interference patterns.

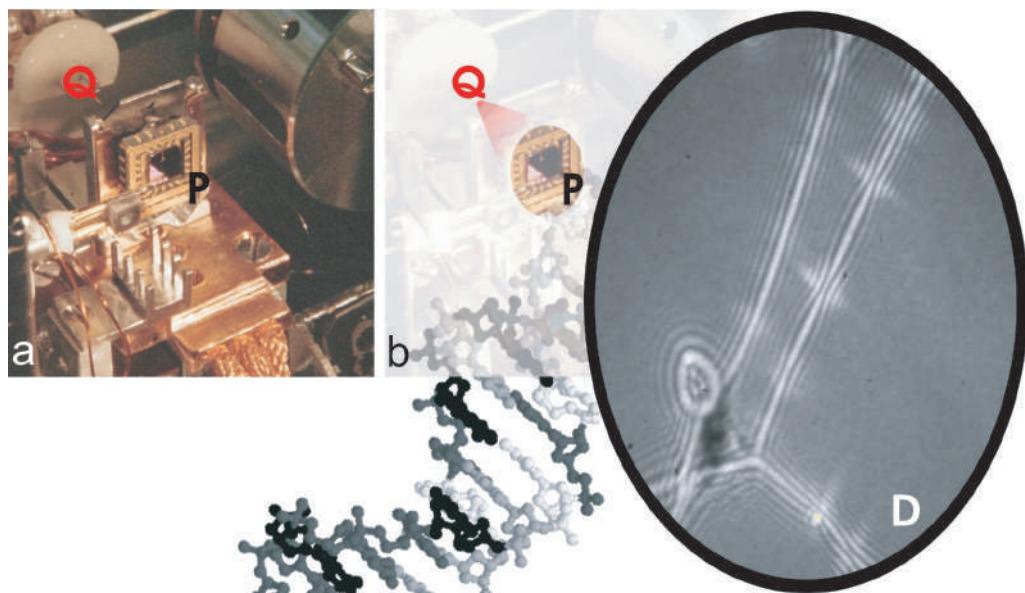
Ref. 58

Another important class of experiments that manipulate the phase of wave functions are possible with macroscopic quantum phenomena. In superconductivity and in superfluidity, the phase of the wave function is regularly manipulated with magnetic and electric fields. This possibility has many important technical applications. For example, the so-called *Josephson effect* is used to measure electric potential differences by measuring the frequency of emitted radio waves, and so-called *superconducting quantum interference devices*, or SQUIDS, are used to measure tiny magnetic fields.

Challenge 76 e

We note that all these experiments confirm that the *absolute* phase of a wave function *cannot* be measured. However, *relative phases* – phase differences or phase changes – *can* be measured. Can you confirm this?

All the phase shift effects just presented have been observed in numerous experiments. The phase is an essential aspect of the wave function: the phase leads to interference and is the main reason for calling it *wave* function in the first place. Like in any wave, the phase evolves over time and it can be influenced by various external influences. Above all, the experiments show that a localized quantum particle – thus when the spread of the wave function can be neglected – is best imagined as a rotating arrow;



**FIGURE 54** An electron hologram of DNA molecules (© Hans-Werner Fink/Wiley VCH).

in contrast, whenever the spread cannot be neglected, the wave function is best imagined as a wave of arrows rotating at each point in space.

#### CAN TWO ELECTRON BEAMS INTERFERE? ARE THERE COHERENT ELECTRON BEAMS?

Ref. 59 Do coherent electron sources exist? The question is tricky. Results in the literature, such as the one illustrated in Figure 54, state that it is possible to make holograms with electron beams.\* However, when one asks these authors about the meaning of coherence, they answer that electron coherence is only transversal, not longitudinal. Transversal coherence is determined by the possible size of wavefronts with a given phase. The upper limit of this size is given by the interactions such a state has with its environment. All this behaviour is as expected for actual coherence.

However, the concept of ‘transversal coherence’ is a misnomer. The ability to interfere with oneself, as implied in the term ‘transversal coherence’ is not the correct definition of coherence. Transversal coherence, be it for photons or for matter particles, only expresses the smallness of the particle source. Both small lamps (and lasers) can show interference when the beam is split and recombined with identical path length; this is not a proof of coherence of the light field. A similar reasoning shows that monochromaticity is not a proof for coherence either.

A state is called *coherent* if it possesses a well-defined phase throughout a given domain of space or time. The size of the spatial region or of the time interval defines the degree of coherence. This definition yields coherence lengths of the order of the source size for small ‘incoherent’ sources. Even for a small coherence length, the size of an interference pattern or the distance  $d$  between its maxima can be much larger than the

Ref. 60 \* In 2002, the first holograms have been produced that made use of neutron beams.

coherence length  $l$  or the source size  $s$ . In short, a large size (or a persistent duration in time) of an interference pattern alone is *not* a proof of coherence.

Page 47

Let us recall the situation for light. A light source is coherent if it produces an approximate sine wave over a certain length or time. Due to the indeterminacy relation, in any coherent beam of light, the photon number is undetermined. The same requirement applies to coherent electron beams: an undetermined electron number is needed for coherence. That is impossible, as electrons carry a conserved charge. Coherent electron beams do not exist.

In summary, even though an electron can interfere with itself, and even though it is possible to produce interference between two light sources, interference between two electron sources is impossible. Indeed, nobody has ever managed to produce interference between two electron sources. There is no conventional concept of coherence for electron beams.

### THE LEAST ACTION PRINCIPLE IN QUANTUM PHYSICS

Vol. I, page 253

In nature, motion happens in a way that minimizes change. Indeed, in classical physics, the principle of least action – or principle of cosmic laziness – states: in nature, the motion of a particle happens along that particular path – out of all possible paths with the same end points – for which the action is minimal. This principle of cosmic laziness or cosmic efficiency was stated mathematically by saying that in nature, the *variation*  $\delta S$  of the action is zero. Action or change minimization explains all classical evolution equations. We now transfer this idea to the quantum domain.

For quantum systems, we need to redefine both the concept of action and the concept of variation: first of all, we have to find a description of action that is based on operators; secondly, we need to define the action variation without paths, as the concept of ‘path’ does not exist for quantum systems; thirdly, since there is a smallest action in nature, a vanishing variation is not a clearly defined concept, and we must overcome this hurdle. There are two main ways to achieve this goal: to describe the motion of quantum systems as a superposition of all possible paths, or to describe action with the help of wave functions. Both approaches are equivalent.

Page 56

In the first approach, the *path integral formulation*, the motion of a quantum particle is described as a democratic superposition of motions along all possible paths. (We called it the ‘arrow model’ above.) For each path, the evolution of the arrow is determined, and at the end point, the arrows from all paths are added. The action for each path is the number of turns that the arrow performs along the path. The result from this exercise is that the path for which the arrow makes the smallest number of turns is usually (but not always!) the most probable path. A more precise investigation shows that classical, macroscopic systems always follow only the path of smallest action, whereas quantum systems follow all paths.

Vol. I, page 248

In the second approach to quantum physics, action is defined with the help of wave functions. In classical physics, we defined the action (or change) as the integral of the Lagrangian between the initial and final points in time, and the Lagrangian itself as the difference between kinetic and potential energy. In quantum physics, the simplest definition is the *quantum action* defined by Julian Schwinger. Let us call the initial and final

states of the system  $\psi_i$  and  $\psi_f$ . The action  $S$  between these two states is defined as

$$S = \langle \psi_i | \int L dt | \psi_f \rangle , \quad (39)$$

where  $L$  is the Lagrangian (operator). The angle brackets represent the ‘multiplication’ of states and operators as defined in quantum theory.\* In simple words, also in quantum theory, action – i.e., the change occurring in a system – is the integral of the Lagrangian. The Lagrangian operator  $L$  is defined in the same way as in classical physics: the Lagrangian  $L = T - V$  is the difference between the kinetic energy  $T$  and the potential energy  $V$  operators. The only difference is that, in quantum theory, the momentum and position *variables* of classical physics are replaced by the corresponding *operators* of quantum physics.\*\*

To transfer the concept of action variation  $\delta S$  to the quantum domain, Julian Schwinger introduced the straightforward expression

$$\delta S = \langle \psi_i | \delta \int L dt | \psi_f \rangle . \quad (40)$$

The concept of path is not needed in this expression, as the variation of the action is based on varying wave functions instead of varying particle paths.

The last classical requirement to be transferred to the quantum domain is that, because nature is lazy, the variation of the action must vanish. However, in the quantum domain, the variation of the action cannot be zero, as the smallest observable action is the quantum of action. As Julian Schwinger discovered, there is only one possible way to express the required minimality of action:

$$\delta S = \langle \psi_i | \delta \int L dt | \psi_f \rangle = -i\hbar \delta \langle \psi_i | \psi_f \rangle . \quad (41)$$

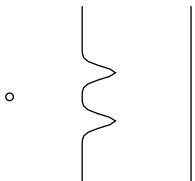
This so-called *quantum action principle* describes all motion in the quantum domain. Classically, the right-hand side is zero – since  $\hbar$  is taken to be zero – and we then recover the minimum-action principle  $\delta S = 0$  of classical physics. But in quantum theory, whenever we try to achieve small variations, we encounter the quantum of action and changes of (relative) phase. This is expressed by the right-hand side of the expression. The right side is the reason that the evolution equations for the wave function – Schrödinger’s equation for the spinless non-relativistic case, or Dirac’s equation for the spin 1/2 relativistic case – are valid in nature.

In other words, all quantum motion – i.e., the quantum evolution of a state  $\psi$  or  $|\psi\rangle$  – happens in such a way that the action variation is the same as  $-i$  times the quantum of action  $\hbar$  times the variation of the scalar product between initial and final states. In

---

\* We skip the details of notation and mathematics here; in the simplest description, states are wave functions, operators act on these functions, and the product of two different brackets is the integral of the function product over space.

\*\* More precisely, there is also a condition governing the ordering of operators in a mixed product, so that the non-commutativity of operators is taken into account. We do not explore this issue here.



simple terms, in the actual motion, the intermediate states are fixed by the requirement that they must lead from the initial state to the final state with the smallest number of effective turns of the state phase. The factor  $-i$  expresses the dependence of the action on the rotation of the wave function.

In summary, the least action principle is also valid in quantum physics, provided one takes into account that action values below  $\hbar$  cannot be found in experiments. The least action principle governs the evolution of wave function. The least action principle thus explains the colour of all things, all other material science, all chemistry and all biology, as we will see in the following.

### THE MOTION OF QUANTONS WITH SPIN

“Everything turns.

Anonymous

What is the origin of the quantum phase? Classical physics helps to answer the question.

Like everyday objects, also quantons can rotate around an axis: we speak of particle *spin*.

**Page 82** But if quantum particles can spin, they should possess angular momentum. And indeed, experiments confirm this deduction.

**Ref. 61** In particular, electrons have spin. The full details of electron spin were deduced from experiments by two Dutch students, George Uhlenbeck and Samuel Goudsmit, in 1925. They had the guts to publish what Ralph Kronig had also suspected: that electrons rotate around an axis with a projected component of the angular momentum given by  $\hbar/2$ . In fact, this value – often called spin 1/2 for short – is valid for *all* elementary *matter* particles. (In contrast, all known elementary *radiation* particles have spin values of  $\hbar$ , or spin 1 for short.)

**Page 83** If a spinning particle has angular momentum, it must be possible to rearrange the axis by applying a torque, to observe precession, to transfer the spin in collisions, etc. All these effects are indeed observed; for example, the Stern–Gerlach experiment already allows **Page 82** all these observations. The only difference between particle spin and classical angular momentum is that particle spin is quantized, as we deduced above.

In other words, the *spin L* of a quantum particle has all the properties of a rotation around an axis. As a consequence, spinning *charged* quantum particles act as small dipole magnets, with the magnet oriented along the axis of rotation. The observed strength of the dipole magnet, the *magnetic moment*, is proportional to the spin and to the conversion factor  $-e/2m_e$ , as expected from classical physics. Therefore, the natural unit for the magnetic moment of the electron is the quantity  $\mu_B = e\hbar/2m_e$ ; it is called *Bohr's magneton*. It turns out that the magnetic moment  $\mu$  of quantons behaves differently from that of classical particles. The quantum effects of spin are described by the so-called *g-factor*, which is a pure number:

$$\mu = g \frac{-e}{2m_e} L = -g\mu_B \frac{L}{\hbar}, \quad \text{with} \quad \mu_B = \frac{e\hbar}{2m_e}. \quad (42)$$

**Page 107** From the observed optical spectra, Uhlenbeck and Goudsmit deduced a *g*-factor of 2 for the electron. Classically, one expects a value  $g = 1$ . The experimental value  $g = 2$  was

Ref. 62 explained by Llewellyn Thomas as a relativistic effect a few months after its experimental discovery.

By 2004, experimental techniques had become so sensitive that the magnetic effect of a single electron spin attached to an impurity (in an otherwise non-magnetic material) could be detected. Researchers now hope to improve these so-called ‘magnetic-resonance-force microscopes’ until they reach atomic resolution.

In 1927, Wolfgang Pauli\* discovered how to include spin 1/2 in a quantum-mechanical description: instead of a state function described by a single complex number, a state function with *two* complex components is needed. The reason for this expansion is simple. In general, the little rotating arrow that describes a quantum state does *not* rotate around a *fixed* axis, as is assumed by the Schrödinger equation; the *axis of rotation* has also to be specified at each position in space. This implies that two additional parameters are required at each space point, bringing the total number of parameters to four real numbers, or, equivalently, two complex numbers. Nowadays, Pauli’s equation for quantum mechanics with spin is mainly of conceptual interest, because – like that of Schrödinger – it does not comply with special relativity.

In summary, the non-relativistic description of a quanton with spin implies the use of wave functions that specify *two* complex numbers at each point in space and time. The additional complex number describe the local rotation plane of the spin. The idea of including the local rotation plane was also used by Dirac when he introduced the relativistic description of the electron, and the idea is also used in all other wave equations for particles with spin.

### RELATIVISTIC WAVE EQUATIONS

In 1899, Max Planck had discovered the quantum of action. In 1905, Albert Einstein published the theory of special relativity, which was based on the idea that the speed of light  $c$  is independent of the speed of the observer. The first question Planck asked himself was whether the value of the quantum of action would be independent of the speed of the observer. It was his interest in this question that led him to invite Einstein to Berlin. With this invitation, he made the patent-office clerk famous in the world of physics.

Experiments show that the quantum of action is indeed independent of the speed of the observer. All observers find the same minimum value. To include special relativity into quantum theory, we therefore need to find the correct quantum Hamiltonian  $H$ , i.e., the correct energy operator.

---

Ref. 63 \* Wolfgang Ernst Pauli (b. 1900 Vienna, d. 1958 Zürich), at the age of 21, wrote one of the best texts on special and general relativity. He was the first to calculate the energy levels of hydrogen using quantum theory, discovered the exclusion principle, incorporated spin into quantum theory, elucidated the relation between spin and statistics, proved the CPT theorem, and predicted the neutrino. He was admired for his intelligence, and feared for his biting criticisms, which led to his nickname, ‘conscience of physics’. Despite this trait, he helped many people in their research, such as Heisenberg with quantum theory, without claiming any credit for himself. He was seen by many, including Einstein, as the greatest and sharpest mind of twentieth-century physics. He was also famous for the ‘Pauli effect’, i.e., his ability to trigger disasters in laboratories, machines and his surroundings by his mere presence. As we will see shortly, one can argue that Pauli actually received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1945 – officially ‘for the discovery of the exclusion principle’ – for finally settling the question of how many angels can dance on the tip of a pin.

For a free relativistic particle, the classical Hamiltonian function – that is, the energy of the particle – is given by

$$H = \pm \sqrt{c^4 m^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2} \quad \text{with} \quad \mathbf{p} = \gamma m \mathbf{v}. \quad (43)$$

Thus we can ask: what is the corresponding Hamilton operator for the quantum world? The simplest answer was given, in 1949 by T.D. Newton and E.P. Wigner, and in 1950, by Ref. 64 L.L. Foldy and S.A. Wouthuysen. The operator is almost the same one:

$$H = \beta \sqrt{c^4 m^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2} \quad \text{with} \quad \beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (44)$$

The signs appearing in the matrix operator  $\beta$  distinguish, as we will see, between particles and antiparticles. The numbers +1 and -1 appear twice, to take care of the two possible spin directions for each case.

With this relativistic Hamiltonian operator for spin 1/2 particles – and with all others – the wave function is described by *four* complex numbers, *two* for particles and *two* for antiparticles. Why? We saw above that a quantum particle with spin requires two complex components for its state; this followed from the requirement to specify, at each point in space, the length of the arrow, its phase, and its plane of rotation. Earlier on we also found that relativity automatically introduces antimatter. (We will explore the issue in more detail below.) Both matter and antimatter are thus part of any relativistic description of quantum effects. The wave function for a particle has vanishing antiparticle components, and vice versa. In total, the wave function for relativistic spin 1/2 particle has thus *four* complex components.

The Hamilton operator yields the velocity operator  $\mathbf{v}$  through the same relation that is valid in classical physics:

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{x} = \beta \frac{\mathbf{p}}{\sqrt{c^4 m^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2}}. \quad (45)$$

This velocity operator shows a continuum of eigenvalues, from minus to plus the speed of light. The velocity  $\mathbf{v}$  is a constant of motion, as are the momentum  $\mathbf{p}$  and the energy

$$E = \sqrt{c^4 m^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2}. \quad (46)$$

Also the orbital angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  is defined as in classical physics, through

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p}. \quad (47)$$

Ref. 65 The orbital angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  and the spin  $\sigma$  are separate constants of motion. A particle (or antiparticle) with positive (or negative) angular momentum component has

a wave function with only one non-vanishing component; the other three components vanish.

But alas, the representation of relativistic motion named after Foldy and Wouthuysen is not the simplest when it comes to take electromagnetic interactions into account. The simple identity between the classical and quantum-mechanical descriptions is lost when electromagnetism is included. We will solve this problem below, when we explore Dirac's evolution equation for relativistic wave functions.

Page 189

### BOUND MOTION, OR COMPOSITE VS. ELEMENTARY QUANTONS

When is an object composite, and not elementary? Whenever it contains internal, or bound motion. When is this the case? Quantum theory gives several pragmatic answers.

Ref. 66

Page 189

The first criterion for compositeness is somewhat strange: an object is composite when its gyromagnetic ratio is different from the one predicted by quantum electrodynamics. The *gyromagnetic ratio*  $\gamma$  – not to be confused with the relativistic dilation factor – is defined as the ratio between the magnetic moment  $M$  and the angular momentum  $L$ :

$$M = \gamma L . \quad (48)$$

Challenge 77 e

Vol. V, page 163

The gyromagnetic ratio  $\gamma$  is measured in units of  $s^{-1}T^{-1}$ , i.e., C/kg, and determines the energy levels of magnetic spinning particles in magnetic fields; it will reappear later in the context of magnetic resonance imaging. All candidates for elementary particles have spin 1/2. The gyromagnetic ratio for spin-1/2 particles of magnetic moment  $M$  and mass  $m$  can be written as

$$\gamma = \frac{M}{\hbar/2} = g \frac{e}{2m} . \quad (49)$$

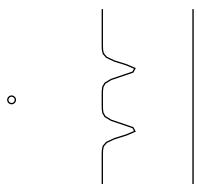
Page 189

Vol. V, page 163

The criterion for being elementary can thus be reduced to a condition on the value of the dimensionless number  $g$ , the so-called *g-factor*. (The expression  $e\hbar/2m$  is often called the *magneton* of the particle.) If the *g*-factor differs from the value predicted by quantum electrodynamics for point particles – about 2.0 – the object is *composite*. For example, a  ${}^4He^+$  helium ion has spin 1/2 and a *g* value of  $14.7 \cdot 10^3$ . Indeed, the radius of the helium ion is  $3 \cdot 10^{-11}$  m, obviously a finite value, and the ion is a composite entity. For the proton, one measures a *g*-factor of about 5.6. Indeed, experiments yield a finite proton radius of about 0.9 fm and show that it contains several constituents.

The neutron, which has a magnetic moment despite being electrically neutral, must therefore be composite. Indeed, its radius is approximately the same as that of the proton. Similarly, molecules, mountains, stars and people must be composite. According to this first criterion, the only elementary particles are *leptons* (i.e., electrons, muons, tauons and neutrinos), *quarks*, and *intermediate bosons* (i.e., photons, W-bosons, Z-bosons and gluons). More details on these particles will be revealed in the chapters on the nucleus.

Another simple criterion for compositeness has just been mentioned: *any object with a measurable size is composite*. This criterion yields the same list of elementary particles as the first. Indeed, the two criteria are related. The simplest model for composite structures



Ref. 67 predicts that the  $g$ -factor obeys

$$g - 2 = \frac{R}{\lambda_C} \quad (50)$$

where  $R$  is the radius and  $\lambda_C = h/mc$  is the Compton wavelength of the system. This expression is surprisingly precise for helium-4 ions, helium-3, tritium ions and protons, as you may wish to check. The tables in Appendix B in the next volume make the same point. In short, the second criterion for compositeness is equivalent to the first.

A third criterion for compositeness is more general: *any object larger than its Compton length is composite*. The argument is simple. An object is composite if one can detect *internal motion*, i.e., motion of some components. Now the action of any part with mass  $m_{\text{part}}$  moving inside a composed system of size  $r$  obeys

$$S_{\text{part}} < 2\pi r m_{\text{part}} c < \pi r m c \quad (51)$$

where  $m$  is the mass of the *composite* object. On the other hand, following the principle of quantum theory, this action, to be observable, must be larger than  $\hbar/2$ . Inserting this condition, we find that for any composite object\*

$$r > \frac{\hbar}{2\pi m c} . \quad (52)$$

The right-hand side differs only by a factor  $4\pi^2$  from the so-called *Compton (wave)length*

$$\lambda = \frac{\hbar}{m c} \quad (53)$$

of an object. Thus any object *larger* than its own Compton wavelength is composite; and any object *smaller* than the right-hand side of expression (52) is elementary. Again, only leptons, quarks and intermediate bosons passed the test. (For the Higgs boson discovered in 2012, the test has yet to be performed, but it is expected to comply as well.) All other objects are composite. In short, this third criterion produces the same list as the previous ones. Can you explain why?

Challenge 80 e

Vol. V, page 262

Challenge 81 s

Vol. VI, page 313

A fourth criterion for compositeness is regularly cited by Steven Weinberg: a particle is elementary if it appears in the Lagrangian of the standard model of particle physics, i.e., in the description of the fundamental building blocks of nature. Can you show that this criterion follows from the previous ones?

Interestingly, we are not yet finished with this topic. Even stranger statements about compositeness will appear when gravity is taken into account. Just be patient: it is worth it.

Challenge 79 ny

---

\* Can you find the missing factor of 2? And is the assumption that the components must always be lighter than the composite a valid one?

## CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT QUANTUM MOTION OF MATTER

“ Die meisten Physiker sind sehr naiv, sie glauben immer noch an wirkliche Wellen oder Teilchen.\*

Anton Zeilinger

Take the sharpest knife edge or needle tip you can think of: the quantum of action implies that their boundaries are not sharp, but fuzzy, like the boundaries of clouds. Take the hardest or most solid object you can think of, such as diamond or a block of tungsten: the quantum of action implies that its surface is somewhat soft. All experiments confirm these statements. *Nothing in nature is really sharp or really solid.* Quantum physics thus disagrees with several ideas of the ancient Greek atomists.

\* \*

Do hydrogen atoms exist? Most types of atom have been imaged with microscopes, photographed under illumination, levitated one by one, and even moved with needles, one by one, as the picture on [page 344](#) in volume I shows. Researchers have even moved single atoms by using laser beams to push them. However, not a single one of these experiments has measured or imaged hydrogen atoms. Is that a reason to doubt the existence of hydrogen atoms? Taking this not-so-serious discussion seriously can be a lot of fun.

Ref. 68

Challenge 82 s

Challenge 83 e

Challenge 84 d

Challenge 85 ny

Is the wave function 'real'? More precisely, is the wave function really a cloud? Some physicists still doubt this. This dying group of physicists, often born around the middle of the twentieth century, have heard so often – incorrectly and usually from questionable authorities – that a wave function has no reality that they stopped asking and answering the simplest questions. To dispel their doubts, ask them whether they have a non-zero height or whether they think that atoms are round. If they agree, they have admitted that wave functions have some sort of reality. All everyday objects are made of elementary particles that are so unmeasurably small that we can call them point-like. Therefore, the size, surface area and volume of all everyday objects are exclusively due to wave functions. Every length, area and volume is a proof that wave functions have some sort of reality.

\* \*

Two observables can commute for two different reasons: either they are very *similar* – such as the coordinates  $x$  and  $x^2$  – or they are very *different* – such as the coordinate  $x$  and the momentum  $p_y$ . Can you give an explanation for this?

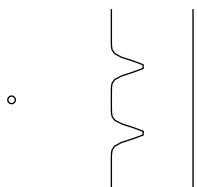
\* \*

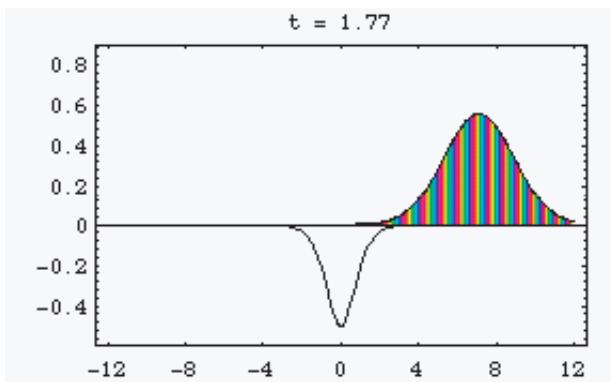
Space and time translations commute. Why then do the momentum operator and the Hamiltonian not commute in general?

\* \*

---

\* 'Most physicists are very naive; they still believe in real waves or real particles.' Anton Zeilinger, physicist at the University of Vienna, is well-known for his experiments on quantum mechanics.





**FIGURE 55** A special potential well that does *not* disturb a wave function. Colour indicates phase. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

There exist special potentials that have *no* influence on a wave function. [Figure 55](#) shows an example. This potential has reflection coefficient zero for all energies; the scattered wave has no reflected part. The mathematical reason is fascinating. The potential well has the shape of a soliton of the Korteweg–de Vries equation; this equation is related to the Schrödinger equation.

\* \*

Any bound system in a non-relativistic state with no angular momentum obeys the relation

$$\langle r^2 \rangle \langle T \rangle \geq \frac{9\hbar^2}{8m}, \quad (54)$$

where  $m$  is the reduced mass and  $T$  the kinetic energy of the components, and  $r$  is the size of the system. Can you deduce this result, and check it for the ground state of hydrogen?

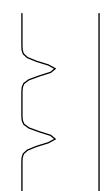
[Challenge 86 s](#)

\* \*

In high school, it often makes sense to visualize electron wave functions as a special type of fluid-like matter, called *electronium*, that has a negative charge density. In this visualization, an atom is a positive nucleus surrounded by an electronium cloud. Deforming the electronium cloud around a nucleus requires energy; this happens when a photon of the correct frequency is absorbed, for example. When atoms of the right kind approach each other, the electronium clouds often form stable bridges – chemical bonds.

\* \*

Quantum theory allows for many unusual bound states. Usually we think of bound states as states of low energy. But there are situations in which bound states arise due to forcing in oscillating potentials. We encountered such a situation in classical physics: the vertically driven, upside-down pendulum that remain vertical despite being unstable. Similar situations also occur in quantum physics. Examples are Paul traps, the helium atom, negative ions, Trojan electrons and particle accelerators.



\* \*

One often reads that the universe might have been born from a quantum fluctuation.  
**Challenge 87 s** Can you explain why this statement make no sense?

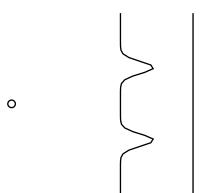
#### A SUMMARY ON MOTION OF MATTER QUANTONS

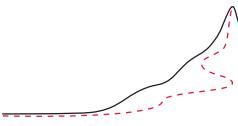
In summary, the motion of massive quantons, i.e., of quantum matter particles, can be described in two ways:

- At high magnification, quantum matter particles are described by wave functions that move like *advancing, rotating and precessing clouds of arrows*. The local cloud orientation, or local phase, follows a wobbling motion. The square of the wave function, i.e., the density of the cloud, is the probability for finding the particle at a given spot.
- Seen from far away, at low magnification, a moving massive quantum particle behaves as a single advancing, rotating and precessing arrow. The details of the rotation and precession of the arrow depend on the energy and momentum of the particle and the potential it is subjected to. The arrow is a probability amplitude: the squared length of the arrow is the probability to observe the particle. If a particle can get from a starting point to a final point in several ways, the probability amplitudes for each way add up.

The single rotating arrow results from a cloud average. The single arrow combines particle and wave properties. A full rotation of the arrow corresponds to the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . This central feature implies that a non-relativistic particle whose spin can be neglected follows the Schrödinger equation, and that a relativistic electron follows the Dirac equation. The Dirac equation agrees with all known experiments. In particular, the Dirac equation describes all of materials science, chemistry and biology, as we will find out.

To continue with the greatest efficiency on our path across quantum physics, we explore three important topics: the indistinguishability of particles of the same kind, the spin of quantum particles, and the meaning of probabilities.





## CHAPTER 5

## PERMUTATION OF PARTICLES – ARE PARTICLES LIKE GLOVES?

Why are we able to distinguish twins from each other? Why can we distinguish what looks alike, such as a copy from an original? Most of us are convinced that whenever we compare an original with a copy, we can find a difference. This conviction turns out to be correct also in the quantum domain, but the conclusion is not straightforward.

Challenge 88 s Think about any method that allows you to distinguish objects: you will find that it runs into trouble for point-like particles. Therefore, in the quantum domain something must change about our ability to distinguish particles and objects.

We could argue that differences between an original object and a copy can always be made to disappear: it should be sufficient to use the same number and type of atoms. In fact, the quantum of action shows that this is not sufficient, even though all atoms of the same type are indeed indistinguishable copies of each other! In the following we explore the most important consequences on motion of the indistinguishability of atoms and of the distinguishability of macroscopic objects.

## DISTINGUISHING MACROSCOPIC OBJECTS

A number of important properties of objects are highlighted by studying a combinatorial puzzle: the *glove problem*. It asks:

How many surgical gloves (for the right hand) are necessary if  $m$  doctors need to operate  $w$  patients in a hygienic way, so that nobody gets in contact with the body fluids of anybody else?

The same problem also appears in other settings. For example, it also applies to computers, interfaces and computer viruses or to condoms, men and women – and is then called the *condom problem*. To be clear, the optimal number of gloves is *not* the product  $mw$ . In fact, the problem has three subcases.

Challenge 89 s Ref. 71 – The simple case  $m = w = 2$  already provides the most important ideas needed. Are you able to find the optimal solution and procedure?

Challenge 90 e Ref. 72 – In the case  $w = 1$  and  $m$  odd, the solution is  $(m + 1)/2$  gloves. The corresponding expression  $(w+1)/2$  holds for the case  $m = 1$  and  $w$  odd. This is the optimal solution, as you can easily check yourself.

Ref. 72 – A solution with a simple procedure for all other cases is given by  $\lceil 2w/3 + m/2 \rceil$  gloves, where  $\lceil x \rceil$  means the smallest integer greater than or equal to  $x$ . For example, for two

Challenge 91 e

doctors and three patients this gives only three gloves. (However, this formula does not always give the optimal solution; better values exist in certain subcases.)

Vol. VI, page 114

Vol. V, page 246

Enjoy working on the puzzle. You will find that three basic properties of gloves determine the solution. First, gloves have two sides, an interior and an exterior one, that can be distinguished from each other. Secondly, gloves turned inside out exchange left and right and can thus be distinguished from gloves that are not reversed. Thirdly, gloves can be distinguished from each other.

Now we come back to our original aim: Do the three basic properties of gloves also apply to quantum particles? We will explore the issue of double-sidedness of quantum particles in the last part of our mountain ascent. The question whether particles can be turned inside out will be of importance for their description and their motion. We will also explore the difference between right- and left-handed particles, though in the next part of our adventure. In the present chapter we concentrate on the third issue, namely whether objects and particles can always be distinguished from copies. We will find that *elementary* particles do not behave like gloves – but in a much more surprising manner.

In everyday life, distinction of macroscopic objects can be achieved in two ways. On the one hand, we are able to distinguish objects – or people – from each other because they differ in their *intrinsic properties*, such as their mass, colour, size or shape. On the other hand, we are able to distinguish objects even if they have the same intrinsic properties. Any game of billiard shows us that by following the path of each ball, we can distinguish it from the other balls. In short, we can distinguish objects with identical properties also using their *state*.

The state of a billiard ball is given by its position, its linear and its angular momentum. We are able to distinguish two identical billiard balls because the measurement error for the position of each ball is much smaller than the size of the ball itself. The different states of two billiard balls allow us to track each ball. However, in the microscopic domain, this is not possible! Let us take two atoms of the same type. Two such atoms have exactly the same intrinsic properties. To distinguish them in collisions, we would need to keep track of their motion. But due to the quantum of action and the ensuing indeterminacy relation, we have no chance to achieve this. In fact, a simple experiment from the nineteenth century showed that even nature itself is not able to do it! This profound result was discovered studying systems which incorporate a large number of colliding atoms of the same type: *gases*.

### DISTINGUISHING ATOMS

Vol. I, page 402

What is the entropy of a gas? The calculation of the entropy  $S$  of a simple gas, made of  $N$  simple particles\* of mass  $m$  moving in a volume  $V$ , gives

$$\frac{S}{kN} = \ln \left[ \frac{V}{\Lambda^3} \right] + \frac{3}{2} + \frac{\ln \alpha}{N}. \quad (55)$$

Here,  $k$  is the Boltzmann constant,  $\ln$  the natural logarithm,  $T$  the temperature, and  $\Lambda = \sqrt{2\pi\hbar^2/mkT}$  is the thermal wavelength (approximately the de Broglie wavelength of the

\* Particles are *simple* if they are fully described by their momentum and position; atoms are simple particles. Molecules are not simple, as they are described also by their orientation.



FIGURE 56 Willard Gibbs (1839–1903)

Challenge 92 e

Challenge 93 e

Ref. 73

particles making up the gas). In this result, the pure number  $\alpha$  is equal to 1 if the particles are distinguishable like billiard balls, and equal to  $1/N!$  if they are not distinguishable at all. Measuring the entropy of a simple gas thus allows us to determine  $\alpha$  and therefore to test experimentally whether particles are distinguishable.

It turns out that only the second case,  $\alpha = 1/N!$ , describes nature. We can easily check this without even performing the measurement: only in the second case does the entropy of two volumes of identical gas *add up*.<sup>\*</sup> The result, often called *Gibbs' paradox*,<sup>\*\*</sup> thus proves that the microscopic components of matter are *indistinguishable*: in a system of quantum particles – be they electrons, protons, atoms or small molecules – there is no way to say which particle is which.

Indistinguishability of particles is thus an experimental property of nature. It holds without exception. For example, when radioactivity was discovered, people thought that it contradicted the indistinguishability of atoms, because decay seems to single out certain atoms compared to others. But quantum theory then showed that this is not the case and that even atoms and molecules are indistinguishable.

Since  $\hbar$  appears in the expression for the entropy, indistinguishability is a quantum effect. Indeed, indistinguishability plays no role if quantum effects are negligible, as is the case for billiard balls. Nevertheless, indistinguishability is important in everyday life. We will find out that the properties of everyday matter – plasma, gases, liquids and solids – would be completely different without indistinguishability. For example, we will discover that without it, knives and swords would not cut. In addition, the soil would not carry us; we would fall right through it. To illuminate the issue in more detail, we explore the following question.

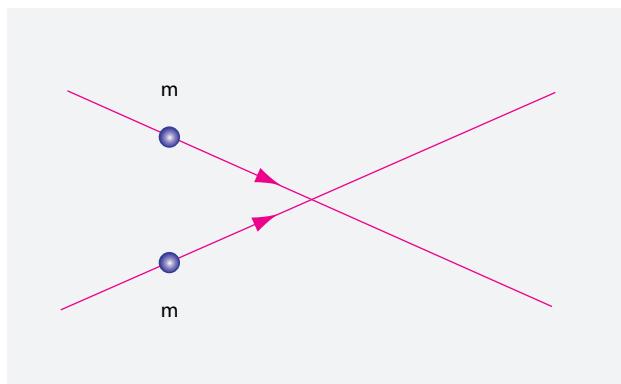
Challenge 94 d

\* Indeed, the entropy values observed by experiment, for a monoatomic gas, are given by the so-called Sackur-Tetrode formula

$$\frac{S}{kN} = \ln \left[ \frac{V}{N\Lambda^3} \right] + \frac{5}{2} \quad (56)$$

which follows when  $\alpha = 1/N!$  is inserted above. It was deduced independently by the German physicist Otto Sackur (1880–1914) and the Dutch physicist Hugo Tetrode (1895–1931). Note that the essential parameter is the ratio between  $V/N$ , the classical volume per particle, and  $\Lambda^3$ , the de Broglie volume of a quantum particle.

\*\* Josiah Willard Gibbs (1839–1903), US-American physicist who was, with Maxwell and Planck, one of the three founders of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics; he introduced the concept of *ensemble* and the term *thermodynamic phase*.



**FIGURE 57** Identical objects with crossing paths.

#### WHY DOES INDISTINGUISHABILITY APPEAR IN NATURE?

Take two quantum particles with the same mass, the same composition and the same shape, such as two atoms of the same kind. Imagine that their paths cross, and that they approach each other to small distances at the crossing, as shown in Figure 57. In a gas, both a collision of atoms or a near miss are examples. Now, all experiments ever performed show that at small distances it is impossible to say whether the two quantons have switched roles or not.

- ▷ It is *impossible* in a gas to follow quantum particles moving around and to determine which one is which. Tracking colliding quantons is impossible.

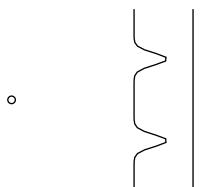
The impossibility to distinguish nearby particles is a direct consequence of the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . For a path that brings two approaching particles very close to each other, a role switch requires only a small amount of change, i.e., only a small (physical) action. However, we know that there is a smallest observable action in nature. Keeping track of each quantum particle at small distances would require action values *smaller* than the quantum of action. The existence of the quantum of action thus makes it impossible to keep track of quantum particles when they come too near to each other. Any description of systems with several quantons must thus take into account that after a close encounter, it is impossible to say which quanton is which.

If we remember that quantum theory describes quantons as clouds, the indistinguishability appears even more natural. Whenever two clouds meet and depart again, it is impossible to say which cloud is which. On the other hand, if two particles are kept distant enough, one does have an effective distinguishability; indistinguishability thus appears only when the particles come close.

In short, indistinguishability is a natural, unavoidable consequence of the existence of a smallest action value in nature. This result leads us straight away to the next question:

#### CAN QUANTUM PARTICLES BE COUNTED?

In everyday life, we can count objects because we can distinguish them. Since quantum particles cannot always be distinguished, we need some care in determining how to count



them. The first step in counting particles is the definition of what is meant by a situation without any particle at all. This seems an easy thing to do, but later on we will encounter situations where already this step runs into difficulties. In any case, the first step of counting is thus the *specification of the vacuum*. Any counting method requires that the situation without particles is clearly separated from situations with particles.

The second step necessary for counting is the specification of an observable useful for determining quantum particle number. The easiest way is to choose one of those conserved quantum numbers that add up under composition, such as electric charge. Counting itself is then performed by measuring the total charge and dividing by the unit charge.

In everyday life, the weight or mass is commonly used as observable. However, it cannot be used generally in the quantum domain, except for simple cases. For a large number of particles, the interaction energy will introduce errors. For very large particle numbers, the gravitational binding energy will do so as well. But above all, for transient phenomena, unstable particles or short measurement times, mass measurements reach their limits. In short, even though counting stable atoms through mass measurements works in everyday life, the method is not applicable in general; especially at high particle energies, it cannot be applied.

Counting with the help of conserved quantum numbers has several advantages. First of all, it works also for transient phenomena, unstable particles or short measurement times. Secondly, it is not important whether the particles are distinguishable or not; counting always works. Thirdly, virtual particles are not counted. This is a welcome state of affairs, as we will see, because for virtual particles, i.e., particles for which  $E^2 \neq p^2c^2 + m^2c^4$ , there is *no way* to define a particle number anyway. Using a conserved quantity is indeed the best particle counting method possible.

The side effect of counting with the help of quantum numbers is that antiparticles count negatively! Also this consequence is a result of the quantum of action. We saw above that the quantum of action implies that even in vacuum, particle–antiparticle pairs are observed at sufficiently high energies. As a result, an antiparticle must count as minus one particle. In other words, any way of counting quantum particles can produce an error due to this effect. In everyday life this limitation plays no role, as there is no antimatter around us. The issue does play a role at higher energies, however. It turns out that there is no general way to count the exact number of particles and antiparticles separately; only the sum can be defined. In short, quantum theory shows that particle counting is never perfect.

In summary, nature does provide a way to count quantum particles even if they cannot be distinguished, though only for everyday, low energy conditions; due to the quantum of action, antiparticles count negatively. Antiparticles thus provide a limit to the counting of particles at high energies, when the mass–energy equivalence becomes important.

### WHAT IS PERMUTATION SYMMETRY?

Since quantum particles are countable but indistinguishable, there exists a symmetry of nature for systems composed of several identical quantons. *Permutation symmetry*, also called *exchange symmetry*, is the property of nature that observations are unchanged under exchange of identical particles. Permutation symmetry forms one of the four pil-

lars of quantum theory, together with space-time symmetry, gauge symmetry and the not yet encountered renormalization symmetry. Permutation symmetry is a property of *composed* systems, i.e., of systems made of many (identical) subsystems. Only for such systems does indistinguishability play a role.

In other words, ‘indistinguishable’ is not the same as ‘identical’. Two quantum particles of the same type are not the *same*; they are more like exact copies of each other. On the other hand, everyday life experience shows us that two copies can always be distinguished under close inspection, so that the term ‘copy’ is not fully appropriate either.

- ▷ Quantons, quantum particles, are countable and completely indistinguishable.\* Quantum particles are *perfect copies* of each other.

Being perfect copies, not even nature can distinguish particles; as a result, permutation symmetry appears.

Challenge 95 e

In the next chapter, we will discover that permutation is partial rotation. Permutation symmetry thus is a symmetry under partial rotations. Can you find out why?

Challenge 96 s

### INDISTINGUISHABILITY AND WAVE FUNCTION SYMMETRY

The indistinguishability of quantum particles leads to important conclusions about the description of their state of motion. This happens because it is impossible to formulate a description of motion that includes indistinguishability right from the start. (Are you able to confirm this?) We need to describe a  $n$ -particle state with a state  $\Psi_{1\dots i\dots j\dots n}$  which assumes that distinction is possible, as expressed by the ordered indices in the notation, and we introduce the indistinguishability afterwards.

Indistinguishability, or permutation symmetry, means that the exchange of any two quantum particles results in the same physical observations.\*\* Now, two quantum states have the same physical properties if they differ at most by a phase factor; indistinguishability thus requires

$$\Psi_{1\dots i\dots j\dots n} = e^{i\alpha} \Psi_{1\dots j\dots i\dots n} \quad (57)$$

for some unknown angle  $\alpha$ . Applying this expression twice, by exchanging the same couple of indices again, allows us to conclude that  $e^{2i\alpha} = 1$ . This implies that

$$\Psi_{1\dots i\dots j\dots n} = \pm \Psi_{1\dots j\dots i\dots n}, \quad (58)$$

in other words, a wave function is either *symmetric* or *antisymmetric* under exchange of indices. (We can also say that the eigenvalue for the exchange operator is either +1 or -1.)

- ▷ Quantum theory thus predicts that quantum particles can be indistinguish-

---

\* The word ‘indistinguishable’ is so long that many physicists sloppily speak of ‘identical’ particles nevertheless. Take care.

\*\* We therefore have the same situation that we encountered already several times: *an overspecification of the mathematical description*, here the explicit ordering of the indices, *implies a symmetry of this description*, which in our case is a symmetry under exchange of indices, i.e., under exchange of particles.

able in one of two distinct ways.\*

- ▷ Particles corresponding to *symmetric* wave functions – those which transform under particle exchange with a ‘+’ in equation (58) – are called\*\* *bosons*.
- ▷ Particles corresponding to *antisymmetric* wave functions – those which transform under particle exchange with a ‘−’ in equation (58) – are called\*\*\* *fermions*.

Experiments show that the exchange behaviour depends on the *type* of particle. Photons are found to be bosons. On the other hand, electrons, protons and neutrons are found to be fermions. Also about half of the atoms are found to behave as bosons (at moderate energies), the other half are fermions. To determine they type of atom, we need to take into account the spin of the electron and that of the nucleus.

In fact, a composite of an *even* number of fermions (at moderate energies) – or of any number of bosons (at any energy) – turns out to be a boson; a composite of an *odd* number of fermions is (always) a fermion. For example,  ${}^4\text{He}$  is a boson,  ${}^3\text{He}$  a fermion. Also the natural isotopes  ${}^{23}\text{Na}$ ,  ${}^{41}\text{K}$ ,  ${}^{85}\text{Rb}$ ,  ${}^{87}\text{Rb}$  and  ${}^{133}\text{Cs}$  are bosons, because they have odd numbers of electrons and of nucleons; in contrast,  ${}^{40}\text{K}$  and  ${}^{134}\text{Cs}$  are fermions (and, in this case, also radioactive).

### THE BEHAVIOUR OF PHOTONS

A simple experiment, shown in Figure 58, allows observing an important aspect of photon behaviour. Take a source that emits two indistinguishable photons, i.e., two photons of identical frequency and polarization, at the same time. The photon pair is therefore in an entangled state. In the laboratory, such a source can be realized with a down-converter, a material that converts a photon of frequency  $2f$  into two photons of frequency  $f$ . The two entangled photons, after having travelled exactly the same distance, are made to enter the two sides of an ideal beam splitter (for example, a half-silvered mirror). Two detectors are located at the two exits of the beam splitter. Experiments show that both photons are always detected together on the *same* side, and never separately on

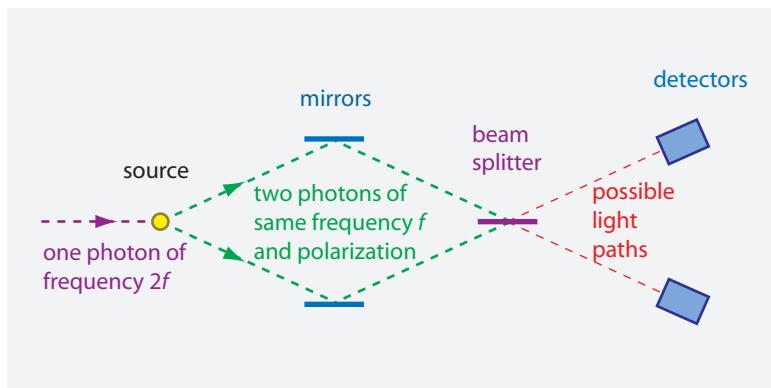
Ref. 75

\* This conclusion applies to three-dimensional space. In two dimensions there are more possibilities. Such possibilities have been and partly still are topic of research.

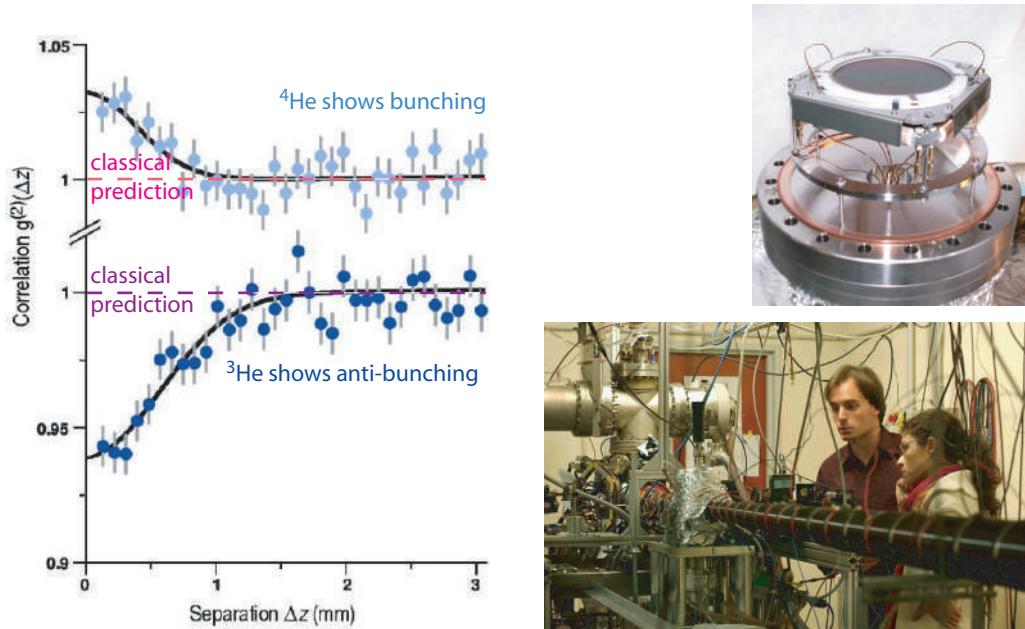
Ref. 74

\*\* ‘Bosons’ are named after the physicist Satyendra Nath Bose (b. 1894 Calcutta, d. 1974 Calcutta) who first described the statistical properties of photons. The work was later expanded by Albert Einstein, so that one speaks of Bose–Einstein statistics.

\*\*\* The term ‘fermion’ is derived from the name of the physicist and Nobel Prize winner Enrico Fermi (b. 1901 Rome, d. 1954 Chicago) famous for his all-encompassing genius in theoretical and experimental physics. He mainly worked on nuclear and elementary particle physics, on spin and on statistics. For his experimental work he was called ‘quantum engineer’. He is also famous for his lectures, which are still published in his own hand-writing, and his brilliant approach to physical problems. Nevertheless, his highly deserved Nobel Prize was one of the few cases in which the prize was given for a discovery which turned out to be incorrect. He left Italy because of the bad treatment his Jewish wife was suffering and emigrated to the USA. Fermi worked on the Manhattan project that built the first atomic bombs. After the Second World War, he organized one of the best physics department in the world, at the University of Chicago, where he was admired by everybody who worked with him.



**FIGURE 58**  
Two-photon emission and interference: two indistinguishable photons are always found arriving together, at the same detector.



**FIGURE 59** Bunching and antibunching of  $^3\text{He}$  and  $^4\text{He}$  helium!bunching atoms: the measurement result, the detector and the experiment (from [atomoptic.iota.u-psud.fr/research/helium/helium.html](http://atomoptic.iota.u-psud.fr/research/helium/helium.html), photo © Denis Boiron, Jerome Chatin).

Page 59

opposite sides. This happens because the two options where one of the photons is transmitted and the other reflected interfere destructively. (The discussion mentioned above applies also here: despite two photons being involved, also in this case, when investigating the details, only one photon interferes with itself.)

The experiment shows that photons are *bosons*. Indeed, in the same experiment, fermions behave in exactly the opposite way; two fermions are always detected separately on *opposite* sides, never together on the same side.



**FIGURE 60** Picturing particles as localized excitations (left) or clouds (right).

### BUNCHING AND ANTIBUNCHING

Page 53

Another way to test the exchange character of a particle is the Hanbury Brown–Twiss experiment described earlier on. First of all, this beautiful experiment shows that quantum particles behave differently than classical particles. In addition, compared to classical particles, fermions show antibunching – because of Pauli’s exclusion principle – and bosons show bunching. Hanbury Brown and Twiss performed the experiment with photons, which are bosons.

Ref. 77

In 2005, a French–Dutch research collaboration performed the experiment with atoms. By using an extremely cold helium gas at 500 nK and a clever detector principle, they were able to measure the correlation curves typical for the effect. The results, shown in Figure 59, confirm that  ${}^3\text{He}$  is a fermion and  ${}^4\text{He}$  is a boson, as predicted from the composition rule of quantum particles.

### THE ENERGY DEPENDENCE OF PERMUTATION SYMMETRY

If experiments force us to conclude that nobody, not even nature, can distinguish between two particles of the same type, we deduce that they do not form two separate entities, but some sort of unity. Our naive, classical sense of particle as a separate entity from the rest of the world is thus an incorrect description of the phenomenon of ‘particle’. Indeed, no experiment can track particles with identical intrinsic properties in such a way that they can be distinguished with certainty. This impossibility has been checked experimentally with all elementary particles, with nuclei, with atoms and with numerous molecules.

How does this fit with everyday life, i.e., with classical physics? Photons do not worry us much here. Let us focus the discussion on matter particles. We know to be able to distinguish electrons by pointing to the wire in which they flow, and we can distinguish our fridge from that of our neighbour. While the quantum of action makes distinction impossible, everyday life allows it.

The simplest explanation for both observations is to imagine a microscopic particle, especially an elementary one, as a *bulge*, i.e., as a localized excitation of the vacuum, or as a tiny cloud. Figure 60 shows two such bulges and two clouds representing particles. It is evident that if particles are too near to each other, it makes no sense to distinguish them; we cannot say any more which is which.

The bulge image shows that either for large distances or for high potential walls separating them, distinction of identical particles does become possible. In such situations, measurements allowing us to track particles independently do exist – as we know from

everyday life. In other words, we can specify a limit energy at which permutation symmetry of objects or particles separated by a distance  $d$  becomes important. It is given by

$$E = \frac{c \hbar}{d}. \quad (59)$$

Challenge 97 e Are you able to confirm the expression? For example, at everyday temperatures we *can* distinguish atoms inside a solid from each other, since the energy so calculated is much higher than the thermal energy of atoms. To have fun, you might want to determine at what energy two truly identical human twins become indistinguishable. Estimating at what energies the statistical character of trees or fridges will become apparent is then straightforward.

To sum up, in daily life we are able to distinguish objects and thus people for two reasons: because they are made of *many* parts, and because we live in a *low energy* environment. The bulge image of particles purveys the idea that distinguishability exists for objects in everyday life but not for particles in the microscopic domain.

The energy issue immediately adds a new aspect to the discussion. How can we describe fermions and bosons in the presence of virtual particles and of antiparticles?

### INDISTINGUISHABILITY IN QUANTUM FIELD THEORY

Quantum field theory, as we will see in the next volume, simply puts the cloudy bulge idea of Figure 60 into mathematical language. A situation without any bulge is called *vacuum state*. Quantum field theory describes all particles of a given type as *excitations* of a single fundamental field. Particles are indistinguishable because each particle is an excitation of the same basic substrate and each excitation has the same properties. A situation with one particle is then described by a vacuum state acted upon by a *creation operator*. Adding a second particle is described by adding a second creation operator, and subtracting a particle by adding a *annihilation operator*; the latter turns out to be the adjoint of the former.

Quantum field theory studies how creation and annihilation operators must behave to describe observations.\* It arrives at the following conclusions:

- Field operators for particles with half-integer spin are fermions and imply (local) anticommutation.
- Fields with integer spin are bosons and imply (local) commutation.
- For all field operators at space-like separations, the commutator, respectively anti-commutator, vanishes.
- Antiparticles of fermions are fermions, and antiparticles of bosons are bosons.

\* Whenever the relation

$$[b, b^\dagger] = bb^\dagger - b^\dagger b = 1 \quad (60)$$

holds between the creation operator  $b^\dagger$  and the annihilation operator  $b$ , the operators describe a *boson*. The dagger can thus be seen as describing the operation of adjoining; a double dagger is equivalent to no dagger. If the operators for particle creation and annihilation anticommute

$$\{d, d^\dagger\} = dd^\dagger + d^\dagger d = 1 \quad (61)$$

they describe a *fermion*. The so defined bracket is called the *anticommutator bracket*.

- Virtual particles behave under exchange like their real counterparts.

These connections are at the basis of quantum field theory. They describe how quantons behave under permutation.

But why are quantum particles identical? Why are all electrons identical? Lead by experiment, quantum field theory describes electrons as identical excitations of the vacuum, and as such as identical by construction. Of course, this answer is not really satisfying. We will find a better one only in the final part of our mountain ascent.

### HOW ACCURATELY IS PERMUTATION SYMMETRY VERIFIED?

Are electrons *perfect* fermions? In 1990, a simple but effective experiment testing their fermion behaviour was carried out by Ramberg and Snow. They sent an electric current of 30 A through a copper wire for one month and looked for X-ray emission. They did not find any. They concluded that electrons are always in an antisymmetric state, with a symmetric component of less than

$$2 \cdot 10^{-26} \quad (62)$$

of the total state. In short, electrons are always in an antisymmetric state: they are fermions.

The reasoning behind this elegant experiment is the following. If electrons would not always be fermions, every now and then an electron could fall into the lowest energy level of a copper atom, leading to X-ray emission. The lack of such X-rays implies that electrons are fermions to a very high accuracy. X-rays could be emitted only if they were bosons, at least part of the time. Indeed, two electrons, being fermions, cannot be in the same quantum state: this restriction is called the *Pauli exclusion principle*. It applies to all fermions and is the topic of the next chapter.

### COPIES, CLONES AND GLOVES

Can classical systems be indistinguishable? They can: large molecules are examples – provided they are made of exactly the same isotopes. Can *large* classical systems, made of a mole or more particles be indistinguishable? This simple question effectively asks whether a *perfect* copy, or (physical) *clone*, of a physical system is possible.

Ref. 79

It could be argued that any factory for mass-produced goods, such as one producing shirt buttons or paper clips, shows that copies are possible. But the appearance is deceiving. On a microscope there is usually some difference. Is this always the case? In 1982, the Dutch physicist Dennis Dieks and independently, the US-American physicists Wootters and Zurek, published simple proofs that quantum systems cannot be copied. This is the famous *no-cloning theorem*.

A *copying machine* is a machine that takes an original, reads out its properties and produces a copy, leaving the original unchanged. This definition seems straightforward. However, we know that if we extract information from an original, we have to interact with it. As a result, the system will change at least by the quantum of action. We thus expect that due to quantum theory, copies and originals can never be identical.\*

---

\* This seems to provide a solution against banknote forgeries. In fact, Stephen Wiesner proposed to use



Quantum theory indeed shows that copying machines are impossible. A copying machine is described by an operator that maps the state of an original system to the state of the copy. In other words, a copying machine is linear. This linearity leads to a problem. Simply stated, if a copying machine were able to copy originals either in state  $|A\rangle$  or in state  $|B\rangle$ , it could not work if the state of the original were a superposition  $|A\rangle + |B\rangle$ . Let us see why.

A copy machine is a device described by an operator  $U$  that changes the starting state  $|s\rangle_c$  of the copy in the following way:

- If the original is in state  $|A\rangle$ , a copier acts on the copy  $|s\rangle_c$  as

$$U|A\rangle|s\rangle_c = |A\rangle|A\rangle_c . \quad (63)$$

- If the original is in state  $|B\rangle$ , a copier acts on the copy  $|s\rangle_c$  as

$$U|B\rangle|s\rangle_c = |B\rangle|B\rangle_c . \quad (64)$$

As a result of these two requirements, an original in the state  $|A + B\rangle$  is treated by the copier as

$$U|A + B\rangle|s\rangle_c = |A\rangle|A\rangle_c + |B\rangle|B\rangle_c . \quad (65)$$

This is in contrast to what we want, which would be

$$U_{\text{wanted}}|A + B\rangle|s\rangle_c = (|A\rangle + |B\rangle)(|A\rangle_c + |B\rangle_c) . \quad (66)$$

In other words, a copy machine cannot copy a state completely.\* This is the so-called *no-cloning theorem*.

The impossibility of copying is implicit in quantum theory. If we were able to clone systems, we could measure a variable of a system and a second variable on its copy. We would be thus able to beat the indeterminacy relation in both copies. This is impossible. In short, copies are always imperfect.

The lack of quantum mechanical copying machines is disappointing. Such science fiction machines could be fed with two different inputs, such as a lion and a goat, and produce a superposition: a chimaera. Quantum theory shows that all these imaginary beings or situations cannot be realized.

Other researchers then explored how near to perfection a copy can be, especially in the case of classical systems. To make a long story short, these investigations show that also the copying or cloning of macroscopic systems is impossible. In simple words, *copying machines do not exist*. Copies can always be distinguished from originals if observations

Ref. 80 Challenge 99 s quantum theory already in 1970; he imagined to use polarizations of stored single photons as bits of serial numbers. Can you explain why this cannot work?

\* The no-cloning theorem puts severe limitations on quantum computers, as computations often need copies of intermediate results. The theorem also shows that faster-than-light communication is impossible in EPR experiments. In compensation, *quantum cryptography* becomes possible – at least in the laboratory. Indeed, the no-cloning theorem shows that nobody can copy a quantum message without being noticed. The specific ways to use this result in cryptography are the 1984 Bennett–Brassard protocol and the 1991 Ekert protocol.

**Challenge 100 s**

are made with sufficient care. In particular, this is the case for biological clones; biological clones are identical twins born following separate pregnancies. They differ in their finger prints, iris scans, physical and emotional memories, brain structures, and in many other aspects. (Can you specify a few more?) In short, biological clones, like identical twins, are not copies of each other.

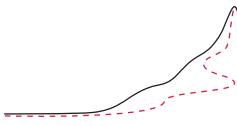
In summary, everyday life objects such as photocopies, billiard balls or twins are always distinguishable. There are two reasons: first, quantum effects play no role in everyday life, so that there is no danger of unobservable exchange; secondly, perfect clones of classical systems do not exist anyway, so that there always are tiny differences between any two objects, even if they look identical at first sight. Gloves, being classical systems, can thus always be distinguished.

### SUMMARY

As a consequence of the quantum of action  $\hbar$ , quantum particles are *indistinguishable*. This happens in one of two ways: they are either bosons or fermions. Not even nature is able to distinguish between identical quantum particles.

Despite the indistinguishability of quantons, the state of a physical system cannot be copied to a second system with the same particle content. Therefore, perfect clones do not exist in nature.





## CHAPTER 6

# ROTATIONS AND STATISTICS – VISUALIZING SPIN

Page 104

**S**pin is the observation that matter beams can be *polarized*: rays can be rotated. Spin thus describes how particles behave under rotations. Particles are thus not simply point-like: quantum particles can rotate around an axis. This proper rotation is called *spin*; like macroscopic rotation, spin is described by an angular momentum.

In the following, we recall that the spin of quantons is quantized in units of  $\hbar/2$ . Then we show a deep result: the value of spin determines whether a quantum particle, and any general quantum system, is a boson or a fermion. And we will show that spin is the rotation of quantons.

## QUANTUM PARTICLES AND SYMMETRY

Ref. 82

The general background for the appearance of spin was clarified by Eugene Wigner in 1939.<sup>\*\*</sup> He started by recapitulating that any quantum particle, if *elementary*, must behave like an *irreducible representation* of the set of all viewpoint changes. This set of viewpoint changes forms the symmetry group of flat space-time, the so-called *inhomogeneous Lorentz group*. Why?

Vol. I, page 266

We have seen in the chapter on symmetry, in the first volume of this adventure, that the symmetry of any composite system leads to certain requirements for the components of the system. If the components do not follow these requirements, they cannot build a symmetric composite.

We know from everyday life and precision experiments that all physical systems are symmetric under translation in time and space, under rotation in space, under boosts, and – in many cases – under mirror reflection, matter–antimatter exchange and motion reversal. We know these symmetries from everyday life; for example, the usefulness of what we call ‘experience’ in everyday life is simply a consequence of time translation symmetry. The set of all these common symmetries, more precisely, of all these symmetry transformations, is called the *inhomogeneous Lorentz group*.

Vol. I, page 266

These *symmetries*, i.e., these changes of viewpoints, lead to certain requirements for the components of physical systems, i.e., for the elementary quantum particles. In mathematical language, the requirement is expressed by saying that *elementary particles* must be *irreducible representations* of the symmetry group.

---

<sup>\*\*</sup> Eugene Wigner (b. 1902 Budapest, d. 1995 Princeton), theoretical physicist, received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1963. He wrote over 500 papers, many about various aspects of symmetry in nature. He was also famous for being the most polite physicist in the world.

Every textbook on quantum theory carries out this reasoning in systematic detail. Starting with the Lorentz group, one obtains a list of all possible irreducible representations. In other words, one obtains a list of all possible ways that elementary particles can behave.\* Cataloguing the possibilities, one finds first of all that every elementary particle is described by *four-momentum* – no news so far – by an internal angular momentum, the *spin*, and by a set of *parities*.

- Four-momentum results from the translation symmetry of nature. The momentum value describes how a particle behaves under translation, i.e., under position and time shift of viewpoints. The magnitude of four-momentum is an invariant property, given by the mass, whereas its orientation in space-time is free.
- Spin results from the rotation symmetry of nature. The spin value describes how an object behaves under rotations in three dimensions, i.e., under orientation change of viewpoints.\*\* The magnitude of spin is an invariant property, and its orientation has various possibilities with respect to the direction of motion. In particular, the spin of massive quantum particles behaves differently from that of massless quantum particles.

For *massive* quantum particles, the inhomogeneous Lorentz group implies that the invariant magnitude of spin is  $\sqrt{J(J+1)}\hbar$ , often written, by oversimplification, as  $J$ . It is thus customary to say and write ‘spin  $J$ ’ instead of the cumbersome ‘spin  $\sqrt{J(J+1)}\hbar$ ’. Since the value of the quantum number  $J$  specifies the magnitude of the angular momentum, it gives the representation under rotations of a given particle type. The exploration shows that the spin quantum number  $J$  can be any multiple of  $1/2$ , i.e., it can take the values  $0, 1/2, 1, 3/2, 2, 5/2$ , etc. As summarized in [Table 4](#), experiments show that electrons, protons and neutrons have spin  $1/2$ , the W and Z particles spin  $1$  and helium atoms spin  $0$ . In addition, the representation of spin  $J$  is  $2J + 1$  dimensional, meaning that the spatial orientation of the spin has  $2J + 1$  possible values. For electrons, with  $J = 1/2$ , there are thus two possibilities; they are usually called ‘up’ and ‘down’. Spin thus only takes *discrete* values. This is in contrast with linear momentum, whose representations are infinite dimensional and whose possible values form a *continuous* range.

- Also *massless* quantum particles are characterized by the value of their spin. It can take the same values as in the massive case. For example, photons and gluons have spin  $1$ . For massless particles, the representations are one-dimensional, so that massless particles are completely described by their *helicity*, defined as the projection of the spin onto the direction of motion. Massless particles can have positive or negative helicity, often also called right-handed and left-handed polarization. There is no other freedom for the orientation of spin in the massless case.
- To complete the list of particle properties, the remaining, discrete symmetries of the inhomogeneous Lorentz group must be included. Since *motion inversion*, *spatial parity* and *charge inversion* are parities, each elementary particle has to be described by three additional numbers, called T, P and C, each of which can only take the values

---

\* To be of physical relevance for quantum theory, representations have to be *unitary*. The full list of *irreducible* and *unitary* representations of viewpoint changes thus provides the range of possibilities for any particle that wants to be *elementary*.

\*\* The group of physical rotations is also called SO(3), since mathematically it is described by the group of Special Orthogonal 3 by 3 matrices.



**TABLE 4** Particle spin as representation of the rotation group.

SPIN SYSTEM [ $\hbar$ ]	unchanged after rotation by	MASSIVE EXAMPLES	MASSLESS EXAMPLES
0	any angle	Higgs boson	mesons, nuclei, atoms
1/2	2 turns	$e, \mu, \tau, q,$ $\nu_e, \nu_\mu, \nu_\tau$	nuclei, atoms, molecules, radicals
1	1 turn	W, Z	mesons, nuclei, atoms, molecules, toasters
3/2	2/3 turn	none <sup>a</sup>	baryons, nuclei, atoms
2	1/2 turn	none	nuclei
5/2	2/5 turn	none	nuclei
3	1/3 turn	none	nuclei <sup>c</sup>
etc. <sup>c</sup>	etc. <sup>c</sup>	etc. <sup>c</sup>	etc. <sup>c</sup>
			none possible

*a.* Supersymmetry, a symmetry conjectured in the twentieth century, predicts elementary particles in these and other boxes.

*b.* The graviton has not yet been observed.

*c.* Nuclei exist with spins values up to at least 101/2 and 51 (in units of  $\hbar$ ). Ref. 83

+1 or -1. Being parities, these numbers must be *multiplied* to yield the value for a composed system.

In short, the symmetries nature lead to the classification of all elementary quantum particles by their mass, their momentum, their spin and their P, C and T parities.

#### TYPES OF QUANTUM PARTICLES

The spin values observed for all quantum particles in nature are given in Table 4. The parities and all known intrinsic properties of the elementary particles are given in Table 5. Spin and parities together are called *quantum numbers*. All other intrinsic properties of quanta are related to interactions, such as mass, electric charge or isospin, and we will explore them in the next volume.



**TABLE 5** Elementary particle properties.

PARTICLE	MASS $m^a$	LIFETIME $\tau$ OR ENERGY WIDTH, <sup>b</sup> MAIN DECAY MODES	ISOSPIN $I$ , SPIN $J$ , <sup>c</sup> PARITY $P$ , CHARGE PARITY $C$	CHARGE, ISOSPIN, STRANGE- NESS, <sup>c</sup> CHARM, BEAUTY, <sup>d</sup> TOPNESS: $QISCBT$	LEPTON & BARYON <sup>e</sup> NUM- BERS $LB$
<b>Elementary radiation (bosons)</b>					
photon $\gamma$	0 ( $< 10^{-53}$ kg)	stable	$I(J^{PC}) = 0, 1(1^{--})$	000000	0, 0
$W^\pm$	$80.398(25) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	$2.124(41) \text{ GeV}$ $67.60(27) \%$ hadrons, $32.12(36) \%$ $l^+ \nu$	$J = 1$	$\pm 100000$	0, 0
$Z$	$91.1876(21) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	$2.65(2) \cdot 10^{-25} \text{ s}$ or $2.4952(23) \text{ GeV}/c^2$ $69.91(6) \%$ hadrons, $10.0974(69) \%$ $l^+ l^-$	$J = 1$	000000	0, 0
gluon	0	stable	$I(J^P) = 0(1^-)$	000000	0, 0
<b>Elementary matter (fermions): leptons</b>					
electron $e$	$9.109\ 382\ 15(45) \cdot 10^{-31} \text{ kg} = 81.871\ 0438(41) \text{ pJ}/c^2$ $= 0.510\ 998\ 910(13) \text{ MeV}/c^2 = 0.000\ 548\ 579\ 909\ 43(23) \text{ u}$	$> 13 \cdot 10^{30} \text{ s}$	$J = \frac{1}{2}$	-100 000	1, 0
muon $\mu$	$0.188\ 353\ 130(11) \text{ yg}$	$2.197\ 03(4) \mu\text{s}$	$J = \frac{1}{2}$ 99 % $e^- \bar{\nu}_e \nu_\mu$ $= 105.658\ 3668(38) \text{ MeV}/c^2 = 0.113\ 428\ 9256(29) \text{ u}$	-100000	1, 0
tau $\tau$	$1.776\ 84(17) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	$290.6(1.0) \text{ fs}$	$J = \frac{1}{2}$	-100000	1, 0
el. neutrino $\nu_e$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$		$J = \frac{1}{2}$		1, 0
muon neutrino $\nu_\mu$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$		$J = \frac{1}{2}$		1, 0
tau neutrino $\nu_\tau$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$		$J = \frac{1}{2}$		1, 0
<b>Elementary matter (fermions): quarks<sup>f</sup></b>					
up $u$	1.5 to $3.3 \text{ MeV}/c^2$	see proton	$I(J^P) = \frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$+\frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{2}0000$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$
down $d$	3.5 to $6 \text{ MeV}/c^2$	see proton	$I(J^P) = \frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$-\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{2}0000$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$
strange $s$	70 to $130 \text{ MeV}/c^2$		$I(J^P) = 0(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$-\frac{1}{3}0 - 1000$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$
charm $c$	$1.27(11) \text{ GeV}/c^2$		$I(J^P) = 0(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$+\frac{2}{3}00 + 100$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$



TABLE 5 (Continued) Elementary particle properties.

PARTICLE	MASS $m^a$	LIFETIME $\tau$ OR ENERGY WIDTH, <sup>b</sup> MAIN DECAY MODES	ISOSPIN $I$ , SPIN $J$ , <sup>c</sup> PARITY $P$ , CHARGE PARITY $C$	CHARGE, ISOSPIN, STRANGE- NESS, <sup>c</sup> CHARM, BEAUTY, <sup>d</sup> TOPNESS: $QISCBT$	LEPTON & BARYON <sup>e</sup> NUM- BERS $LB$
bottom $b$	4.20(17) GeV/ $c^2$	$\tau = 1.33(11)$ ps	$I(J^P) = 0(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$-\frac{1}{3}000-10$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$
top $t$	171.2(2.1) GeV/ $c^2$		$I(J^P) = 0(\frac{1}{2}^+)$	$+\frac{2}{3}0000+1$	$0, \frac{1}{3}$
<b>Observed elementary boson</b>					
Higgs boson	126 GeV/ $c^2$			$J = 0$	

Notes:

a. See also the table of SI prefixes on [page 206](#). About the eV/ $c^2$  mass unit, see [page 210](#).

b. The *energy width*  $\Gamma$  of a particle is related to its lifetime  $\tau$  by the indeterminacy relation  $\Gamma\tau = \hbar$ . There is a difference between the *half-life*  $t_{1/2}$  and the lifetime  $\tau$  of a particle: they are related by  $t_{1/2} = \tau \ln 2$ , where  $\ln 2 \approx 0.693\ 147\ 18$ ; the half-life is thus shorter than the lifetime. The unified *atomic mass unit* u is defined as 1/12 of the mass of a carbon 12 atom at rest and in its ground state. One has  $1\text{ u} = \frac{1}{12}m(^{12}\text{C}) = 1.660\ 5402(10)\text{ yg}$ .

c. To keep the table short, its header does not explicitly mention *colour*, the – confusingly named – charge of the strong interactions. It has to be added to the list of basic object properties. Quantum numbers containing the word ‘parity’ are multiplicative; all others are additive. Parity  $P$  and charge parity  $C$  are written as + or -. Time parity  $T$  (not to be confused with topness  $T$ ), better called motion inversion parity, is equal to CP in all known particles. The isospin  $I$  (or  $I_Z$ ) appears twice in the table; it is defined only for up and down quarks and their composites, such as the proton and the neutron. In the literature one also sees references to the so-called G-parity, defined as  $G = (-1)^{IC}$ .

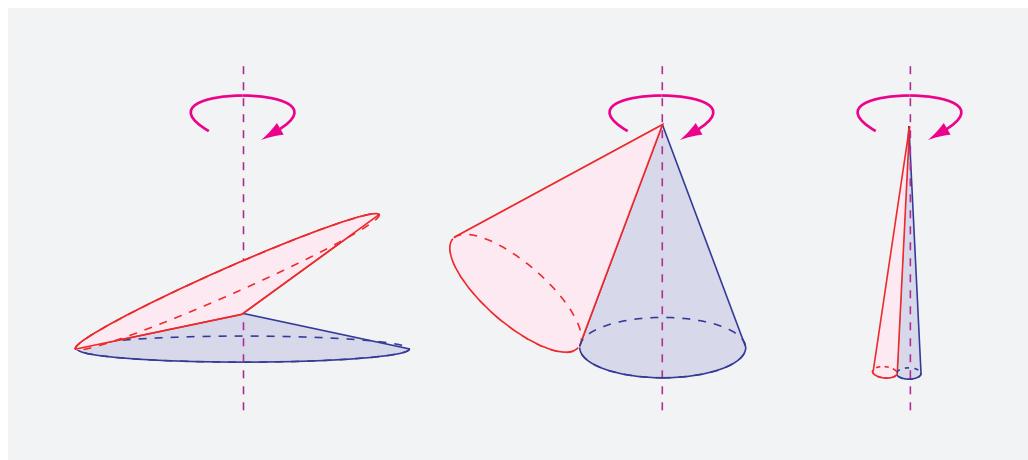
The table header also does not mention the *weak charge* of the particles. The details on weak charge  $g$ , or, more precisely, on the *weak isospin*, a quantum number assigned to all left-handed fermions (and right-handed anti-fermions), but to no right-handed fermion (and no left-handed antifermion), are given in the section on the weak interactions.

Vol. V, page 246

d. ‘Beauty’ is now commonly called *bottomness*; similarly, ‘truth’ is now commonly called *topness*. The signs of the quantum numbers  $S$ ,  $I$ ,  $C$ ,  $B$ ,  $T$  can be defined in different ways. In the standard assignment shown here, the sign of each of the non-vanishing quantum numbers is given by the sign of the charge of the corresponding quark.

e. If supersymmetry existed, *R-parity* would have to be added to this column. *R-parity* is a multiplicative quantum number related to the lepton number  $L$ , the baryon number  $B$  and the spin  $J$  through the definition  $R = (-1)^{3B+L+2J}$ . All particles from the standard model are *R-even*, whereas their conjectured supersymmetric partner particles would be *R-odd*. However, supersymmetry is now known to be in contrast with experiment.

f. For the precise definition and meaning of quark masses, see [page 234](#) in volume V.



**FIGURE 61** Illustrating an argument showing why rotations by  $4\pi$  are equivalent to no rotation at all (see text).

### SPIN 1/2 AND TETHERED OBJECTS

A central result of quantum theory is that spin 1/2 is a possibility in nature, even though this value does not appear in everyday life. For a system to have spin 1/2 means that for such a system only a rotation by *two turns* is equivalent to *none* at all, while one by *one turn* is not. No *simple* systems with this property exist in everyday life, but such systems do exist in microscopic systems: electrons, neutrinos, silver atoms and molecular radicals all have spin 1/2. [Table 4](#) gives a more extensive list.

Vol. I, page 49

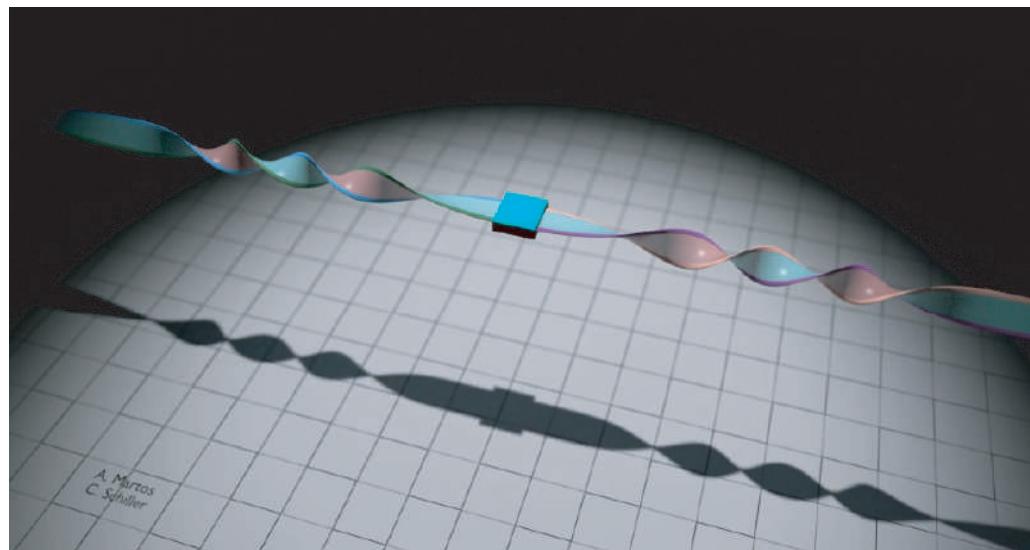
The mathematician Hermann Weyl used a simple image to explain that the rotation by two turns is equivalent to zero turns, whereas one turns differs. Take two cones, touching each other at their tips as well as along a line, as shown in [Figure 61](#). Hold one cone and roll the other around it. When the rolling cone, after a full turn around the other cone, i.e., around the vertical axis, has come back to the original position, it has rotated by some angle. If the cones are wide, as shown on the left, the final rotation angle is small. The limit of extremely wide cones gives no rotation at all. If the cones are very thin, like needles, the moving cone has rotated by (almost) 720 degrees; this situation is like a coin rolling around a second coin of the same size, both lying on a table. The rolling coins rotates by two turns, thus by 720 degrees. Also in this case, the final rotation angle is small. The result for 0 degrees and for 720 degrees is the same. If we imagine the cone angle to vary continuously, this visualization shows that a 0 degree rotation can be continuously changed into a 720 degree rotation. In contrast, a 360 degree rotation *cannot* be ‘undone’ in this way.

Challenge 101 e

Challenge 102 e

Challenge 103 e

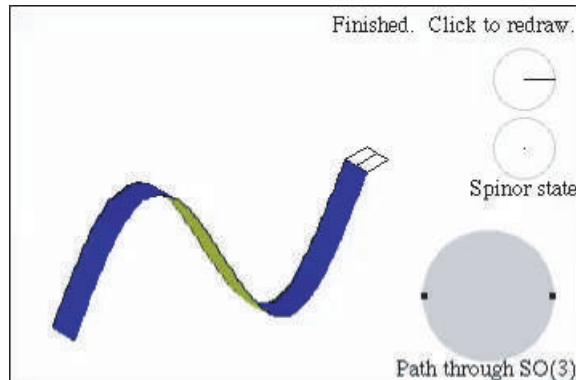
There are systems in everyday life that behave like spin 1/2, but they are not simple: all such systems are *tethered*. The most well-known system is the belt. [Figure 62](#) and [Figure 63](#) show that a rotation by  $4\pi$  of a belt buckle is equivalent to no rotation at all: this is easily achieved by moving the belt around. You may want to repeat the process by yourself, using a real belt or a strip of paper, in order to get a feeling for it. The untangling process is often called the *belt trick*, but also *scissor trick*, *plate trick*, *string trick*, *Philippine wine dance* or *Balinese candle dance*. It is sometimes incorrectly attributed to Dirac,



**FIGURE 62** Assume that the belt cannot be observed, but the square object can, and that it represents a particle. The animation then shows that such a particle (the square object) can return to the starting position after rotation by  $4\pi$  (and not after  $2\pi$ ). Such a ‘belted’ particle thus fulfils the defining property of a *spin 1/2 particle*: rotating it by  $4\pi$  is equivalent to no rotation at all. The belt thus represents the spinor wave function; for example, a  $2\pi$  rotation leads to a twist; this means a change of the sign of the wave function. A  $4\pi$  rotation has no influence on the wave function. You can repeat the trick at home, with a paper strip. The equivalence is shown here with two attached belts, but the trick works with any positive number of belts! (QuickTime film © Antonio Martos)

Motion Mountain – The Adventure of Physics

copyright © Christoph Schiller June 1990–October 2020 free pdf file available at [www.motionmountain.net](http://www.motionmountain.net)



**FIGURE 63** The belt trick with a simple belt: a double rotation of the belt buckle is equivalent to no rotation. (QuickTime film © Greg Egan)

because he used it extensively in his lectures.

The human body has such a belt built in: the *arm*. Just take your hand, put an object on it for clarity, such as a cup, and turn the hand and object by  $2\pi$  by twisting the arm. After a second rotation the whole system will be untangled again, as shown in Figure 64. The trick is even more impressive when *many arms* are used. You can put your two hands (if you chose the correct starting position) under the cup or you can take a friend or two



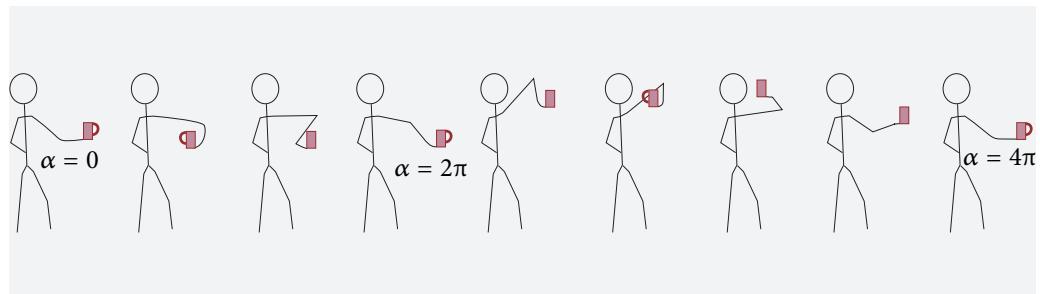


FIGURE 64 The human arm as spin 1/2 model.

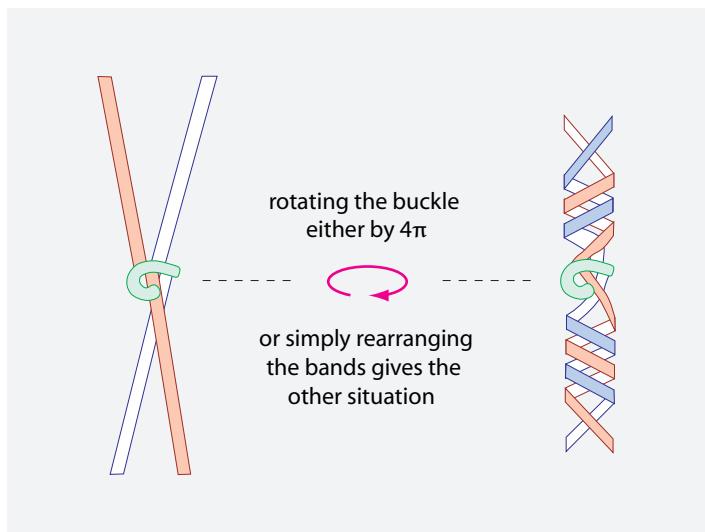


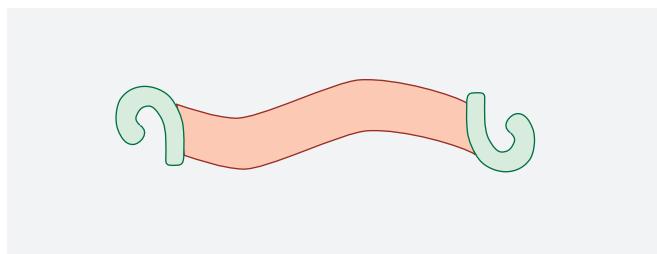
FIGURE 65 The generalized belt trick, modelling the rotation behaviour of a spin 1/2 particle: independently of the number of bands or tubes or strings attached, the two situations can be transformed into each other, either by rotating the central object by  $4\pi$  or by keeping the central object fixed and moving the bands around it.

Challenge 105 e

who each keep a hand attached to the cup together with you. The belt trick can still be performed, and the whole system untangles after two full turns.

This leads us to the most general way to show the connection between tethering and spin 1/2. Just glue any number of threads, belts or tubes, say half a metre long, to some object, as shown in Figure 65. (With many such tails, is not appropriate any more to call it a belt buckle.) Each band is supposed to go to spatial infinity and be attached there. Instead of being attached at spatial infinity, we can also imagine the belts attached to a distant, fixed object, like the arms are attached to a human body. If the object, which represents the particle, is rotated by  $2\pi$ , twists appear in its tails. If the object is rotated by an additional turn, to a total of  $4\pi$ , all twists and tangles can be made to disappear, without moving or turning the object. You really have to experience this in order to believe it. And the process really works with *any* number of bands glued to the object. The website [www.evl.uic.edu/hypercomplex/html/dirac.html](http://www.evl.uic.edu/hypercomplex/html/dirac.html) provides a animation showing this process with four attached belts.

In short, all these animations show that belt buckles, and in fact all (sufficiently) tethered systems, return to their original state only after rotations by  $4\pi$ , and *not* after rotations by  $2\pi$  only. *Tethered objects behave like spin 1/2 particles.* In fact, tethered ob-



**FIGURE 66** Two belt buckles connected by a belt, one way of visualizing two spin 1/2 particles.

Challenge 106 e  
jects, such as belt buckles, are the *only* systems that reproduce spin 1/2 properties. In the last part of our adventure we will discover the deep underlying reason for the equivalence between spin 1/2 particles and tethered systems.

Exploring the symmetries of wave functions, quantum theory shows that rotations *require* the existence of spin for all quantum particles. An investigation of the wave function shows that wave functions of elementary matter particles behave under rotation like tethered objects. For example, a wave function whose tethered equivalent is tangled acquires a negative sign.

In summary, quantum theory implies the existence of the slightly counter-intuitive spin 1/2 value. In particular, it appears for elementary matter particles.

#### THE EXTENSION OF THE BELT TRICK

But why do experiments show that all fermions have half-integer spin and that all bosons have integer spin? In particular, why do electrons obey the Pauli exclusion principle? At first sight, it is not clear what the spin value has to do with the statistical properties of a particle. In fact, there are several ways to show that rotations and statistics are connected.

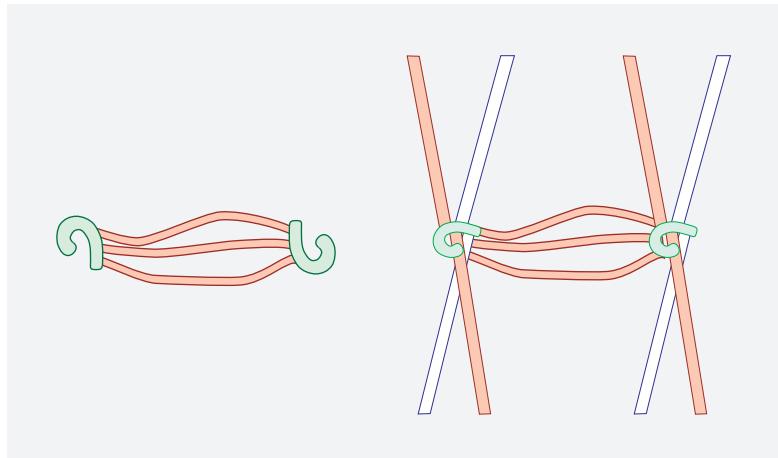
**Ref. 86** The first proof, due to Wolfgang Pauli, used the details of quantum field theory and was so complicated that its essential ingredients were hidden. It took several decades to convince everybody that a further observation about belts was the central part of the proof.

**Ref. 87** Starting from the bulge model of quantum particles shown in Figure 60, we can imagine a tube connecting two particles, similar to a belt connecting two belt buckles, as shown in Figure 66. The buckles represent the particles. The tube keeps track of their relative orientation. If one particle/buckle is rotated by  $2\pi$  along any axis, a twist is inserted into the belt. As just shown, if the same buckle is rotated by another  $2\pi$ , bringing the total to  $4\pi$ , the ensuing double twist can easily be undone without moving or rotating the buckles.

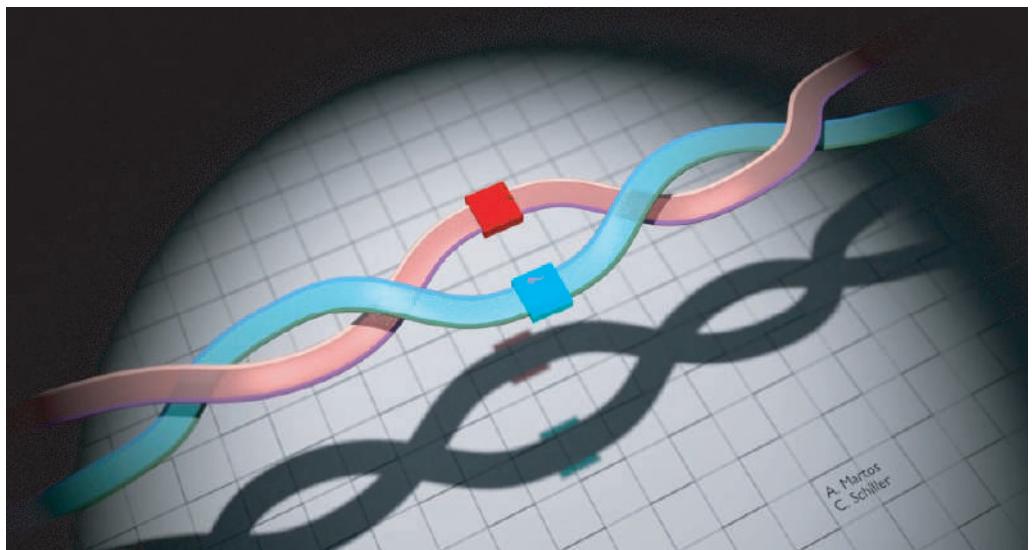
Now we look again at Figure 66. If we take the two buckles and simply *swap* their positions, a twist is introduced into the belt. If we swap them again, the twist will disappear. In short, two connected belt buckles return to their original state only after a double exchange, and not after a single exchange.

In other words, if we take each buckle to represent a particle and a twist to mean a factor  $-1$ , the belt exactly describes the phase behaviour of spin 1/2 wave functions, both under *rotation* and under *exchange*. In particular, we see that rotation and exchange behaviour are related.

Similarly, also the belt trick itself can be extended to exchange. Take two buckles that



**FIGURE 67** Extended belt models for two spin 1/2 particles.



**FIGURE 68** Assume that the belts cannot be observed, but the square objects can, and that they represent particles. We know from above that belted buckles behave as spin 1/2 particles. The animation shows that two such particles return to the original situation if they are switched in position twice (but not once). Such particles thus fulfil the defining property of *fermions*. (For the opposite case, that of *bosons*, a simple exchange would lead to the identical situation.) You can repeat the trick at home using paper strips. The equivalence is shown here with two belts per particle, but the trick works with any positive number of belts attached to each buckle. This animation is the essential part of the proof that spin 1/2 particles are fermions. This is called the *spin–statistics theorem*. (QuickTime film © Antonio Martos)

are connected with *many* bands or threads, like in [Figure 67](#) or in [Figure 68](#). The band can connect the particles, or go to spatial infinity, or both. An exchange of the two buckles produces quite a messy tangle. But almost incredibly, in all cases, a second exchange leads back to the original situation, if the belts are properly rearranged. You might want to test

Challenge 107 e

Ref. 88

yourself that the behaviour is also valid if additional particles are involved, as long as you always exchange the same two particles twice.

We conclude that tethered objects behave like fermions under exchange. These observations together form the spin–statistics theorem for spin 1/2 particles: *spin and exchange behaviour are related*. Indeed, these almost ‘experimental’ arguments can be put into exact mathematical language by studying the behaviour of the configuration space of particles. These investigations result in the following statements:

- ▷ Objects of spin 1/2 are fermions.\*
- ▷ Exchange and rotation of spin 1/2 particles are similar processes.

In short, objects that behave like spin 1/2 particles under rotations also behave like fermions under exchange. And vice versa. The exchange behaviour of particles determines their statistical properties; the rotation behaviour determines their spin. By extending the belt trick to several buckles, each with several belts, we thus visualized the spin–statistics theorem for fermions.

Note that all these arguments require three dimensions of space, because there are no tangles (or knots) in fewer or more dimensions.\*\* And indeed, spin exists only in three spatial dimensions.

Challenge 109 s

Challenge 110 d

The belt trick leads to interesting puzzles. We saw that a spin 1/2 object can be modelled by imagining that a belt leading to spatial infinity is attached to it. If we want to model the spin behaviour with attached one-dimensional *strings* instead of *bands*, what is the minimum number of strings we need? More difficult is the following puzzle: Can the belt trick be performed if the buckle is glued into a mattress, thus with the mattress acting like ‘infinitely many’ belts?

### ANGELS, PAULI’S EXCLUSION PRINCIPLE AND THE HARDNESS OF MATTER

Why are we able to knock on a door? Why can stones not fly through tree trunks? How does the mountain we are walking on carry us? Why can’t we walk across walls? In classical physics, we avoided this issue, by taking solidity as a defining property of matter. But we cannot do so any more: we have seen that matter consists mainly of low density electron clouds. The quantum of action thus forces us to *explain* the quantum of matter.

The explanation of the impenetrability of matter is so important that it led to a Nobel prize in physics. The interpenetration of bodies is made impossible by *Pauli’s exclusion principle* among the electrons inside atoms. Pauli’s exclusion principle states:

- ▷ Two fermions cannot occupy the same quantum state.

Challenge 108 e  
Page 189

---

\* A mathematical observable behaving like a spin 1/2 particle is neither a vector nor a tensor, as you may want to check. An additional concept is necessary; such an observable is called a *spinor*. We will introduce it in detail later on.

\*\* Of course, knots and tangles do exist in higher dimensions. Instead of considering knotted one-dimensional lines, one can consider knotted planes or knotted higher-dimensional hyperplanes. For example, deformable planes can be knotted in four dimensions and deformable 3-spaces in five dimensions. However, the effective dimensions that produce the knot are always three.

All experiments known confirm the statement.

Why do electrons and other fermions obey Pauli's exclusion principle? The answer can be given with a beautifully simple argument. We know that exchanging two fermions produces a minus sign in the total wave function. Imagine these two fermions being, as a classical physicist would say, located at the same spot, or as a quantum physicist would say, in the same state. If that could be possible, an exchange would change nothing in the system. But an exchange of fermions must produce a minus sign for the total state. Both possibilities – no change at all as well as a minus sign – cannot be realized at the same time. There is only one way out: two fermions must avoid to ever be in the same state. This is Pauli's exclusion principle.

The exclusion principle is the reason that two pieces of matter in everyday life cannot penetrate each other, but have to *repel* each other. For example, take a bell. A bell would not work if the colliding pieces that produce the sound would interpenetrate. But in any example of two interpenetrating pieces, the electrons from different atoms would have to be at the same spot: they would have to be in the same states. This is impossible. Pauli's exclusion principle forbids interpenetration of matter. Bells only work because of the exclusion principle.

Why don't we fall through the floor, even though gravity pulls us down, but remain standing on its surface? Again, the reason is Pauli's exclusion principle. Why does the floor itself not fall? It does not fall, because the matter of the Earth cannot interpenetrate and the atoms cannot move to approach each other than a certain minimal distance. In other words, Pauli's exclusion principle implies that atomic matter cannot be compressed indefinitely. At a certain stage an effective *Pauli pressure* appears, so that a compression limit ensues. For this reason for example, planets made of atomic matter – or neutron stars made of neutrons, which also have spin 1/2 and thus also obey the exclusion principle – do not collapse under their own gravity.

The exclusion principle is the reason that atoms are *extended* electron clouds and that different atoms have different sizes. In fact, the exclusion principle forces the electrons in atoms to form *shells*. When electrons are added around a nucleus and when one shell is filled, a new shell is started. This is the origin of the periodic systems of the elements.

The size of any atom is the size of its last shell. Without the exclusion principle, atoms would be as small as a hydrogen atom. In fact, most atoms are considerably larger. The same argument applies to nuclei: their size is given by the last nucleon shell. Without the exclusion principle, nuclei would be as small as a single proton. In fact, they are usually about 100 000 times larger.

Challenge 111 s

Ref. 90

The exclusion principle also settles an old question: How many *angels* can dance on the top of a pin? (Note that angels, if at all, must be made of fermions, as you might want to deduce from the information known about them, and that the top of a pin is a single point in space.) Both theory and experiment confirm the answer already given by Thomas Aquinas in the Middle Ages: Only *one* angel! The fermion exclusion principle could also be called 'angel exclusion principle'. To stay in the topic, the principle also shows that *ghosts* cannot be objects, as ghosts are supposed to be able to traverse walls.

Let us sum up. Simplifying somewhat, the exclusion principle keeps things around us in shape. Without the exclusion principle, there would be no three-dimensional objects. Only the exclusion principle fixes the diameter of atomic clouds, keeps these clouds from merging, and holds them apart. This repulsion is the origin for the size of soap, planets

and neutron stars. All shapes of solids and fluids are a direct consequence of the exclusion principle. In other words, when we knock on a table or on a door, we prove experimentally that these objects and our hands are made of fermions.

So far, we have only considered fermions of spin 1/2. We will not talk much about particles with odd spin of higher value, such as 3/2 or 5/2. Such particles can all be seen as being composed of spin 1/2 entities. Can you confirm this?

Challenge 112 e

Ref. 82

We did not talk about lower spins than 1/2 either. A famous theorem states that a spin value between 0 and 1/2 is impossible in three dimensions. Smaller spins are impossible because the largest rotation angle that can be distinguished and measured in three dimensions is  $4\pi$ . There is no way to measure a larger angle; the quantum of action makes this impossible. Thus there cannot be any spin value between 0 and 1/2 in nature.

### IS SPIN A ROTATION ABOUT AN AXIS?

The spin of a particle behaves experimentally like an intrinsic angular momentum, adds up like angular momentum, is conserved as part of angular momentum, is described like angular momentum and has a name synonymous with angular momentum. Despite all this, for many decades a strange and false myth was spread in many physics courses and textbooks around the world: “Spin 1/2, despite its name, is *not* a rotation about an axis.” It is time to finish with this example of incorrect thinking.

Electrons do have spin 1/2 and are charged. Electrons and all other charged particles with spin 1/2 do have a magnetic moment.\* A magnetic moment is expected for any rotating charge. In other words, spin 1/2 does behave like rotation. However, assuming that a particle consists of a *continuous* charge distribution in rotational motion gives the wrong value for the magnetic moment. In the early days of the twentieth century, when physicists were still thinking in classical terms, they concluded that charged spin 1/2 particles thus cannot be rotating. This myth has survived through many textbooks. The correct deduction, however, is that the assumption of continuous charge distribution is wrong. Indeed, charge is quantized; nobody expects that elementary charge is continuously spread over space, as that would contradict its quantization.

The other reason for the false myth is rotation itself. The myth is based on classical thinking and maintains that any rotating object must have *integer* spin. Since half integer spin is not possible in classical physics, it is argued that such spin is not due to rotation. But let us recall what rotation is. Both the belt trick for spin 1/2 as well as the integer spin case remind us: a *rotation* of one body around another is a fraction or a multiple of an exchange. What we call a rotating body in everyday life is a body continuously exchanging the positions of its parts – and vice versa.

- ▷ Rotation and exchange are the same process.

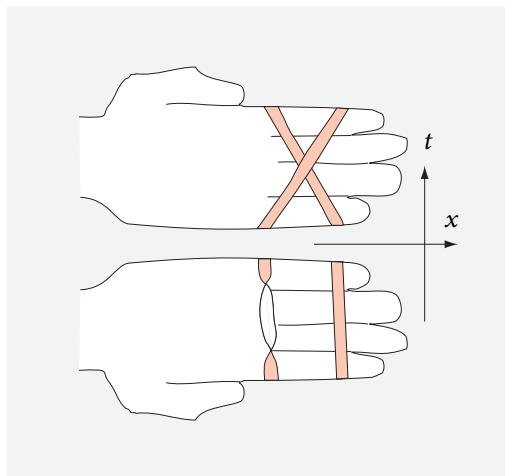
Now, we just found that spin is exchange behaviour. Since rotation is exchange and spin is exchange, it follows that

- ▷ Spin *is* rotation.

---

\* This magnetic moment can easily be measured in an experiment; however, not one of the Stern–Gerlach type. Why not?





**FIGURE 69** Equivalence of exchange and rotation in space-time.

Page 131

Since we deduced spin, like Wigner, from rotation invariance, this conclusion is not a surprise. In addition, the belt model of a spin 1/2 particle tells us that such a particle can rotate continuously without any hindrance. Also the magnetic moment then gets its correct value. In short, we are allowed to maintain that spin is rotation about an axis, without any contradiction to observations, even for spin 1/2.

In summary, the belt model shows that also spin 1/2 is rotation, as long as we assume Ref. 91 that only the buckle can be observed, not the belt(s), and that elementary charge is not continuously distributed in space.\*

Since permutation properties and spin properties of fermions are so well described by the belt model, we could be led to the conclusion that these properties might really be consequence of such belt-like connections between particles and the outside world. Maybe for some reason we only observe the belt buckles, not the belts themselves. In the final part of this walk we will discover whether this idea is correct.

#### ROTATION REQUIRES ANTI PARTICLES

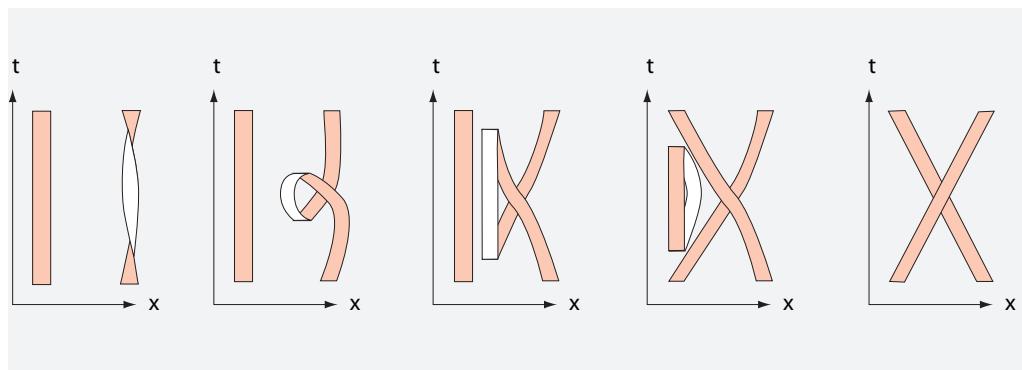
Vol. II, page 72

The connection between rotation and antiparticles may be the most astonishing conclusion from the experiments showing the existence of spin. So far, we have seen that rotation requires the existence of spin, that spin appears when relativity is introduced into quantum theory, and that relativity requires antimatter. Taking these three statements together, the conclusion of the title is not surprising any more: rotation requires antiparticles. Interestingly, there is a simple argument making the same point with the belt model, if it is extended from space alone to full *space-time*.

To learn how to think in space-time, let us take a particle and reduce it to two short tails, so that the particle is a short line segment. When moving in a 2+1 dimensional

---

\* Obviously, the exact structure of the electron still remains *unclear* at this point. Any angular momentum  $S$  is given classically by  $S = \Theta\omega$ ; however, neither the moment of inertia  $\Theta$ , connected to the rotation radius and electron mass, nor the angular velocity  $\omega$  are known at this point. We have to wait quite a while, until the final part of our adventure, to find out more.



**FIGURE 70** Belts in space-time: rotation and antiparticles.

Challenge 114 ny

space-time, the particle is described by a ribbon. Playing around with ribbons in space-time, instead of belts in space, provides many interesting conclusions. For example, [Figure 69](#) shows that wrapping a rubber ribbon around the fingers can show, again, that a rotation of a body by  $2\pi$  in presence of a second one is the same as exchanging the positions of the two bodies.\* Both sides of the hand transform the same initial condition, at one edge of the hand, to the same final condition at the other edge. We have thus successfully extended a known result from space to space-time: rotation and exchange are equivalent.

If you think that [Figure 69](#) is not a satisfying explanation, you are right. A more satisfying explanation must include a smooth sequence of steps realizing the equivalence between rotation and exchange. This is shown in [Figure 70](#). We assume that each particle is described by a segment; in the figure, the two segments lie horizontally. The leftmost diagram shows two particles: one at rest and one being rotated by  $2\pi$ . The deformation of the ribbons shows that this process is equivalent to the exchange in position of two particles, which is shown in the rightmost diagram.

But the essential point is made by the intermediate diagrams. We note that the sequence showing the equivalence between rotation and exchange requires the use of a loop. But such a loop in space-time describes the appearance of a particle–antiparticle pair! In other words, without antiparticles, the equivalence of rotation and exchange would not hold. In short, rotation in space-time requires the existence of antiparticles.

#### WHY IS FENCING WITH LASER BEAMS IMPOSSIBLE?

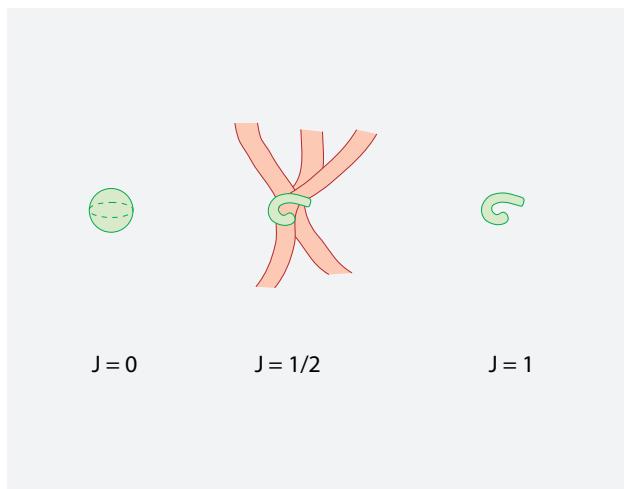
When a sword is approaching dangerously, we can stop it with a second sword. Many old films use such scenes. When a laser beam is approaching, it is impossible to fend it off with a second beam, despite all science fiction films showing so. Banging two laser beams against each other is impossible. The above explanation of the spin–statistics theorem shows why.

The electrons in the swords are fermions and obey the Pauli exclusion principle. Fermions make matter impenetrable. On the other hand, the photons in laser beams are

---

\* Obviously, the full argument would need to check the full spin 1/2 model of [Figure 65](#) in four-dimensional space-time. But doing this is not an easy task; there is no good visualization yet.

Challenge 115 ny



**FIGURE 71** Some visualizations of spin representations.

Vol. I, page 98

bosons. Two bosons *can* be in the same state; bosons allow interpenetration. Matter is impenetrable because at the fundamental level *it is composed of fermions*. Radiation is composed of bosons; light beams can cross each other. The distinction between fermions and bosons thus explains why objects can be touched while images cannot. In the first part of our mountain ascent we started by noting this difference; now we know its origin.

### SPIN, STATISTICS AND COMPOSITION

Under rotations, integer spin particles behave differently from half-integer particles. Integer spin particles do not show the strange sign changes under rotations by  $2\pi$ . In the belt imagery, integer spin particles need no attached strings. In particular, a spin 0 particle obviously corresponds to a sphere. Models for other important spin values are shown in Figure 71. Exploring their properties in the same way as above, we arrive at the full *spin–statistics theorem*:

- ▷ Exchange and rotation of objects are similar processes.
- ▷ Objects of half-integer spin are fermions. They obey the Pauli exclusion principle.
- ▷ Objects of integer spin are bosons.

Challenge 116 e You might prove by yourself that this suffices to show the following rule:

- ▷ Composites of bosons, as well as composites of an even number of fermions (at low energy), are bosons; composites of an uneven number of fermions are fermions.\*

Challenge 117 s

\* This rule implies that spin 1 and higher can also be achieved *with tails*; can you find such a representation?

Note that composite fermions can be bosons only up to that energy at which the composition breaks down. Otherwise, by packing fermions into bosons, we could have fermions in the same state.

These connections express basic characteristics of the three-dimensional world in which we live. To which class of particles do tennis balls, people, trees, mountains and all other macroscopic objects belong?

**Challenge 118 s**

### THE SIZE AND DENSITY OF MATTER

The three spatial dimensions have many consequences for physical systems. We know that all matter is made of fermions, such as electrons, protons and neutrons. The exclusion principle has an interesting consequence for systems made of  $N$  *identical* fermions; such systems obey the following expression for momentum  $p$  and size  $l$ :

$$\Delta p \Delta l \gtrsim N^{1/3} \hbar. \quad (67)$$

**Challenge 119 e**

**Ref. 92**

**Challenge 120 e**

Can you derive it? This *extended indeterminacy relation* provides a simple way to estimate the spatial size of matter systems. In particular, the extended indeterminacy relation implies that the average energy per quanton increases with quanton density. Can you show this?

The extended indeterminacy relation implies that matter systems whose extension is due to electrons – thus all condensed matter systems – essentially have similar matter and energy densities. The extended indeterminacy relation also implies that nuclei, which are composed of protons and neutrons, all have essentially the same matter density.

For bosons, the components of radiation, there is no extended indeterminacy relation, as the number of components  $N$  in a particular quantum state does not have any effect or limits. The indeterminacy relation thus does not limit the power density of laser light; and indeed, the power density of laser beams varies much more than the matter density of solids.

**Page 48**

The indeterminacy relation highlights a further difference between matter and radiation. As we saw above, a system of  $N$  identical bosons, such as a laser beam, obeys an indeterminacy between the number and the phase which is easily derived from the energy–time indeterminacy relation. The number–phase relation can be written, approximately, as

$$\Delta N \Delta \varphi \gtrsim 1. \quad (68)$$

It is important in the use of lasers in precision experiments. The relation limits how close a system can get to a pure sine wave; indeed for a pure sine wave, the indeterminacy product would be zero.

**Page 101**

For fermions, where the maximum number in the same state is 1, the number–phase uncertainty relation reduces to a total uncertainty on the phase. In other words, we find – again – that we cannot have fermion beams that behave as waves. There are no classical fermion waves, no coherent fermion beams, in nature.

### A SUMMARY ON SPIN AND INDISTINGUISHABILITY

The quantum of action  $\hbar$  implies that physical systems are made of two types of indistinguishable quantum particles: *bosons* and *fermions*. The two possible exchange behaviours are related to the particle spin value, because exchange is related to rotation. The connec-

tion between spin and rotation implies that antiparticles exist. It also implies that spin is intrinsically a three-dimensional phenomenon.

Experiments show that radiation is made of elementary particles that behave as bosons. Bosons have integer spin. Two or more bosons, such as two photons, *can share* the same state. This sharing makes laser light possible.

Experiments show that matter is made of elementary particles that behave as fermions. Fermions have half-integer spin. They obey Pauli's exclusion principle: two fermions *cannot be* in the same state. The exclusion principle between electrons explains the structure and (partly) the size of atoms, as well as the chemical behaviour of atoms, as we will find out later on. Together with the electrostatic repulsion of electrons, the exclusion principle explains the incompressibility of matter and its lack of impenetrability.

Fermions make matter 'hard', bosons allow light beams to cross.

### LIMITS AND OPEN QUESTIONS OF QUANTUM STATISTICS

The topic of quantum particle statistics remains a research field in theoretical and experimental physics. In particular, researchers have searched and still are searching for generalizations of the possible exchange behaviours of particles.

Page 137

In two spatial dimensions, the effect of a particle exchange on the wave function is a continuous phase, in contrast to three dimensions, where the result is a sign. Two-dimensional quantum objects are therefore called *anyons* because they can have 'any' spin. Anyons appear as quasi-particles in various experiments in solid state physics, because the set-up is often effectively two-dimensional. The *fractional quantum Hall effect*, perhaps the most interesting discovery of modern experimental physics, has pushed anyons onto the stage of modern research.

Vol. V, page 108

Ref. 93

Other theorists generalized the concept of fermions in other ways, introducing parafermions, parabosons, plektons and other hypothetical concepts. Oscar Greenberg has spent most of his professional life on this issue. His conclusion is:

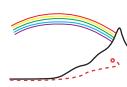
- ▷ In  $3 + 1$  space-time dimensions, only fermions and bosons exist.

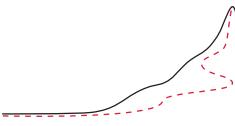
Challenge 121 s

Can you show that this result implies that the ghosts appearing in Scottish tales do not exist?

Vol. VI, page 174

From a different viewpoint, the belt model of spin  $1/2$  invites to study the behaviour of braids, open links and knots. (In mathematics, braids and open links are made of strands extending to infinity.) This fascinating part of mathematical physics has become important with in modern unified theories, which all state that particles, especially at high energies, are not point-like, but extended entities. The quest is to understand what happens to permutation symmetry in a unified theory of nature. A glimpse of the difficulties appears already above: how can Figures 60, 65 and 70 be reconciled and combined? We will settle this issue in the final part of our mountain ascent.





## CHAPTER 7

# SUPERPOSITIONS AND PROBABILITIES – QUANTUM THEORY WITHOUT IDEOLOGY

Ref. 94

“ The fact that an adequate philosophical presentation has been so long delayed is no doubt caused by the fact that Niels Bohr brainwashed a whole generation of theorists into thinking that the job was done fifty years ago.

Murray Gell-Mann

Why is this famous physical issue arousing such strong emotions? In particular, who is brainwashed, Gell-Mann, the discoverer of the quarks, or most of the world’s physicists working on quantum theory who follow Niels Bohr’s opinion? In the twentieth century, quantum mechanics has thrown many in disarray. We have a simple aim: we want to *understand* quantum theory. Quantum mechanics is unfamiliar for two reasons: it allows *superpositions* and it leads to *probabilities*. In this chapter we explore and clarify these two topics – until we understand quantum theory.

Probabilities appear whenever an aspect of a microscopic system is measured. The quantum of action, the smallest change value found in nature, leads to the appearance of probabilities in measurements.

Superpositions appear because the quantum of action radically changed the two most basic concepts of classical physics: state and system. The *state* is not defined and described any more by the specific values taken by position and momentum, but by the specific wave function ‘taken’ by the position and momentum operators.\*<sup>\*\*</sup> In addition, in classical physics a *system* was described and defined as a set of permanent aspects of nature; permanence was defined as negligible interaction with the environment. Quantum mechanics shows that these definitions have to be modified.

Clarifying the origin of superpositions and probabilities, as well as the concepts of system and state, will help us to avoid getting lost on our way to the top of Motion Mountain. Indeed, quite a number of researchers have lost their way since quantum theory appeared, including important physicists like Murray Gell-Mann and Steven Weinberg.

---

<sup>\*\*</sup> It is equivalent, and often conceptually clearer, to say that the state is described by a complete set of commuting operators. In fact, the discussion of states is somewhat simplified in the Heisenberg picture. However, here we study the issue in the Schrödinger picture only, i.e., using wave functions.

Challenge 122 s

Every such ‘artistic impression’ is wrong.  
(Why?)

**FIGURE 72** An artist’s impression of a macroscopic superposition is impossible – because such superpositions are not found in our environment.

### WHY ARE PEOPLE EITHER DEAD OR ALIVE?

The evolution equation of quantum mechanics is *linear* in the wave function; the linearity reflects the existence of superpositions. Superpositions imply that we can imagine and try to construct systems where the state  $\psi$  is a superposition of two radically distinct situations, such as those of a dead and of a living cat. This famous fictional animal is called *Schrödinger’s cat* after the originator of the example. Is it possible to produce it? And how would it evolve in time? We can ask the same two questions in other situations. For example, can we produce a superposition of a state where a car is inside a closed garage with a state where the car is outside? What happens then?

Macroscopic superpositions are strange. Such situations are not observed in everyday life, and only very rarely in the laboratory. The reason for this rareness is an important aspect of what is often called the ‘interpretation’ of quantum mechanics. In fact, such strange situations *are* possible, and the superposition of macroscopically distinct states has actually been observed in a few cases, though not for cats, people or cars. To get an idea of the constraints, let us specify the situation in more detail.\*

### MACROSCOPIC SUPERPOSITIONS, COHERENCE AND INCOHERENCE

The object of discussion are linear superpositions of the type  $\psi = a\psi_a + b\psi_b$ , where  $\psi_a$  and  $\psi_b$  are macroscopically distinct states of the system under discussion, and where  $a$  and  $b$  are some complex coefficients. States are called *macroscopically distinct* when each state corresponds to a different macroscopic situation, i.e., when the two states can be distinguished using the concepts or measurement methods of classical physics. In particular, this means that the physical action necessary to transform one state into the other must be much larger than  $\hbar$ . For example, two different positions of a body composed of a large number of atoms are macroscopically distinct. The state of a cat that is living and of the same cat when it is dead also differ by many quanta of action.

A ‘strange’ situation is thus a superposition of macroscopically distinct states. Let us work out the essence of such macroscopic superpositions more clearly. Given two macroscopically distinct states  $\psi_a$  and  $\psi_b$ , any superposition of the type  $\psi = a\psi_a + b\psi_b$  is called a *pure state*. Since the states  $\psi_a$  and  $\psi_b$  can interfere, one also talks about a (*phase*) *coherent superposition*. In the case of a superposition of macroscopically distinct states,

\* Most what can be said about this topic has been said by three important researchers: Niels Bohr, one of the fathers of quantum physics, John von Neumann, who in the nineteen-thirties stressed the differences between evolution and decoherence, and by Heinz Dieter Zeh, who in the nineteen-seventies stressed the importance of baths and the environment in the decoherence process.

the scalar product  $\psi_a^\dagger \psi_b$  is obviously vanishing. In case of a coherent superposition, the coefficient product  $a^* b$  is different from zero. This fact can also be expressed with the help of the *density matrix*  $\rho$  of the system, defined as  $\rho = \psi \otimes \psi^\dagger$ . In the present case it is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_{\text{pure}} &= \psi \otimes \psi^\dagger = |a|^2 \psi_a \otimes \psi_a^\dagger + |b|^2 \psi_b \otimes \psi_b^\dagger + a b^* \psi_a \otimes \psi_b^\dagger + a^* b \psi_b \otimes \psi_a^\dagger \\ &= (\psi_a, \psi_b) \begin{pmatrix} |a|^2 & a b^* \\ a^* b & |b|^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \psi_a^\dagger \\ \psi_b^\dagger \end{pmatrix}.\end{aligned}\quad (69)$$

We can then say that whenever the system is in a pure, or coherent state, then its density matrix, or *density functional*, contains off-diagonal terms of the same order of magnitude as the diagonal ones.\* Such a density matrix corresponds to the above-mentioned strange situations that we never observe in daily life. We will shortly understand why.

We now have a look at the opposite situation, a density matrix for macroscopic distinct states with *vanishing* off-diagonal elements. For two states, the example

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_{\text{mixed}} &= |a|^2 \psi_a \otimes \psi_a^\dagger + |b|^2 \psi_b \otimes \psi_b^\dagger \\ &= (\psi_a, \psi_b) \begin{pmatrix} |a|^2 & 0 \\ 0 & |b|^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \psi_a^\dagger \\ \psi_b^\dagger \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}\quad (71)$$

describes a system which possesses *no* phase coherence at all. (Here,  $\otimes$  denotes the non-commutative dyadic product or tensor product which produces a tensor or matrix starting from two vectors.) Such a diagonal density matrix cannot be that of a pure state; the density matrix describes a system which is in the state  $\psi_a$  with probability  $|a|^2$  and which is in the state  $\psi_b$  with probability  $|b|^2$ . Such a system is said to be in a *mixed state*, because its state is *not known*, or equivalently, is in a (*phase*) *incoherent superposition*: interference effects cannot be observed in such a situation. A system described by a mixed state is always *either* in the state  $\psi_a$  *or* in the state  $\psi_b$ . In other words, a diagonal density matrix for macroscopically distinct states is not in contrast, but in agreement with everyday experience.

In the picture of density matrices, the non-diagonal elements contain the difference between normal, i.e., incoherent, and unusual or strange, i.e., coherent, superpositions.

The experimental situation is clear: for macroscopically distinct states, only diagonal density matrices are observed in everyday life. Almost all systems in a coherent macroscopic superposition somehow lose their off-diagonal matrix elements. How does this process of *decoherence* – also called *disentanglement* in certain settings – take place? The density matrix itself shows the way.

---

\* Using the density matrix, we can rewrite the evolution equation of a quantum system:

$$\dot{\psi} = -iH\psi \quad \text{becomes} \quad \frac{d\rho}{dt} = -\frac{i}{\hbar}[H, \rho]. \quad (70)$$

Both are completely equivalent. (The new expression is sometimes also called the *von Neumann equation*.) We won't actually do any calculations here. The expressions are given so that you recognize them when you encounter them elsewhere.

### DECOHERENCE IS DUE TO BATHS

Ref. 97

Challenge 123 ny

In thermodynamics, the density matrix  $\rho$  for a large system is used for the definition of its entropy  $S$  – and of all its other thermodynamic quantities. These studies show that

$$S = -k \operatorname{tr}(\rho \ln \rho) \quad (72)$$

where  $\operatorname{tr}$  denotes the *trace*, i.e., the sum of all diagonal elements, and  $k$  is the Boltzmann constant. The expression is thus the quantum mechanical definition of entropy.

We now remind ourselves that a physical system with a large and constant entropy is called a *bath*. In simple physical terms, a bath is a system to which we can ascribe a temperature. More precisely,

A (*physical*) *bath* – also called a (*thermodynamic*) *reservoir* – is any large system for which the concept of *equilibrium* can be applied.

Experiments show that in practice, this is equivalent to the condition that a bath consists of many interacting subsystems. For this reason, all macroscopic quantities describing the state of a bath show small, irregular *fluctuations*, a property that will be of central importance shortly.

An everyday bath is also a physical bath: indeed, a thermodynamic bath is similar to an extremely large warm water bath, one for which the temperature does not change even if we add some cold or warm water to it. The physical concept of bath, or reservoir, is thus an abstraction and a generalization of the everyday concept of bath. Other examples of physical baths are: an intense magnetic field, a large amount of gas, or a large solid. (The meanings of ‘intense’ and ‘large’ of course depend on the system under study.)

Challenge 124 s

The definition (72) of entropy tells us that the loss of off-diagonal elements corresponds to an increase in entropy. In addition, any increase in entropy of a reversible system, such as the quantum mechanical system in question, is due to an interaction with a bath.

In short, *decoherence is due to interaction with a bath*. In addition, decoherence is a process that increases entropy: decoherence is irreversible. We will now show that baths are everywhere, that decoherence thus takes place everywhere and all the time, and that therefore, macroscopic superpositions are (almost) never observed.

### HOW BATHS LEAD TO DECOHERENCE – SCATTERING

Where is the bath interacting with a typical system? The bath must be outside the system we are talking about, i.e., in its *environment*. Indeed, we know experimentally that a typical environment is large and characterized by a temperature. Some examples are listed in Table 6. In short,

- ▷ Any environment is a bath.

We can even go further: for every experimental situation, there is a bath *interacting* with the system under study. Indeed, every system which can be observed is not isolated, as it obviously interacts at least with the observer; and every observer by definition contains

**TABLE 6** Common and less common baths with their main properties.

BATH TYPE	TEMPERATURE	WAVE-LENGTH	PARTICLE FLUX	CROSS SECTION (ATOM)	HIT TIME 1/ $\sigma\varphi$ FOR ATOM <sup>a</sup>	HIT TIME FOR BALL <sup>a</sup>
	T	$\lambda_{\text{eff}}$	$\varphi$	$\sigma$	ATOM <sup>a</sup>	BALL <sup>a</sup>
<b>matter baths</b>						
solid, liquid	300 K	10 pm	$10^{31} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-19} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{-12} \text{ s}$	$10^{-25} \text{ s}$
air	300 K	10 pm	$10^{28} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-19} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{-9} \text{ s}$	$10^{-22} \text{ s}$
laboratory vacuum	50 mK	10 $\mu\text{m}$	$10^{18} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-19} \text{ m}^2$	10 s	$10^{-12} \text{ s}$
<b>photon baths</b>						
sunlight	5800 K	900 nm	$10^{23} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$		$10^{-4} \text{ s}$	$10^{-17} \text{ s}$
'darkness'	300 K	20 $\mu\text{m}$	$10^{21} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$		$10^{-2} \text{ s}$	$10^{-15} \text{ s}$
cosmic microwaves	2.7 K	2 mm	$10^{17} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$		$10^2 \text{ s}$	$10^{-11} \text{ s}$
terrestrial radio waves						
Casimir effect					very large	
Unruh radiation of Earth	40 zK				very large	
<b>nuclear radiation baths</b>						
radioactivity		10 fm	$1 / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-25} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{25} \text{ s}$	$10^{12} \text{ s}$
cosmic radiation	>1000 K	10 fm	$10^{-2} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-25} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{27} \text{ s}$	$10^{14} \text{ s}$
solar neutrinos	$\approx 10 \text{ MK}$	10 fm	$10^{11} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-47} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{36} \text{ s}$	$10^{15} \text{ s}$
cosmic neutrinos	2.0 K	3 mm	$10^{17} / \text{m}^2 \text{s}$	$10^{-62} \text{ m}^2$	$10^{45} \text{ s}$	$10^{24} \text{ s}$
<b>gravitational baths</b>						
gravitational radiation	$5 \cdot 10^{31} \text{ K}$	$10^{-35} \text{ m}$			very large	

*a.* Values are rough estimates. The macroscopic ball is assumed to have a 1 mm size.

a bath, as we will show in more detail shortly. Usually however, the most important baths we have to take into consideration are the atmosphere around a system, the radiation or electromagnetic fields interacting with the system, or, if the system itself is large enough to have a temperature, those degrees of freedom of the system which are not involved in the superposition under investigation.

Since every physical system is in contact with a bath, every density matrix of a macroscopic superposition will lose its diagonal elements eventually. At first sight, this direction of thought is not convincing. The interactions of a system with its environment can be made extremely small by using clever experimental set-ups; that would imply that the time for decoherence can be made extremely large. Thus we need to check how much time a superposition of states needs to decohere. It turns out that there are two standard ways to estimate the *decoherence time*: either by modelling the bath as large number of colliding particles, or by modelling it as a continuous field.

If the bath is described as a set of particles randomly hitting the microscopic system, it is best characterized by the effective wavelength  $\lambda_{\text{eff}}$  of the particles and by the average interval  $t_{\text{hit}}$  between two hits. A straightforward calculation shows that the decoherence

time  $t_d$  is in any case smaller than this time interval, so that

$$t_d \leq t_{\text{hit}} = \frac{1}{\varphi\sigma} , \quad (73)$$

where  $\varphi$  is the flux of particles and  $\sigma$  the cross-section for the hit.\* Typical values are given in [Table 6](#). We easily note that for macroscopic objects, decoherence times are extremely short. (We also note that nuclear and gravitational effects lead to large decoherence times and thus can be neglected.) *Scattering leads to fast decoherence of macroscopic systems.* However, for atoms or smaller systems, the situation is different, as expected. *Microscopic systems can show long decoherence times.*

We note that the quantum of action  $\hbar$  appears in the expression for the decoherence time, as it appears in the area  $\sigma$ . Decoherence is a quantum process.

#### HOW BATHS LEAD TO DECOHERENCE – RELAXATION

A second method to estimate the decoherence time is also common. Any interaction of a system with a bath is described by a relaxation time  $t_r$ . The term *relaxation* designates any process which leads to the return to the equilibrium state. The terms *damping* and *friction* are also used. In the present case, the relaxation time describes the return to equilibrium of the combination bath and system. Relaxation is an example of an irreversible evolution. A process is called *irreversible* if the reversed process, in which every component moves in opposite direction, is of very low probability.\*\* For example, it is usual that a glass of wine poured into a bowl of water colours the whole water; it is very rarely observed that the wine and the water separate again, since the probability of all water and wine molecules to change directions together at the same time is rather low, a state of affairs making the happiness of wine producers and the despair of wine consumers.

Now let us simplify the description of the bath. We approximate it by a single, unspecified, scalar field which interacts with the quantum system. Due to the continuity of space, such a field has an infinity of degrees of freedom. They are taken to model the many degrees of freedom of the bath. The field is assumed to be in an initial state where its degrees of freedom are excited in a way described by a temperature  $T$ . The interaction of the system with the bath, which is at the origin of the relaxation process, can be described by the repeated transfer of small amounts of energy  $E_{\text{hit}}$  until the relaxation

---

\* The decoherence time is derived by studying the evolution of the density matrix  $\rho(x, x')$  of objects localized at two points  $x$  and  $x'$ . One finds that the off-diagonal elements follow  $\rho(x, x', t) = \rho(x, x', 0)e^{-\Lambda t(x-x')^2}$ , where the localization rate  $\Lambda$  is given by

$$\Lambda = k^2 \varphi \sigma_{\text{eff}} \quad (74)$$

where  $k$  is the wave number,  $\varphi$  the flux and  $\sigma_{\text{eff}}$  the cross-section of the collisions, i.e., usually the size of the macroscopic object.

Ref. 98 One also finds the surprising result that a system hit by a particle of energy  $E_{\text{hit}}$  collapses the density matrix roughly down to the de Broglie (or thermal de Broglie) wavelength of the hitting particle. Both results together give the formula above.

Ref. 99 \*\* Beware of other definitions which try to make something deeper out of the concept of irreversibility, such as claims that ‘irreversible’ means that the reversed process is *not at all* possible. Many so-called ‘contradictions’ between the irreversibility of processes and the reversibility of evolution equations are due to this mistaken interpretation of the term ‘irreversible’.

process is completed.

The objects of interest in this discussion, like the mentioned cat, person or car, are described by a mass  $m$ . Their main characteristic is the maximum energy  $E_r$ , which can be transferred from the system to the environment. This energy describes the interactions between system and environment. The superpositions of macroscopic states we are interested in are solutions of the Hamiltonian evolution of these systems.

The initial coherence of the superposition, so disturbingly in contrast with our everyday experience, disappears exponentially within a *decoherence time*  $t_d$  given by<sup>\*</sup>

$$t_d = t_r \frac{E_{\text{hit}}}{E_r} \frac{e^{E_{\text{hit}}/kT} - 1}{e^{E_{\text{hit}}/kT} + 1} \quad (77)$$

where  $k$  is again the *Boltzmann constant* and like above,  $E_r$  is the maximum energy which can be transferred from the system to the environment. Note that one always has  $t_d \leq t_r$ . After the decoherence time  $t_d$  is elapsed, the system has evolved from the coherent to the incoherent superposition of states, or, in other words, the density matrix has lost its off-diagonal terms. One also says that the phase coherence of this system has been destroyed. Thus, after a time  $t_d$ , the system is found either in the state  $\psi_a$  or in the state  $\psi_b$ , respectively with the probability  $|a|^2$  or  $|b|^2$ , and not any more in a coherent superposition which is so much in contradiction with our daily experience. Which final state is selected depends on the precise state of the bath, whose details were eliminated from the calculation by taking an *average* over the states of its microscopic constituents.

The important result is that for all *macroscopic* objects, the decoherence time  $t_d$  is extremely small. In order to see this more clearly, we can study a special simplified case. A macroscopic object of mass  $m$ , like the mentioned cat or car, is assumed to be at the same time in two locations separated by a distance  $l$ , i.e., in a superposition of the two corresponding states. We further assume that the superposition is due to the object moving as a quantum mechanical oscillator with frequency  $\omega$  between the two locations; this is the simplest possible system that shows superpositions of an object located in two different positions. The energy of the object is then given by  $E_r = m\omega^2 l^2$ , and the smallest transfer energy  $E_{\text{hit}} = \hbar\omega$  is the difference between the oscillator levels. In a macroscopic situation, this last energy is much smaller than  $kT$ , so that from the preceding expression we get

$$t_d = t_r \frac{E_{\text{hit}}^2}{2E_r kT} = t_r \frac{\hbar^2}{2mkTl^2} = t_r \frac{\lambda_T^2}{l^2} \quad (78)$$

Ref. 102

---

<sup>\*</sup> This result is derived as in the above case. A system interacting with a bath always has an evolution given by the general form

$$\frac{d\rho}{dt} = -\frac{i}{\hbar}[H, \rho] - \frac{1}{2t_o} \sum_j [V_j \rho, V_j^\dagger] + [V_j, \rho V_j^\dagger], \quad (75)$$

Challenge 126 ny

where  $\rho$  is the density matrix,  $H$  the Hamiltonian,  $V$  the interaction, and  $t_o$  the characteristic time of the interaction. Are you able to see why? Solving this equation, one finds for the elements far from the diagonal  $\rho(t) = \rho_0 e^{-t/t_o}$ . In other words, they disappear with a characteristic time  $t_o$ . In most situations one has a relation of the form

$$t_0 = t_r \frac{E_{\text{hit}}}{E_r} = t_{\text{hit}} \quad (76)$$

or some variations of it, as in the example above.

in which the frequency  $\omega$  has disappeared. The quantity  $\lambda_T = \hbar/\sqrt{2mkT}$  is called the *thermal de Broglie wavelength* of a particle.

We note again that the quantum of action  $\hbar$  appears in the expression for the decoherence time. Decoherence is a quantum process.

It is straightforward to see that for practically all macroscopic objects the typical decoherence time  $t_d$  is extremely short. For example, setting  $m = 1\text{ g}$ ,  $l = 1\text{ mm}$  and  $T = 300\text{ K}$  we get  $t_d/t_r = 1.3 \cdot 10^{-39}$ . Even if the interaction between the system and the environment would be so weak that the system would have as relaxation time the age of the universe, which is about  $4 \cdot 10^{17}\text{ s}$ , the time  $t_d$  would still be shorter than  $5 \cdot 10^{-22}\text{ s}$ , which is over a million times faster than the oscillation time of a beam of light (about 2 fs for green light). For Schrödinger's cat, the decoherence time would be even shorter. These times are so short that we cannot even hope to *prepare* the initial coherent superposition, let alone to observe its decay or to measure its lifetime.

For microscopic systems however, the situation is different. For example, for an electron in a solid cooled to liquid helium temperature we have  $m = 9.1 \cdot 10^{-31}\text{ kg}$ , and typically  $l = 1\text{ nm}$  and  $T = 4\text{ K}$ ; we then get  $t_d \approx t_r$  and therefore the system can stay in a coherent superposition until it is relaxed, which confirms that for this case coherent effects can indeed be observed if the system is kept isolated. A typical example is the behaviour of electrons in superconducting materials. We will mention a few more below.

Ref. 103

Ref. 104

Ref. 105

Ref. 106

In 1996 the first actual measurement of decoherence times was published by the Paris team led by Serge Haroche. It confirmed the relation between the decoherence time and the relaxation time, thus showing that the two processes have to be distinguished at microscopic scale. In the meantime, many other experiments confirmed the decoherence process with its evolution equation, both for small and large values of  $t_d/t_r$ . A particularly beautiful experiment has been performed in 2004, where the disappearance of two-slit interference for  $C_{70}$  molecules was observed when a bath interacts with them.

### SUMMARY ON DECOHERENCE, LIFE AND DEATH

Our exploration showed that *decoherence results from coupling to a bath in the environment*. Decoherence is a quantum statistical effect, i.e., a thermodynamic effect. Decoherence follows from quantum theory, is an irreversible process, and thus occurs automatically. Above all, decoherence is a process that has been observed in experiments.

The estimates of decoherence times in everyday life told us that both the preparation and the survival of superpositions of macroscopically different states is made *impossible* by the interaction with any bath found in the environment. This is the case even if the usual measure of this interaction, given by the friction of the motion of the system, is very small. Even if a macroscopic system is subject to an extremely low friction, leading to a very long relaxation time, its decoherence time is still vanishingly short. Only carefully designed microscopic systems in expensive laboratory set-ups can reach substantial decoherence times.

Our everyday environment is full of baths. Therefore,

- ▷ Coherent superpositions of macroscopically distinct states never appear in everyday life, due to the rapid decoherence times induced by baths in the environment.

Cars cannot be in and out of a garage at the same time. We cannot be dead and alive at the same time. An illustration of a macroscopic superposition – see Figure 122 – is impossible. In agreement with the explanation, coherent superpositions of macroscopic states appear in some special laboratory situations.

### WHAT IS A SYSTEM? WHAT IS AN OBJECT?

In classical physics, a system is a part of nature that can be isolated from its environment. However, quantum mechanics tells us that isolated systems do not exist, since interactions cannot be made vanishingly small. The contradiction can be solved with the results above: they allow us to define the concept of system with more accuracy.

- ▷ A *system* is any part of nature that interacts *incoherently* with its environment.

This implies:

- ▷ An *object* is a part of nature interacting with its environment only through baths.

In particular, we get:

- ▷ A system is called *microscopic* or *quantum mechanical* and can be described by a wave function  $\psi$  whenever
  - it is almost isolated, with  $t_{\text{evol}} = \hbar/\Delta E < t_r$ , and
  - it is in *incoherent* interaction with its environment.

Ref. 107

In short, a microscopic or quantum mechanical system can be described by a wave function only if it interacts incoherently and weakly with its environment. (For such a system, the energy indeterminacy  $\Delta E$  is larger than the relaxation energy.) In contrast, a bath is never isolated in the sense just given, because the evolution time of a bath, the time scale during which its properties change, is always much larger than its relaxation time. Since all macroscopic bodies are in contact with baths – or even contain one – they cannot be described by a wave function. In particular, it is impossible to describe any measuring apparatus with the help of a wave function.

We thus conclude:

- ▷ A *macroscopic system* is a system with a decoherence time much shorter than any other evolution time of its constituents.

Obviously, macroscopic systems also interact incoherently with their environment. Thus cats, cars and television news speakers are all macroscopic systems.

### ENTANGLEMENT

One possibility is left over by the two definitions of system: what happens in the situation in which the interactions with the environment are *coherent*? We will encounter some ex-

amples shortly. Following the definitions, they are neither microscopic nor macroscopic systems.

- ▷ A ‘system’ in which the interaction with its environment is coherent is called *entangled*.

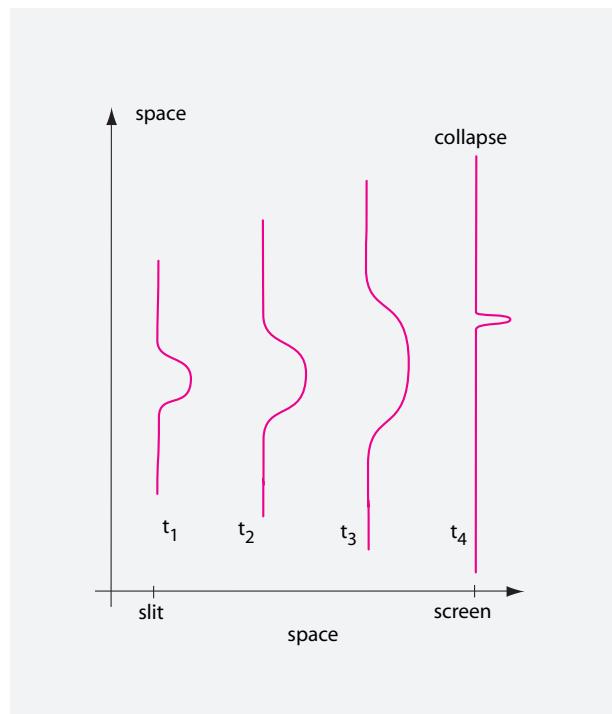
Such ‘systems’ are not described by a wave function, and strictly speaking, they are *not* systems. In these situations, when the interaction is coherent, one speaks of *entanglement*. For example, one says that a particle or set of particles is said to be *entangled* with its environment.

Entangled, i.e., coherently interacting systems can be divided, but must be disentangled when doing so. The act of division leads to detached entities; detached entities interact incoherently. Quantum theory shows that nature is not made of detached entities, but that it is made of *detachable* entities. In quantum theory, the criterion of detachment is the incoherence of interaction. Coherent superpositions imply the surprising consequence that there are systems which, even though they look being made of detached parts, are not. Entanglement poses a limit to detachment. All surprising properties of quantum mechanics, such as Schrödinger’s cat, are consequences of the classical prejudice that a system made of two or more parts can obviously be detached into two subsystems without disturbance. But coherent superpositions, or entangled systems, do not allow detachment without disturbance. Whenever we assume to be able to detach entangled systems, we get strange or incorrect conclusions, such as apparent faster-than-light propagation, or, as one says today, non-local behaviour. Let us have a look at a few typical examples.

Entangled situations are observed in many experiments. For example, when an electron and a positron annihilate into two photons, the polarisations of these two photons are entangled, as measured already in 1949. Also when an excited atom decays in steps, emitting two photons, the photon polarisations are entangled, as was first shown in 1966 with the help of calcium atoms. Similarly, when an unstable molecule in a singlet state, i.e., in a spin 0 state, decays or splits into debris, the spins of the debris are entangled, as observed in the 1970s. Also the spontaneous parametric down-conversion of photons produces entanglement. In a non-linear optical material, an incoming photon is converted into two outgoing photons whose added energies correspond to the energy of the incoming photon. In this case, the two outgoing photons are entangled both in their polarisation and in their direction. In 2001, the spins of two extremely cold caesium gas samples, with millions of atoms each and located a few millimetres apart, have been entangled. Also position entanglement has been regularly observed, for example for closely spaced ions inside ion traps.

#### IS QUANTUM THEORY NON-LOCAL? A BIT ABOUT THE EINSTEIN-PODOLSKY-ROSEN PARADOX

“ [Mr. Duffy] lived a little distance away from his body ... ”  
James Joyce, *A Painful Case*



**FIGURE 73** Quantum mechanical motion: an electron wave function (actually its module squared) from the moment it passes a slit until it hits a screen.

Page 154

Challenge 127 s  
Vol. III, page 133

Vol. II, page 58

Ref. 108  
Vol. II, page 284

It is often suggested, incorrectly, that wave function collapse or quantum theory are non-local.\* The issue needs clarification.

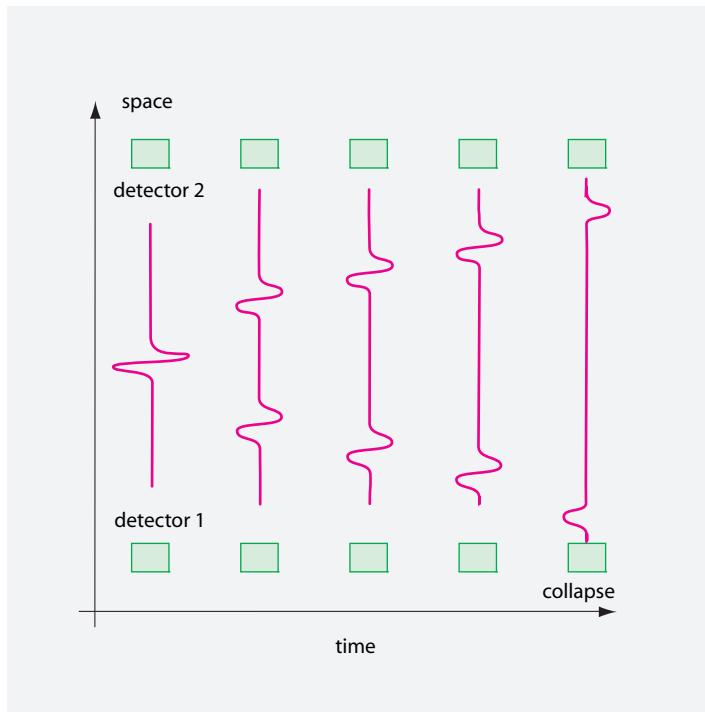
We start by imagining an electron hitting a screen after passing a slit. Following the description just deduced, the collapse process proceeds schematically as depicted in [Figure 73](#). An animation that includes another example of a collapse process – inspired by Bohm's thought experiment – can be seen in the lower left corners on these pages, starting at [page 115](#). The collapse process has a surprising side: due to the shortness of the decoherence time, during this (and any other) wave function collapse the maximum of the wave function usually changes position faster than light. Is this reasonable?

A situation is called *acausal* or *non-local* if energy is transported faster than light. Using [Figure 73](#) you can determine the energy velocity involved, using the results on signal propagation. The result is a value smaller than  $c$ . A wave function whose maximum moves faster than light does *not automatically* imply that energy moves faster than light.

In other words, quantum theory contains speeds greater than light, but no *energy* speeds greater than light. In classical electrodynamics, the same happens with the scalar and the vector potentials if the Coulomb gauge is used. We have also encountered speeds faster than that of light in the motion of shadows and scissors, and in many other observations. Any physicist now has two choices: he can be straight, and say that there is no non-locality in nature; or he can be less straight, and claim there is. In the latter

---

\* This continues a topic that we know already: we have explored a different type of non-locality, in general relativity, earlier on.



**FIGURE 74** Bohm's thought experiment.

case, he has to claim that even classical physics is non-local. However, nobody dares to claim this. In fact, there is a danger in this more provoking usage of the term ‘non-local’: a small percentage of those who claim that the world is non-local after a while start to believe that there really is faster-than-light energy transport in nature. These people become prisoners of their muddled thinking. On the other hands, muddled thinking helps to get more easily into newspapers. In short, even though the definition of non-locality is not unanimous, here we stick to the stricter one, and define non-locality as *energy* transport faster than light.

An often cited thought experiment that shows the pitfalls of non-locality was proposed by Bohm\* in the discussion around the so-called Einstein–Podolsky–Rosen paradox. In the famous EPR paper the three authors tried to find a contradiction between quantum mechanics and common sense. Bohm translated their rather confused paper into a clear thought experiment that is shown schematically in Figure 74. When two particles in a spin 0 state move apart, measuring one particle’s spin orientation implies an *immediate* collapse also of the other particle’s spin, namely in the exactly opposite direction. This happens instantaneously over the whole separation distance; no speed limit is obeyed. In other words, entanglement seems to lead to faster-than-light communication.

However, in Bohm’s experiment, no energy is transported faster than light. No non-locality is present, despite numerous claims of the contrary by certain authors. The two

Ref. 109, Ref. 110

\* David Joseph Bohm (1917–1992), was an influential physicist. He codiscovered the Aharonov–Bohm effect and spent a large part of his later life investigating the connections between quantum physics and philosophy.

Vol. III, page 136

entangled electrons belong to one system: assuming that they are separate only because the wave function has two distant maxima is a conceptual mistake. In fact, no signal can be transmitted with this method; the decoherence is a case of prediction which looks like a signal without being one. Bohm's experiment, like any other EPR-like experiment, does not allow communication faster than light. We already discussed such cases in the section on electrodynamics.

**Ref. 111** Bohm's experiment has actually been performed. The first and most famous realization was due, in 1982, by Alain Aspect; he used photons instead of electrons. Like all latter tests, it has fully confirmed quantum mechanics.

In fact, experiments such as the one by Aspect confirm that it is impossible to treat either of the two particles as a system by itself; it is impossible to ascribe any physical property, such as a spin orientation, to either of them alone. (The Heisenberg picture would express this restriction even more clearly.) Only the two electrons together form a physical system, because only the pair interacts incoherently with the environment.

The mentioned two examples of apparent non-locality can be dismissed with the remark that since obviously no energy flux faster than light is involved, no problems with causality appear. Therefore the following example is more interesting. Take two identical atoms, one in an excited state, one in the ground state, and call  $l$  the distance that separates them. Common sense tells that if the first atom returns to its ground state emitting a photon, the second atom can be excited only after a time  $t = l/c$  has been elapsed, i.e., after the photon has travelled to the second atom.

**Ref. 112** Surprisingly, this conclusion is wrong. The atom in its ground state has a non-zero probability to be excited at the same moment in which the first is de-excited. This has been shown most simply by Gerhard Hegerfeldt. The result has also been confirmed experimentally.

More careful studies show that the result depends on the type of superposition of the two atoms at the beginning: coherent or incoherent. For incoherent superpositions, the intuitive result is correct; the counter-intuitive result appears only for coherent superpositions. Again, a careful discussion shows that no real non-locality of energy is involved.

In summary, faster-than-light speeds in wave function collapse do not contradict the limit on energy speed of special relativity. Collapse speeds are phase velocities. In nature, phase velocities are unlimited; unlimited phase velocities never imply energy transport faster than light. In addition, we recover the result that physical systems are only clearly defined if they interact incoherently with their environment.

### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT SUPERPOSITIONS

Challenge 128 s

Some people wrongly state that atoms in a superposition of two states centred at different positions can be photographed. (This lie is even used by some sects to attract believers.) Why is this not true?

\* \*

In a few cases, the superposition of different macroscopic states can actually be observed by lowering the temperature to sufficiently small values and by carefully choosing suitably small masses or distances. Two well-known examples of coherent superpositions are those observed in gravitational wave detectors and in Josephson junctions. In the

Ref. 102 first case, one observes a mass as heavy as 1000 kg in a superposition of states located at different points in space: the distance between them is of the order of  $10^{-17}$  m. In the second case, in superconducting rings, superpositions of a state in which a macroscopic current of the order of 1 pA flows in clockwise direction with one where it flows in counter-clockwise direction have been produced.

Ref. 113

\* \*

Ref. 114 Superpositions of magnetization in up and down direction at the same time have been observed for several materials.

\* \*

Ref. 115 Since the 1990s, the sport of finding and playing with new systems in coherent macroscopic superpositions has taken off across the world. The challenges lie in the clean experiments necessary. Experiments with single atoms in superpositions of states are among the most popular ones.

Ref. 116

\* \*

Ref. 117 In 1997, coherent atom waves were extracted from a cloud of sodium atoms.

\* \*

Macroscopic objects usually are in incoherent states. This is the same situation as for light. The world is full of ‘macroscopic’, i.e., incoherent light: daylight, and all light from lamps, from fire and from glow-worms is incoherent. Only very special and carefully constructed sources, such as lasers or small point sources, emit coherent light. Only these sources allow studying interference effects. In fact, the terms ‘coherent’ and ‘incoherent’ originated in optics, since for light the difference between the two, namely the capacity to interfere, had been observed centuries before the case of matter.

Page 139

Coherence and incoherence of light and of matter manifest themselves differently, because matter can stay at rest but light cannot and because matter is made of fermions, but light is made of bosons. Coherence can be observed easily in systems composed of bosons, such as light, sound in solids, or electron pairs in superconductors. Coherence is less easily observed in systems of fermions, such as systems of atoms with their electron clouds. However, in both cases a decoherence time can be defined. In both cases coherence in many particle systems is best observed if all particles are in the same state (superconductivity, laser light) and in both cases the transition from coherent to incoherent is due to the interaction with a bath. A beam is thus incoherent if its particles arrive randomly in time and in frequency. In everyday life, the rarity of observation of coherent matter superpositions has the same origin as the rarity of observation of coherent light.

\* \*

Vol. V, page 48 We will discuss the relation between the environment and the *decay* of unstable systems later on. The phenomenon is completely described by decoherence.

\* \*

Challenge 129 ny

Can you find a method to measure the *degree* of entanglement? Can you do so for a system made of many particles?

\* \*

The study of entanglement leads to a simple conclusion: *teleportation contradicts correlation*. Can you confirm the statement?

\* \*

**Challenge 130 ny** Are ghost images in TV sets, often due to spurious reflections, examples of interference?

\* \*

**Challenge 131 s** What happens when two monochromatic electrons overlap?

\* \*

**Ref. 118** Some people say that quantum theory could be used for quantum computing, by using coherent superpositions of wave functions. Can you give a general reason that makes this aim very difficult – even though not impossible – even without knowing how such a quantum computer might work, or what the so-called *qubits* might be?

**Challenge 133 s**

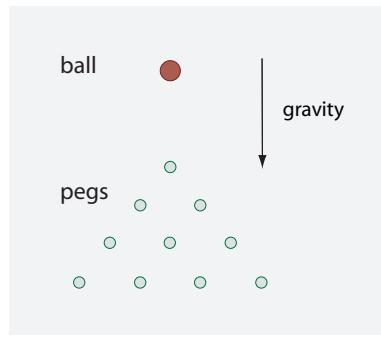
### WHY DO PROBABILITIES AND WAVE FUNCTION COLLAPSE APPEAR IN MEASUREMENTS?

Measurements in quantum mechanics are puzzling also because they lead to statements in which *probabilities* appear. For example, we speak about the probability of finding an electron at a certain distance from the nucleus of an atom. Statements like this belong to the general type ‘when the observable  $A$  is measured, the probability to find the outcome  $a$  is  $p$ .’ In the following we will show that the probabilities in such statements are inevitable for any measurement, because, as we will show, (1) any measurement and any observation is a special case of decoherence or disentanglement process and (2) all decoherence processes imply the quantum of action. (Historically, the process of measurement was studied *before* the more general process of decoherence. That explains in part why the topic is so confused in many peoples’ minds.)

**Vol. III, page 267****Challenge 134 s**

What is a measurement? As already mentioned earlier on, a measurement is any interaction which produces a record or a memory. (Any effect of everyday life is a record; but this is not true in general. Can you give some examples of effects that are records and some effects which are not?) Measurements can be performed by machines; when they are performed by people, they are called *observations*. In quantum theory, the process of measurement is not as straightforward as in classical physics. This is seen most strikingly when a quantum system, such as a single electron, is first made to pass a diffraction slit, or better – in order to make its wave aspect become apparent – a double slit and then is made to hit a photographic plate, in order to make also its particle aspect appear. Experiment shows that the blackened dot, the spot where the electron has hit the screen, cannot be determined in advance. (The same is true for photons or any other particle.) However, for large numbers of electrons, the spatial distribution of the black dots, the so-called *diffraction pattern*, can be calculated in advance with high precision.

The outcome of experiments on microscopic systems thus forces us to use probabilities for the description of microsystems. We find that the probability distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$  of the spots on the photographic plate can be calculated from the wave function  $\psi$  of the electron at the screen surface and is given by  $p(\mathbf{x}) = |\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{x})|^2$ . This is in fact a special



**FIGURE 75** A system showing probabilistic behaviour: ball falling through an array of pegs.

case of the general *first property of quantum measurements*:

- ▷ The measurement of an observable  $A$  for a system in a state  $\psi$  gives as result one of the eigenvalues  $a_n$ , and the probability  $P_n$  to get the result  $a_n$  is given by

$$P_n = |\varphi_n^\dagger \psi|^2, \quad (79)$$

where  $\varphi_n$  is the eigenfunction of the operator  $A$  corresponding to the eigenvalue  $a_n$ .\*

Experiments also show a *second property of quantum measurements*:

- ▷ After a measurement, the observed quantum system is in the state  $\varphi_n$  corresponding to the measured eigenvalue  $a_n$ . One also says that during the measurement, the wave function has *collapsed* from  $\psi$  to  $\varphi_n$ .

Ref. 119

These two experimental properties can also be generalized to the more general cases with degenerate and continuous eigenvalues.

Obviously, the experimental results on the measurement process require an explanation. At first sight, the sort of probabilities encountered in quantum theory are different from the probabilities we encounter in everyday life. Take roulette, dice, the system shown in Figure 75, pachinko machines or the direction in which a pencil on its tip falls: all have been measured experimentally to be random (assuming no cheating by the designer or operators) to a high degree of accuracy. These everyday systems do not puzzle us. We unconsciously assume that the random outcome is due to the small, but uncontrollable variations of the starting conditions or the environment every time the experiment is repeated.\*\*

---

\* All linear transformations transform some special vectors, called *eigenvectors* (from the German word *eigen* meaning ‘self’) into multiples of themselves. In other words, if  $T$  is a transformation,  $e$  a vector, and

$$T(e) = \lambda e \quad (80)$$

where  $\lambda$  is a scalar, then the vector  $e$  is called an *eigenvector* of  $T$ , and  $\lambda$  is associated *eigenvalue*. The set of all eigenvalues of a transformation  $T$  is called the *spectrum* of  $T$ .

\*\* To get a feeling for the limitations of these unconscious assumptions, you may want to read the already

But microscopic systems seem to be different. The two properties of quantum measurements just mentioned express what physicists observe in every experiment, even if the initial conditions are taken to be *exactly* the same every time. But why then is the position for a single electron, or most other observables of quantum systems, not predictable? In other words, what happens during the collapse of the wave function? How long does the collapse take? In the beginning of quantum theory, there was the perception that the observed unpredictability is due to the lack of information about the state of the particle. This lead many to search for so-called ‘hidden variables’. All these attempts were doomed to fail, however. It took some time for the scientific community to realize that the unpredictability is *not* due to the lack of information about the state of the particle, which is indeed described *completely* by the state vector  $\psi$ .

In order to uncover the origin of probabilities, let us recall the nature of a measurement, or better, of a general observation.

- ▷ Any observation is the production of a record.

Vol. III, page 265

The record can be a visual or auditory memory in our brain, or a written record on paper, or a tape recording, or any such type of object. As explained in the previous volume, an object is a record if it cannot have arisen or disappeared by chance. To avoid the influence of chance, all records have to be protected as much as possible from the *external* world; e.g. one typically puts archives in earthquake safe buildings with fire protection, keeps documents in a safe, avoids brain injury as much as possible, etc.

On top of this, records have to be protected from their *internal* fluctuations. These internal fluctuations are due to the many components any recording device is made of. If the fluctuations were too large, they would make it impossible to distinguish between the possible contents of a memory. Now, fluctuations decrease with increasing size of a system, typically with the square root of the size. For example, if a hand writing is too small, it is difficult to read if the paper gets brittle; if the magnetic tracks on tapes are too small, they demagnetize and lose the stored information. In other words, a record is rendered stable against internal fluctuations by making it of sufficient size. Every record thus consists of many components and shows small fluctuations.

The importance of size can be expressed in another way: every system with memory, i.e., every system capable of producing a record, contains a *bath*. In summary, the statement that any observation is the production of a record can be expressed more precisely as:

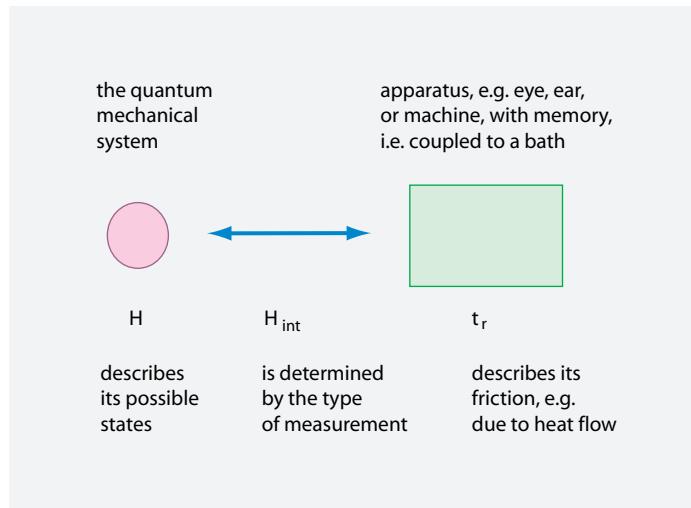
- ▷ Any observation of a system is the result of an interaction between that system and a bath in the recording apparatus.

By the way, since baths imply friction, we can also say: memory needs friction. In addition, any observation measuring a physical quantity uses an interaction *depending* on that same quantity. With these seemingly trivial remarks, we can describe in more detail

Vol. I, page 127

---

mentioned story of those physicists who built a machine that could predict the outcome of a roulette ball from the initial velocity imparted by the croupier.



**FIGURE 76** The concepts used in the description of measurements.

Ref. 120

the process of observation, or, as it is usually called in the quantum theory, the measurement process.

Any measurement *apparatus*, or *detector*, is characterized by two main aspects, shown in Figure 76: the interaction it has with the microscopic system, and the bath it contains to produce the record. Any description of the measurement process thus is the description of the evolution of the microscopic system *and* the detector; therefore one needs the Hamiltonian for the particle, the interaction Hamiltonian, and the bath properties (such as the relaxation time  $t_r$ ). The interaction specifies what is measured and the bath realizes the memory.

We know that only classical thermodynamic systems can be irreversible; quantum systems are not. We therefore conclude: a measurement system *must* be described classically: otherwise it would have no memory and would not be a measurement system: it would not produce a record! Memory is a classical effect. (More precisely, memory is an effect that only appears in the classical limit.) Nevertheless, let us see what happens if we describe the measurement system quantum mechanically.

Let us call  $A$  the observable which is measured in the experiment and its eigenfunctions  $\varphi_n$ . We describe the quantum mechanical system under observation – often a particle – by a state  $\psi$ . The full state of the system can always be written as

$$\psi = \psi_p \psi_{\text{other}} = \sum_n c_n \varphi_n \psi_{\text{other}}. \quad (81)$$

Here,  $\psi_p$  is the aspect of the (particle or system) state that we want to measure, and  $\psi_{\text{other}}$  represents all other degrees of freedom, i.e., those not described – *spanned*, in mathematical language – by the operator  $A$  corresponding to the observable we want to measure. The numbers  $c_n = |\varphi_n^\dagger \psi_p|$  give the expansion of the state  $\psi_p$ , which is taken to be normalized, in terms of the basis  $\varphi_n$ . For example, in a typical position measurement, the functions  $\varphi_n$  would be the position eigenfunctions and  $\psi_{\text{other}}$  would contain the information about the momentum, the spin and all other properties of the particle.

How does the system-detector interaction look like? Let us call the state of the apparatus before the measurement  $\chi_{\text{start}}$ . The measurement apparatus itself, by definition, is a device which, when it is hit by a particle in the state  $\varphi_n \psi_{\text{other}}$ , changes from the state  $\chi_{\text{start}}$  to the state  $\chi_n$ . One then says that the apparatus has *measured* the eigenvalue  $a_n$  corresponding to the eigenfunction  $\varphi_n$  of the operator  $A$ . The index  $n$  is thus the record of the measurement; it is called the *pointer* index or variable. This index tells us in which state the microscopic system was before the interaction. The important point, taken from our previous discussion, is that the states  $\chi_n$ , being records, are macroscopically distinct, precisely in the sense of the previous section. Otherwise they would not be records, and the interaction with the detector would not be a measurement.

Of course, during measurement, the apparatus sensitive to  $\varphi_n$  changes the part  $\psi_{\text{other}}$  of the particle state to some other situation  $\psi_{\text{other},n}$ , which depends on the measurement and on the apparatus; we do not need to specify it in the following discussion.\* But let us have an intermediate check of our reasoning. Do apparatuses as described here exist? Yes, they do. For example, any photographic plate is a detector for the position of ionizing particles. A plate, and in general any apparatus measuring position, does this by changing its momentum in a way depending on the measured position: the electron on a photographic plate is stopped. In this case,  $\chi_{\text{start}}$  is a white plate,  $\varphi_n$  would be a particle localized at spot  $n$ ,  $\chi_n$  is the function describing a plate blackened at spot  $n$  and  $\psi_{\text{other},n}$  describes the momentum and spin of the particle after it has hit the photographic plate at the spot  $n$ .

Now we are ready to look at the measurement process itself. For the moment, let us disregard the bath in the detector, and let us just describe it with a state as well, which we call  $\chi_{\text{start}}$ . In the time before the interaction between the particle and the detector, the combined system (including the detector) was in the initial state  $\psi_i$  given simply by

$$\psi_i = \psi_p \chi_{\text{start}} = \sum_n c_n \varphi_n \psi_{\text{other}} \chi_{\text{start}}, \quad (84)$$

where  $\psi_p$  is the (particle or system) state. After the interaction, using the just mentioned, experimentally known characteristics of the apparatus, the combined state  $\psi_a$  is

$$\psi_a = \sum_n c_n \varphi_n \psi_{\text{other},n} \chi_n. \quad (85)$$

This evolution from  $\psi_i$  to  $\psi_a$  follows from the evolution equation applied to the particle-detector combination. Now, the combined state  $\psi_a$  is a superposition of macroscopically

---

\* How does the interaction look like mathematically? From the description we just gave, we specified the final state for every initial state. Since the two density matrices are related by

$$\rho_f = T \rho_i T^\dagger \quad (82)$$

Challenge 135 ny

we can deduce the Hamiltonian from the matrix  $T$ . Are you able to see how?

By the way, one can say in general that an apparatus measuring an observable  $A$  has a system interaction Hamiltonian depending on the pointer variable  $A$ , and for which one has

$$[H + H_{\text{int}}, A] = 0. \quad (83)$$

distinct states: it is a superposition of distinct macroscopic states of the detector. In our example  $\psi_a$  could correspond to a superposition of one state where a spot on the left upper corner is blackened on an otherwise white plate with another state where a spot on the right lower corner of the otherwise white plate is blackened. Such a situation is never observed. Let us see why.

The density matrix  $\rho_a$  of the combined state  $\psi_a$  after the measurement given by

$$\rho_a = \psi_a \otimes \psi_a^\dagger = \sum_{n,m} c_n c_m^* (\varphi_n \psi_{\text{other},n} \chi_n) \otimes (\varphi_m \psi_{\text{other},m} \chi_m)^\dagger , \quad (86)$$

contains large non-diagonal terms, i.e., terms for  $n \neq m$ , whose numerical coefficients are different from zero. Now let us take the bath back in. From the previous section we know the effect of a bath on such a macroscopic superposition. We found that a density matrix such as  $\rho_a$  decoheres extremely rapidly. We assume here that the decoherence time is negligibly small.\* After decoherence, the off-diagonal terms vanish, and only the final, diagonal density matrix  $\rho_f$ , given by

$$\rho_f = \sum_n |c_n|^2 (\varphi_n \psi_{\text{other},n} \chi_n) \otimes (\varphi_n \psi_{\text{other},n} \chi_n)^\dagger \quad (87)$$

remains and has experimental relevance. As explained above, such a density matrix describes a mixed state, and the numbers  $P_n = |c_n|^2 = |\varphi_n^\dagger \psi_p|^2$  give the probability of measuring the value  $a_n$  and of finding the particle in the state  $\varphi_n \psi_{\text{other},n}$  as well as the detector in the state  $\chi_n$ . But this is precisely what the two properties of quantum measurements state.

We therefore find that describing a measurement as an evolution of a quantum system interacting with a macroscopic detector, itself containing a bath, we can *deduce* the two properties of quantum measurements, probabilistic outcomes and the collapse of the wave function, from the quantum mechanical evolution equation. The decoherence time  $t_d$  of the previous section becomes the time of collapse for the case of a measurement; in addition we find

$$t_{\text{collapse}} = t_d < t_r . \quad (88)$$

In other words, the collapse time is always smaller than the relaxation time of the bath. We thus have a formula for the time the wave function takes to collapse. All experimental measurements of the time of collapse have confirmed this result.  
Ref. 104

### WHY IS $\hbar$ NECESSARY FOR PROBABILITIES?

At first sight, one could argue that the two properties of quantum measurements do not contain  $\hbar$ , and thus are not consequences of quantum theory. However, this argument is incorrect.

---

\* Note however, that an *exactly* vanishing decoherence time, which would mean a *strictly* infinite number of degrees of freedom of the bath or the environment, is in contradiction with the evolution equation, and in particular with unitarity, locality and causality. It is essential in the whole argument not to confuse the logical consequences of a extremely small decoherence time with those of an exactly vanishing decoherence time.

Decoherence is a quantum process, because  $\hbar$  appears in the expression of the decoherence time. Since the collapse of the wave function is based on decoherence, it is a quantum process as well. Also probabilities are due to the quantum of action.

Page 87 In addition, we have seen that the concept of wave function appears only because the quantum of action  $\hbar$  is not zero. Wave functions, their collapse and probabilities are due to the quantum of change  $\hbar$ .

Challenge 136 e

Page 31 These results recall a statement made earlier on: probabilities appear whenever an experiment attempts to detect changes, i.e., action values, smaller than  $\hbar$ . Most puzzles around measurement are due to such attempts. However, nature does not allow such measurements; in every such attempt, probabilities appear.

### HIDDEN VARIABLES

A large number of people are not satisfied with the explanation of probabilities in the quantum world. They long for more mystery in quantum theory. They do not like the idea that probabilities are due to baths and to the quantum of action. The most famous prejudice such people cultivate is the idea that the probabilities are due to some hidden aspect of nature which is still unknown to humans. Such imagined, unknown aspects are called *hidden variables*.

The beautiful thing about quantum mechanics is that it allows both conceptual and experimental tests on whether such hidden variables exist – without the need of knowing them. Obviously, hidden variables controlling the evolution of microscopic system would contradict the statement that action values below  $\hbar$  cannot be detected. The smallest observable action value is the reason for the random behaviour of microscopic systems. The smallest action thus *excludes* hidden variables. But let us add some more detailed arguments.

Ref. 121 Historically, the first, somewhat abstract argument against hidden variables was given by John von Neumann.\* An additional no-go theorem for hidden variables was published by Kochen and Specker in 1967, and independently by John Bell in 1969. The theorem states:

- ▷ Non-contextual hidden variables are impossible, if the Hilbert space has a dimension equal or larger than three.

The theorem is about *non-contextual* variables, i.e., about hidden variables *inside* the quantum mechanical system. The Kochen–Specker theorem thus states that there is no non-contextual hidden variables model, because mathematics forbids it. This result essentially eliminates all possibilities for hidden variables, because usual quantum mechanical systems have Hilbert space dimensions larger than three.

---

\* János Neumann (b. 1903 Budapest, d. 1957 Washington DC) influential mathematician. One of the greatest and clearest scientific minds of the twentieth century, he settled many issues, especially in applied mathematics and quantum theory, that others still struggle with today. He then worked on the atomic and the hydrogen bomb, on ballistic missiles, and on general defence problems. For the bomb research, he strongly influenced the building of the earliest electronic computers, extending the ideas of Konrad Zuse. At the end of his life, he wanted to change the weather with nuclear bombs. He died of a cancer that was due to his exposure to nuclear radiation when watching bomb tests.

We cannot avoid noting that there are no restricting theorems about *contextual* hidden variables, i.e., variables in the environment and in particular, in the baths contained in it. Indeed, their necessity was shown above!

Also common sense eliminates hidden variables, without any recourse to mathematics, with a simple argument. If a quantum mechanical system had internal hidden variables, the measurement apparatus would have zillions of them.\* And this would mean that it could not work as a measurement system.

Despite all arguments, researchers have always been looking for experimental tests on hidden variables. Most tests are based on the famed *Bell's inequality*, a beautifully simple relation published by John Bell\*\* in the 1960s.

Can we distinguish quantum theory and locally realistic theories that use hidden variables? Bell's starting idea is to do so by measuring the polarizations of two correlated photons. Quantum theory says that the polarization of the photons is fixed only at the time it is measured, whereas local realistic models – the most straightforward type of hidden variable models – claim that the polarization is fixed already in advance by a hidden variable. As Bell found out, experiments can be used to decide which alternative is correct.

Imagine that the polarization is measured at two distant points *A* and *B*. Each observer can measure 1 or  $-1$  in each of his favourite direction. Let each observer choose two directions, 1 and 2, and call their results  $a_1, a_2, b_1$  and  $b_2$ . Since the measurement results all are either 1 or  $-1$ , the value of the specific expression  $(a_1 + a_2)b_1 + (a_2 - a_1)b_2$  has always the value  $\pm 2$ .

**Ref. 122** Imagine that you repeat the experiment many times, assuming that the hidden variables appear statistically. You then can deduce (a special case of) Bell's inequality for two *hidden variables*; it predicts that

$$|(a_1 b_1) + (a_2 b_1) + (a_2 b_2) - (a_1 b_2)| \leq 2 . \quad (89)$$

Challenge 137 e

Here, the expressions in brackets are the averages of the measurement products over a large number of samples. This hidden variable prediction holds independently of the directions of the involved polarizers.

On the other hand, for the case that the polarizers 1 and 2 at position *A* and the corresponding ones at position *B* are chosen with angles of  $\pi/4$ , *quantum theory* predicts that

$$|(a_1 b_1) + (a_2 b_1) + (a_2 b_2) - (a_1 b_2)| = 2\sqrt{2} > 2 . \quad (90)$$

This prediction is in complete contradiction with the hidden variable prediction.

Now, all experimental checks of Bell's inequality have confirmed standard quantum mechanics and falsified hidden variables. There are no exceptions.

**Ref. 123** Another measurable contradiction between quantum theory and locally realistic theories has been predicted by Greenberger, Horn and Zeilinger in systems with three entangled particles. Again, quantum theory has been confirmed in all experiments.

---

\* Which leads to the definition: one zillion is  $10^{23}$ .

\*\* John Stewart Bell (1928–1990), theoretical physicist who worked mainly on the foundations of quantum theory.

In summary, *hidden variables do not exist*. Of course, this is not really surprising. The search for hidden variables is based on a misunderstanding of quantum mechanics or on personal desires on how the world should be, instead of taking it as it is: there is a smallest measurable action value,  $\hbar$ , in nature.

#### SUMMARY ON PROBABILITIES AND DETERMINISM

“ Geometrica demonstramus quia facimus; si  
physica demonstrare possemus, faceremus.  
Giambattista Vico\*

We draw a number of conclusions which we need for the rest of our mountain ascent. Note that these conclusions, even though in agreement with all experiments, are not yet shared by all physicists! The whole topic is a problem for people who prefer ideology to facts.

In everyday life, probabilities often do not appear or are not noted. Quantum theory shows:

- ▷ Probabilities appear whenever a process tries to distinguish between situations that differ by about one quantum of action  $\hbar$ .
- ▷ The precise mechanism for the appearance of probabilities is due to the involved baths.

In short: probabilities appear whenever an experiment tries to distinguish between *close situations*. In more detail:

- Probabilities do not appear in measurements because the state of the quantum system is unknown or fuzzy, but because the detailed state of an interacting bath in the environment is unknown. Quantum mechanical probabilities are of statistical origin and are due to baths in the environment or in the measurement apparatus, in combination with the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . The probabilities are due to the large number of degrees of freedom contained in the bath. These large numbers make the outcome of experiments – especially those whose possible outcomes differ by about  $\hbar$  – unpredictable. If the state of the involved bath were known, the outcome of an experiment could be predicted. The probabilities of quantum theory are due to the quantum of action and are ‘thermodynamic’ in origin.

In other words, there are *no fundamental probabilities* in nature. All probabilities in nature are due to decoherence; in particular, all probabilities are due to the statistics of the many particles – some of which may even be virtual – that are part of the baths in the environment. Modifying well-known words by Albert Einstein, we can agree on the following: ‘nature does not play dice.’ Therefore we called  $\psi$  the *wave function* – instead of ‘probability amplitude’, as is often done. An even better term would be *state function*.

---

\* ‘We are able to demonstrate geometrical matters because we make them; if we could prove physical matters we would be able to make them.’ Giovanni Battista Vico (b. 1668 Napoli, d. 1744 Napoli) important philosopher and thinker. In this famous statement he points out a fundamental distinction between mathematics and physics.

Challenge 138 s

- Every observation in everyday life is a special case of decoherence. What is usually called the ‘collapse of the wave function’ is a decoherence process due to the interaction with the baths present in the environment or in the measuring apparatus. Because humans are warm-blooded and have memory, humans themselves are measurement apparatuses. The fact that our body temperature is 37°C is thus the reason that we see only a single world, and no superpositions. (Actually, there are many additional reasons; can you name a few?)
- Every measurement is complete when the microscopic system has interacted with the bath in the measuring apparatus. Quantum theory as a description of nature does not require detectors; the evolution equation describes all examples of motion. However, *measurements* do require the existence of detectors. A detector, or measurement apparatus, is a machine that records observations. Therefore, it has to include a bath, i.e., has to be a classical, macroscopic object. In this context one speaks also of a *classical apparatus*. This necessity of the measurement apparatus to be classical had been already stressed in the very early stages of quantum theory.
- All measurements, being decoherence processes that involve interactions with baths, are irreversible processes and increase entropy.
- Every measurement, like every example of decoherence, is a special case of quantum mechanical evolution, namely the evolution for the combination of a quantum system, a macroscopic detector and a bath. Since the evolution equation is relativistically invariant, no causality problems appear in measurements; neither do locality problems or logical problems appear.
- Since both the evolution equation and the measurement process do not involve quantities other than space-time, Hamiltonians, baths and wave-functions, no other quantity plays a role in measurement. In particular, no human observer nor any consciousness is involved or necessary. Every measurement is complete when the microscopic system has interacted with the bath in the apparatus. The decoherence inherent in every measurement takes place even if nobody is looking. This trivial consequence is in agreement with the observations of everyday life, for example with the fact that the Moon is orbiting the Earth even if nobody looks at it.\* Similarly, a tree falling in the middle of a forest makes noise even if nobody listens. Decoherence is independent of human observation, of the human mind and of human existence.
- In every measurement the quantum system interacts with the detector. Since there is a minimum value for the magnitude of action, every *observation influences the observed*. Therefore every measurement *disturbs* the quantum system. Any precise description of observations must also include the description of this disturbance. In the present section the disturbance was modelled by the change of the state of the system from  $\psi_{\text{other}}$  to  $\psi_{\text{other},n}$ . Without such a change of state, without a disturbance of the quantum system, a measurement is impossible.
- Since the complete measurement process is described by quantum mechanics, unitarity is and remains the basic property of evolution. There are no non-unitary processes in quantum mechanics.
- The description of the collapse of the wave function as a decoherence process is an

Vol. III, page 339

---

\* The opposite view is sometimes falsely attributed to Niels Bohr. The Moon is obviously in contact with many radiation baths. Can you list a few?

Challenge 139 s

Vol. III, page 334

explanation exactly in the sense in which the term ‘explanation’ was defined earlier on; it describes the relation between an observation and all the other aspects of reality, in this case the bath in the detector or the environment. The collapse of the wave function has been measured, calculated and *explained*. The collapse is not a question of ‘interpretation’, i.e., of opinion, as unfortunately often is suggested.\*

- It is not useful to speculate whether the evolution for a *single* quantum measurement could be determined if the state of the environment around the system were known. Measurements need baths. But a bath is, to an excellent approximation, irreversible and thus cannot be described by a wave function, which behaves reversibly.\*\*

In short:

- ▷ Quantum mechanics is deterministic.
- ▷ Baths are probabilistic.
- ▷ Baths are probabilistic because of the quantum of action.

Page 143

In summary, there is *no* irrationality in quantum theory. Whoever uses quantum theory as argument for superstitions, irrational behaviour, new age beliefs or ideologies is guilty of disinformation. The statement by Gell-Mann at the beginning of this chapter is such an example. Another is the following well-known, but incorrect statement by Richard Feynman:

Ref. 125

... nobody understands quantum mechanics.

Nobel Prizes obviously do not prevent views distorted by ideology. The correct statement is:

- ▷ The quantum of action and decoherence are the key to understanding quantum theory.

In fact,  $\hbar$  and decoherence allow clarifying many other issues. We explore a few interesting ones.

#### WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN SPACE AND TIME?

Space and time differ. Objects are localized in space but not in time. Why is this the case? In nature, most bath–system interactions are mediated by a potential. All potentials are by definition position dependent. Therefore, every potential, being a function of the position  $x$ , commutes with the position observable (and thus with the interaction Hamiltonian). The decoherence induced by baths – except if special care is taken – thus first of all destroys the non-diagonal elements for every superposition of states centred

Ref. 124

---

\* This implies that the so-called ‘many worlds’ interpretation is wishful thinking. The conclusion is confirmed when studying the details of this religious approach. It is a belief system, not based on facts.

\*\* This very strong type of determinism will be very much challenged in the last part of this text, in which it will be shown that time is not a fundamental concept, and therefore that the debate around determinism looses most of its interest.

at different locations. In short, *objects are localized because they interact with baths via potentials.*

For the same reason, objects also have only one spatial orientation at a time. If the system–bath interaction is spin-dependent, the bath leads to ‘localization’ in the spin variable. This occurs for all microscopic systems interacting with magnets. As a result, macroscopic superpositions of magnetization are almost never observed. Since electrons, protons and neutrons have a magnetic moment and a spin, this conclusion can even be extended: everyday objects are never seen in superpositions of different rotation states because their interactions with baths are spin-dependent.

As a counter-example, most systems are not localized in time, but on the contrary exist for very long times, because practically all system–bath interactions do *not* commute with time. In fact, this is the way a bath is defined to begin with. In short, *objects are permanent because they interact with baths.*

Are you able to find an interaction which is momentum-dependent instead of position-dependent? What is the consequence for macroscopic systems?

In other words, in contrast to general relativity, quantum theory produces a distinction between space and time. In fact, we can *define* position as the observable that commutes with interaction Hamiltonians. This distinction between space and time is due to the properties of matter and its interactions. We could not have deduced this distinction in general relativity.

### ARE WE GOOD OBSERVERS?

Are humans classical apparatuses? Yes, they are. Even though several prominent physicists claim that free will and probabilities are related, a detailed investigation shows that this is not the case. Our senses are classical machines because they obey their definition: Ref. 126 human senses record observations by interaction with a bath. Our brain is also a classical apparatus: the neurons are embedded in baths. Quantum probabilities do *not* play a determining role in the brain.

Challenge 141 e  
Vol. VI, page 83

Any observing entity, be it a machine or a human being, needs a bath and a memory to record its observations. This means that observers have to be made of matter; an observer cannot be made of radiation. Our description of nature is thus severely biased: we describe it from the standpoint of matter. That is a bit like describing the stars by putting the Earth at the centre of the universe: we always put matter at the centre of our description. Can we eliminate this basic anthropomorphism? We will find out as we continue our adventure.

### WHAT RELATES INFORMATION THEORY, CRYPTOLOGY AND QUANTUM THEORY?

Physics means talking about observations of nature. Like any observation, also measurements produce information. It is thus possible to translate much (but not all) of quantum theory into the language of information theory. In particular, the existence of a smallest change value in nature implies that the information about a physical system can never be complete, that information transport has its limits and that information can never be fully trusted. The details of these studies form a fascinating way to look at the microscopic world.

The analogy between quantum theory and information theory becomes even more interesting when the statements are translated into the language of cryptology. Cryptology is the science of transmitting hidden messages that only the intended receiver can decrypt. In our modern times of constant surveillance, cryptology is an important tool to protect personal freedom.\*

The quantum of action implies that messages can be sent in an (almost) safe way. Listening to a message is a measurement process. Since there is a smallest action  $\hbar$ , we can detect whether somebody has tried to listen to a message that we sent. To avoid a man-in-the-middle attack – somebody who pretends to be the receiver and then sends a copy of the message to the real, intended receiver – we can use *entangled* systems as signals or messages to transmit the information. If the entanglement is destroyed, somebody has listened to the message. Usually, quantum cryptologists use communication systems based on entangled photons.

The major issue of *quantum cryptology*, a large modern research field, is the key distribution problem. All secure communication is based on a secret key that is used to decrypt the message. Even if the communication channel is of the highest security – like entangled photons – one still has to find a way to send the communication partner the secret key necessary for the decryption of the messages. Finding such methods is the main aspect of quantum cryptology. However, close investigation shows that all key exchange methods are limited in their security.

In short, due to the quantum of action, nature provides limits on the possibility of sending encrypted messages. The statement of these limits is (almost) equivalent to the statement that change in nature is limited by the quantum of action.

### IS THE UNIVERSE A COMPUTER?

Vol. VI, page 109

The quantum of action provides a limit to secure information exchange. This connection allows us to brush aside several incorrect statements often found in the media. Stating that ‘the universe is information’ or that ‘the universe is a computer’ is as reasonable as saying that the universe is an observation or a chewing-gum dispenser. Any expert of motion should beware of these and similarly fishy statements; people who use them either deceive themselves or try to deceive others.

### DOES THE UNIVERSE HAVE A WAVE FUNCTION? AND INITIAL CONDITIONS?

The wave function of the universe is frequently invoked in discussions about quantum theory. Various conclusions are deduced from this idea, for example on the irreversibility of time, on the importance of initial conditions, on changes required to quantum theory and much more. Are these arguments correct?

Vol. II, page 223

The first thing to clarify is the meaning of ‘universe’. As explained already, the term can have two meanings: either the collection of all matter and radiation, or this collection *plus* all of space-time. Let us also recall the meaning of ‘wave function’: it describes the

---

\* Cryptology consists of the field of *cryptography*, the art of coding messages, and the field of *cryptoanalysis*, the art of deciphering encrypted messages. For a good introduction to cryptology, see the text by ALBRECHT BEUTELSPACHER, JÖRG SCHWENK & KLAUS-DIETER WOLFENSTÄTTER, *Moderne Verfahren der Kryptographie*, Vieweg 1995.

*state* of a system. The state distinguishes two otherwise identical systems; for example, position and velocity distinguish two otherwise identical ivory balls on a billiard table. Alternatively and equivalently, the state describes changes in time.

Vol. I, page 27

Does the universe have a state? If we take the wider meaning of universe, it does not. Talking about the state of the universe is a contradiction: by definition, the concept of state, defined as the non-permanent aspects of an object, is applicable only to *parts* of the universe.

We then can take the narrower sense of ‘universe’ – the sum of all matter and radiation only – and ask the question again. To determine the state of all matter and radiation, we need a possibility to measure it: we need an environment. But the environment of matter and radiation is space-time only; initial conditions cannot be determined since we need measurements to do this, and thus an apparatus. An apparatus is a material system with a bath attached to it; however, there is no such system outside the universe.

In short, quantum theory does not allow for measurements of the universe.

▷ The universe has no state.

Beware of anybody who claims to know something about the wave function of the universe. Just ask him Wheeler’s question: If you know the wave function of the universe, why aren’t you rich?

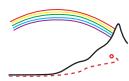
Ref. 128

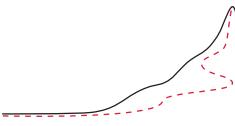
Despite this conclusion, several famous physicists have proposed evolution equations for the wave function of the universe. (The best-known is, ironically, the Wheeler-DeWitt equation.) It seems a silly point, but not one prediction of these equations has been compared to experiment; the arguments just given even make this impossible in principle. Exploring such equations, so interesting it may seem at first sight, must therefore be avoided if we want to complete our adventure and avoid getting lost in false beliefs.

There are many additional twists to this story. One is that space-time itself, even without matter, might be a bath. This speculation will be shown to be correct in the last volume of this adventure. The result seems to allow speaking of the wave function of the universe. But then again, it turns out that time is *undefined* at the scales where space-time is an effective bath; this again implies that the concept of state is not applicable there.

A lack of ‘state’ for the universe is a strong statement. It also implies a lack of initial conditions! The arguments are precisely the same. This is a tough result. We are so used to think that the universe has initial conditions that we never question the term. (Even in this text the mistake might appear every now and then.) But there are no initial conditions for the universe.

We can retain as summary, valid even in the light of the latest research: The universe is *not* a system, has *no* wave function and *no* initial conditions – independently of what is meant by ‘universe’.





## CHAPTER 8

# COLOURS AND OTHER INTERACTIONS BETWEEN LIGHT AND MATTER

“Rem tene; verba sequentur.”\*

Cato

**S**tones and all other objects have colours. Why? In other words, what is the specific way in which charged quantum particles that are found inside stones and inside all other objects interact with electromagnetic fields? In this chapter, we first give an overview of the various ways that colours in nature result from the quantum of action, i.e., from the interaction between matter quantons and photons. Then we explore the simplest such system: we show how the quantum of action leads to the various colours produced by hydrogen atoms. After this, we discover that the interaction between matter and radiation leads to other surprising effects, especially when special relativity is taken into account.

### THE CAUSES OF COLOUR

Quantum theory explains all colours in nature. Indeed, all the colours that we observe are due to electrically *charged* particles. More precisely, colours are due to the interactions of charged particles with photons. All colours are thus quantum effects.

So far, we have explored the motion of quantons that are described by mass only. Now we study the motion of particles that are electrically charged. The charged particles at the basis of most colours are electrons and nuclei, including their composites, from ions, atoms and molecules to fluids and solids. Many colour issues are still topic of research. For example, until recently it was unclear why exactly asphalt is black. The exact structure of the chemical compounds, the *asphaltenes*, that produce the very dark brown colour was unknown. Only recent research has settled this question. In fact, the development of new colourants and colour effects is an important part of modern industry.

Ref. 130  
Ref. 129  
Challenge 142 s

An overview of the specific mechanisms that generate colour is given in the following table. The table includes all colours that appear in everyday life. (Can you find one that is missing?)

\*\* ‘Know the subject and the words will follow.’ Marcus Porcius Cato, (234–149 BCE) or Cato the elder, Roman politician famous for his speeches and his integrity.

TABLE 7 Causes of colour.

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
<b>Class I: Colours due to simple excitations</b>		
	1. Incandescence and free charge radiation	Colours are due to continuous spectrum emitted by all hot matter; colour sequence, given by Wien's rule, is black, red, orange, yellow, white, blue-white (molten lead and silver © Graela)
	Carbon arc lamp, hot steel, lightbulb wire, most stars, magma, lava, hot melts	Wood and wax flames are yellow due to incandescence if carbon-rich and oxygen-poor
	Wood fire, candle	Due to metals burning to oxide at high temperature, such as magnesium, zinc, iron, aluminium or zirconium (sparkler © Sarah Domingos)
	White fireworks, flashlight, sparklers	Due to fast free charges: Vavilov–Čerenkov radiation is due to speed of particle larger than the speed of light in matter, Bremsstrahlung is due to the deceleration of charged particles (nuclear reactor core under water, courtesy NASA)
	2. Atomic gas excitations	Colours are due to transitions between atomic energy levels (gas discharges © Pslawinski)
	Red neon lamp, blue argon lamp, UV mercury lamp, yellow sodium street lamps, most gas lasers, metal vapour lasers, some fluorescence	In air, blue and red colours are due to atomic and molecular energy levels of nitrogen, whereas green, yellow, orange colours are due to oxygen (aurora © Jan Curtis)
	Aurora, triboluminescence in scotch tape, crystalloluminescence in strontium bromate	Colour lines are due to energy levels of highly excited atoms (flames of K, Cu, Cs, B, Ca © Philip Evans)
Potassium      Copper      Cesium      Boron      Calcium	Lightning, arcs, sparks, coloured fireworks, most coloured flames, some electroluminescence	

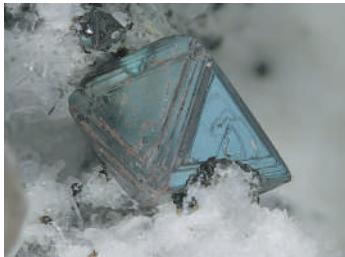
**TABLE 7** Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
	<b>3. Vibrations and rotations of molecules</b> 	Bluish water, blue ice when clear, violet iodine, red-brown bromine, yellow-green chlorine, red flames from CN or blue-green flames from CH, some gas lasers, blue ozone leading to blue and grey evening sky Colours are due to quantized levels of rotation and vibrations in molecules (blue iceberg © Marc Shandro)
	<b>4. Transition metal compounds</b> 	Green malachite $\text{Cu}_2\text{CO}_3(\text{OH})_2$ , blue cobalt oxide, blue azurite $\text{Cu}_3(\text{CO}_3)_2(\text{OH})_2$ , red to brown hematite $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ , green $\text{MnO}$ , white $\text{Mn}(\text{OH})_2$ , brown manganite, chrome green $\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3$ , green praesodymium, pink europium and yellow samarium compounds, piezochromic and thermochromic $\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3 - \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ UV and electron phosphors, scintillation, some fluorescence, some lasers Colours are due to electronic states of the ions; phosphors are used in cathodes tubes for TV/computer displays and on fluorescent lamp tubes (green malachite on yellow kasolite, a uranium mineral, picture width 5 mm, found in Kolwezi, Zaire/Congo, © Stephan Wolfsried, television shadow mask photo © Planemad)
	<b>5. Transition metal impurities</b> 	Ruby, emerald, alexandrite, perovskites, corresponding lasers Electronic states of transition metal ions are excited by light and thus absorb specific wavelengths (ruby on calcite from Mogok, Myanmar, picture width 3 cm, © Rob Lavinsky)

**TABLE 7** Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
<b>Class III: Colours due to molecular orbitals</b>		
		<b>6. Organic compounds</b> Red haemoglobin in blood, blue blood haemocyanin, green chlorophyll in plants, yellow or orange carotenes in carrots, flowers and yellow autumn leaves, red or purple anthocyanins in berries, flowers and red autumn leaves, blue indigo, red lycopene in tomatoes, red meat from iron-containing myoglobin, brown glucosamine in crust of baked food, brown tannins, black eumelanin in human skin, hair and eye, iron-rich variation pheomelanin in redheads, black melanin also in cut apples and bananas as well as in movable sacks in chameleons, brown-black asphalt, some fluorescence, chemiluminescence, phosphorescence, halochromism, electrochromism and thermochromism, dye lasers
		Colours are due to conjugated $\pi$ -bonds, i.e. to alternating single and double bonds in molecules; floral pigments are almost all anthocyanins, betalains or carotenes; used in colourants for foods and cosmetics, in textile dyes, in electrochromic displays, in inks for colour printers, in photosensitizers (narcissus © Thomas Lüthi, blood on finger © Ian Humes, berries © Nathan Wall, hair courtesy dusdin)
		
		
		Glow-worms, some bacteria and fungi, most deep-sea fish, octopi, jellyfish, and other deep-sea animals Bioluminescence is due to excited molecules, generally called <i>luciferines</i> (angler fish, length 4.5 cm, © Steve Haddock)

**TABLE 7** Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
	<b>7. Inorganic charge transfer</b> Blue sapphire, blue lapis lazuli, green amazonite, brown-black magnetite $\text{Fe}_3\text{O}_4$ and most other iron minerals (colouring basalt black, beer bottles brown, quartz sand yellow, and many other rocks with brown or red tones), black graphite, purple permanganate, orange potassium dichromate, yellow molybdates, red hematite $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ , some fluorescence	Light induces change of position of an electron from one atom to another; for example, in blue sapphire the transition is between Ti and Fe impurities; many paint pigments use charge transfer colours; fluorescent analytical reagents are used in molecular medicine and biology (magnetite found in Laach, Germany, picture width 10 mm, © Stephan Wolfsried, sand desert Evelien Willemse)
		
	<b>8. Metallic bands</b> Gold (green in transmission), pyrite, iron, brass, alloys, silver, copper, ruby glass	Colours in reflection and in transmission are due to transitions of electrons between overlapping bands (saxophone © Selmer)
		
	<b>9. Pure semiconductor bands</b> Silicon, GaAs, black galena $\text{PbS}$ , red cinnabar $\text{HgS}$ , cadmium yellow $\text{CdS}$ , black $\text{CdSe}$ , red $\text{CdS}_x\text{Se}_{1-x}$ , white $\text{ZnO}$ , orange vermillion $\text{HgS}$ , colourless diamond, black to gold piezochromic $\text{SmS}$	Colours are due to electron transitions between separate bands; colour series is black, red, orange, yellow, white/colourless; some used as pigments (zinc oxide courtesy Walkerma)
	<b>10. Doped semiconductor bands</b> Blue, yellow, green and black diamond; LEDs; semiconductor lasers; solar cells; $\text{ZnS}$ and $\text{Zn}_x\text{Cd}_{1-x}\text{S}$ based and other phosphors	Colours are due to transitions between dopants and semiconductor bands (e.g. blue diamond: boron acceptors, black diamond: nitrogen donors) (quantum dots © Andrey Rogach)

**TABLE 7** Causes of colour (continued).

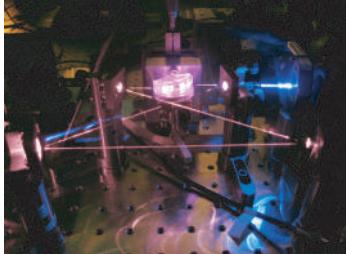
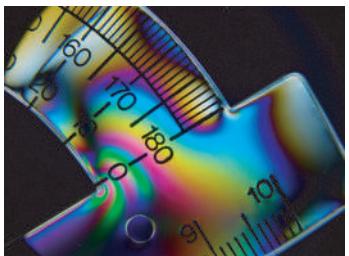
COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
	<b>11. Colour centres</b>  Amethyst, smoky quartz, fluorite, green diamonds, blue, yellow and brown topaz, brown salt, purple colour of irradiated glass containing $Mn^{2+}$ , luminescence, some fluorescence, F-centre lasers Some light-dependent sunglasses	Colours are due to colour centres, i.e. to electrons or to holes bound at crystal vacancies; colour centres are usually created by radiation (amethyst © Rob Lavinsky)

**Class V: Colours due to physical and geometrical optics**

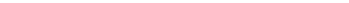
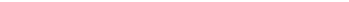
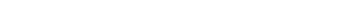
	12. Dispersive refraction and polarization	
	Cut diamond, cut zirconia, halos and sun dogs formed by ice crystals in the air	Spectral decomposition (sparkle or ‘fire’ of gemstones) is due to dispersion in crystals (zirconia photo © Gregory Phillips)
	Rainbow	Colours of primary and secondary bow are due to dispersion in water droplets
	Green flash	dispersion in the atmosphere shifts the sun colours

	13. Scattering	
	Blue sky, blue colouring of distant mountains, red sunset; colour intensification by pollution; blue quartz	Blue light is scattered more than red light by Rayleigh scattering, when scatterers (molecules, dust) are smaller than the wavelength of light (Tokyo sunset © Altus Plunkett, blue quartz © David Lynch)

TABLE 7 Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
	White colour of hair, milk, beer foam, clouds, fog, cigarette smoke coming out of lungs, snow, whipped cream, shampoo, stars in gemstones	The white colour is due to wavelength-independent Mie scattering, i.e. scattering at particles larger than the wavelength of light (snow man © Andreas Kostner)
	Blue human skin colour in cold weather, blue and green eyes in humans, blue monkey skin, blue turkey necks, most blue fish, blue reptiles, blue cigarette smoke	Tyndall blue colours are due to scattering on small particles in front of a dark background (blue poison frog <i>Dendrobates azureus</i> © Lee Hancock)
	Ruby glass	The red colour of Murano glass is due to scattering by tiny colloidal gold particles included in the glass in combination with the metallic band structure of gold (ruby glass © murano-glass-shop.it)
	Nonlinearities, Raman effect, potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KDP)	Frequency-shifting scattering, second harmonic generation and other nonlinearities of certain materials change the colour of light impinging with high intensities (800 nm to 400 nm frequency doubling ring laser © Jeff Sherman)
	14. Interference (without diffraction) Nacre, oil films, soap bubbles, coatings on camera lenses, eyes of cats in the dark, wings of flies and dragonflies, fish scales, some snakes, pearls, tempering colours of steel	Thin film interference produces a standard colour sequence that allows precise thickness determination (abalone shell © Anne Elliot)
	Polarization colours of thin layers of birefringent crystals or thicker layers of stressed polymers	Colours are due to interference, as shown by the dependence on layer thickness (photoelasticity courtesy Nevit Dilmen)

**TABLE 7** Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
	Supernumerary rainbows (see page 102 in volume III)	Due to interference, as shown by the dependence on drop size
	Iridescent beetles, butterflies and bird feathers, iridescent colours on banknotes and on cars	Due to scattering at small structures or at nanoparticles, as shown by the angular dependence of the colour (mallard duck © Simon Griffith)
	15. Diffraction (with interference)	<b>15. Diffraction (with interference)</b>
	Opal	Colours are due to the tiny spheres included in the water inside the opal; colours can change if the opal dries out (polished Brazilian opal © Opalsnopals)
	Aureole, glory, corona	Colours are due to diffraction at the tiny mist droplets (aeroplane condensation cloud iridescence © Franz Kerschbaum)
	Diffraction gratings, CDs, vinyl records, some beetles and snakes	Colours are due to diffraction and interference at tiny, regular pits (CD illuminated by flashlamp © Alfons Reichert)
	Photonic crystals	A modern research topic
	Cholesteric liquid crystals, certain beetles	Colours are due to diffraction and interference in internal material layers (liquid crystal colours © Ingo Dierking)

**Class VI: Colours due to eye limitations**

Fechner colours, as on <a href="http://lite.bu.edu/vision/applets/Color/Benham/Benham.html">lite.bu.edu/vision/applets/Color/Benham/Benham.html</a>	Benham's wheel or top	Colours are due to different speed response of different photoreceptors
---	-----------------------	---

TABLE 7 Causes of colour (continued).

COLOUR TYPE	EXAMPLE	DETAILS
Internal colour production when eyes are stimulated	Phosphenes	Occur through pressure (rubbing, sneeze), or with electric or magnetic fields
Polarization colours	Haidinger's brush	See page 113 in volume III
Colour illusions, as on <a href="http://www.psy.ritsumei.ac.jp/~akitaoka/color9e.html">www.psy.ritsumei.ac.jp/~akitaoka/color9e.html</a>	Appearing and disappearing colours	Effects are due to combinations of brain processing and eye limitations
False colour output of eye, as described on page 196 in volume III	Red light can be seen as green	Observable with adaptive optics, if red light is focused on a green-sensitive cone
Colour-blind or 'daltonic' person, see page 209 in volume III, with reduced colour spectrum	Protan, deutan or tritan	Each type limits colour perception in a different way

Colours fascinate. Fascination always also means business; indeed, a large part of the chemical industry is dedicated to synthesizing colourants for paints, inks, clothes, food and cosmetics. Also evolution uses the fascination of colours for its own business, namely propagating life. The specialists in this domain are the flowering plants. The chemistry of colour production in plants is extremely involved and at least as interesting as the production of colours in factories. Practically all flower colourants, from white, yellow, orange, red to blue, are from three chemical classes: the *carotenoids*, the *anthocyanins* (flavonoids) and the *betalains*. These colourants are stored in petals inside dedicated containers, the *vacuoles*. There are many good review articles providing the details.

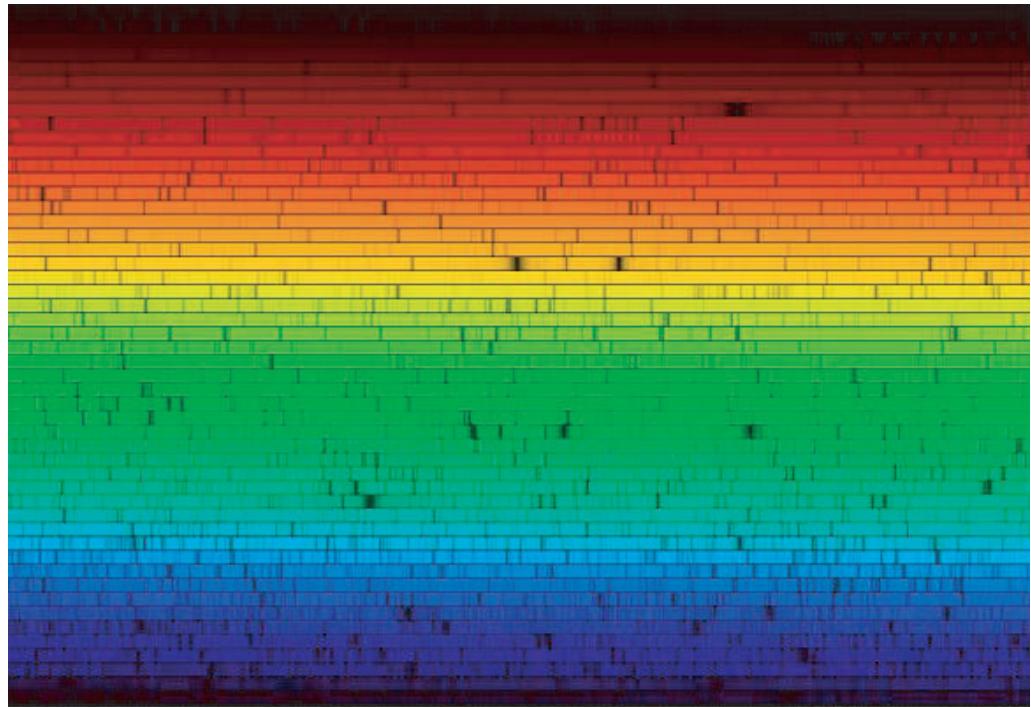
Ref. 131

Even though colours are common in plants and animals, most higher animals do not produce many colourants themselves. For example, humans produce only one colourant: *melanin*. (*Hemoglobin*, which colours blood red, is not a dedicated colourant, but transports the oxygen from the lungs through the body. Also the pink *myoglobin* in the muscles is not a dedicated colourant.) Many higher animals, such as birds, need to *eat* the colourants that are so characteristic for their appearance. The yellow colour of legs of pigeons is an example. It has been shown that the connection between colour and nutrition is regularly used by potential mates to judge from the body colours whether a proposing partner is sufficiently healthy, and thus sufficiently attractive.

Ref. 132

Above all, the previous table distinguished six main classes among the causes of colours. The study of the first class, the colours of incandescence, led Max Planck to discover the quantum of action. In the meantime, research has confirmed that in each class, all colours are due to the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . The relation between the quantum of action and the material properties of atoms, molecules, liquids and solids are so well known that colourants can now be designed on the computer.

In summary, an exploration of the causes of colours found in nature confirms that all colours are due to quantum effects. We show this by exploring the simplest example: the colours of atomic gas excitations.



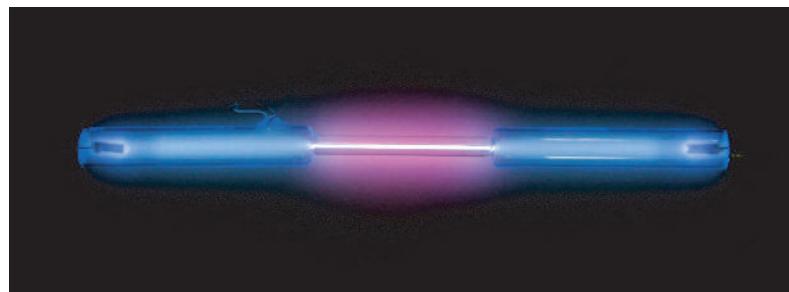
**FIGURE 77** The spectrum of daylight: a stacked image of an extended rainbow, showing its Fraunhofer lines (© Nigel Sharp, NOAO, FTS, NSO, KPNO, AURA, NSF).

### USING THE RAINBOW TO DETERMINE WHAT STARS ARE MADE OF

Near the beginning of the eighteenth century, Bavarian instrument-maker Joseph Fraunhofer\* and the English physicist William Wollaston noted that the rainbow *lacks* certain colours. These colours appear as black lines when the rainbow is spread out in sufficient breadth. Figure 77 shows the lines in detail; they are called *Fraunhofer lines* today. In 1860, Gustav Kirchhoff and Robert Bunsen showed that the colours *missing* in the rainbow were exactly those colours that certain elements *emit* when heated. In this way they managed to show that sodium, calcium, barium, nickel, magnesium, zinc, copper and iron are present in the Sun. Looking at the rainbow thus tells us what the Sun is made of.

---

\* Joseph Fraunhofer (b. 1787 Straubing, d. 1826 Munich), having been orphaned at the age of 11, learned lens-polishing. He taught himself optics from books. He entered an optical company at the age of 19, ensuring the success of the business by producing the best available lenses, telescopes, micrometers, optical gratings and optical systems of his time. He invented the spectroscope and the heliometer. He discovered and counted 476 lines in the spectrum of the Sun; these lines are now named after him. (Today, Fraunhofer lines are still used as measurement standards: the second and the metre are defined in terms of them.) Physicists from all over the world would buy their equipment from him, visit him, and ask for copies of his publications. Even after his death, his instruments remained unsurpassed for generations. With his telescopes, in 1837 Bessel was able to make the first measurement of parallax of a star, and in 1846 Johann Gottfried Galle discovered Neptune. Fraunhofer became a professor in 1819. He died young, from the consequences of the years spent working with lead and glass powder.



**FIGURE 78** A low-pressure hydrogen discharge in a 20 cm long glass tube (© Jürgen Bauer at [www.smart-elements.com](http://www.smart-elements.com)).

Of the 476 Fraunhofer lines that Kirchhoff and Bunsen observed, 13 did not correspond to any known element. In 1868, Jules Janssen and Joseph Lockyer independently predicted that these unknown lines were from an unknown element. The element was eventually found on Earth, in an uranium mineral called cleveite, in 1895. The new element was called *helium*, from the Greek word ἥλιος ‘helios’ – Sun.

In 1925, using an equation developed by Saha and Langmuir, the young physicist Cecilia Payne (b. 1900 Wendover, England, d. 1979 Cambridge, Massachusetts) taught the world how to deduce the mass percentage of each element from the light spectrum of a star. She did so in her brilliant PhD thesis. Above all, she found that hydrogen and helium were the two most abundant elements in the Sun, in stars, and thus in the whole universe. This went completely against the ideas of the time, but is now common knowledge. Payne had completed the study of physics in Cambridge, UK, but had not received a degree there because she was a woman. So she left for the United States, where the situation was somewhat better, and where she worked on her PhD thesis; eventually, she became professor at Harvard University, and later head of its astronomy department. Above all, Payne became an important role model for many female scientists.

Despite being the second most common element in the universe, helium is rare on Earth because it is a light noble gas that does not form chemical compounds. Helium atoms on Earth thus rise in the atmosphere and finally escape into space.

Understanding the colour lines produced by each element had started to become interesting already before the discovery of helium; but afterwards the interest increased further, thanks to the increasing number of applications of colour knowledge in chemistry, physics, technology, crystallography, biology and lasers. Colours are big business, as the fashion industry, the media and the advertising business show.

Vol. III, page 125

In summary, colours are specific mixtures of light frequencies. Light is an electromagnetic wave and is emitted by moving charges. For a physicist, colours thus result from the interaction of charged matter with the electromagnetic field. Now, *sharp* colour lines cannot be explained by classical electrodynamics. We need quantum theory to explain them.

#### WHAT DETERMINES THE COLOURS OF ATOMS?

The simplest colours to study are the sharp colour lines emitted or absorbed by single atoms. Single atoms are found in gases. The simplest atom to study is that of hydrogen. As shown in Figure 78, hot hydrogen gas emits light. The light consists of a handful of

sharp spectral lines that are shown on the left of [Figure 79](#). Already in 1885, the Swiss schoolteacher Johann Balmer (1828–1898) had discovered that the wavelengths of visible hydrogen lines obey the formula:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda_m} = R \left( \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{m^2} \right) \quad \text{for } m = 3, 4, 5, \dots . \quad (91)$$

Careful measurements, which included the hydrogen's spectral lines in the infrared and in the ultraviolet, allowed Johannes Rydberg (1854–1919) to generalize this formula to:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda_{mn}} = R \left( \frac{1}{n^2} - \frac{1}{m^2} \right) , \quad (92)$$

where  $n$  and  $m > n$  are positive integers, and the so-called *Rydberg constant*  $R$  has the value  $10.97 \mu\text{m}^{-1}$ ; easier to remember, the inverse value is  $1/R = 91.16 \text{ nm}$ . All the colour lines emitted by hydrogen satisfy this simple formula. Classical physics cannot explain this result at all. Thus, quantum theory has a clearly defined challenge here: to explain the formula and the value of  $R$ .

Incidentally, the transition  $\lambda_{21}$  for hydrogen is called the *Lyman-alpha line*. Its wavelength,  $121.6 \text{ nm}$ , lies in the ultraviolet. It is easily observed with telescopes, since most of the visible stars consist of excited hydrogen. The Lyman-alpha line is routinely used to determine the speed of distant stars or galaxies, since the *Doppler effect* changes the wavelength when the speed is large. The record in 2004 was a galaxy with a Lyman-alpha line shifted to  $1337 \text{ nm}$ . Can you calculate the speed with which it is moving away from the Earth?

[Ref. 133](#)

[Challenge 143 s](#)

[Challenge 144 e](#)

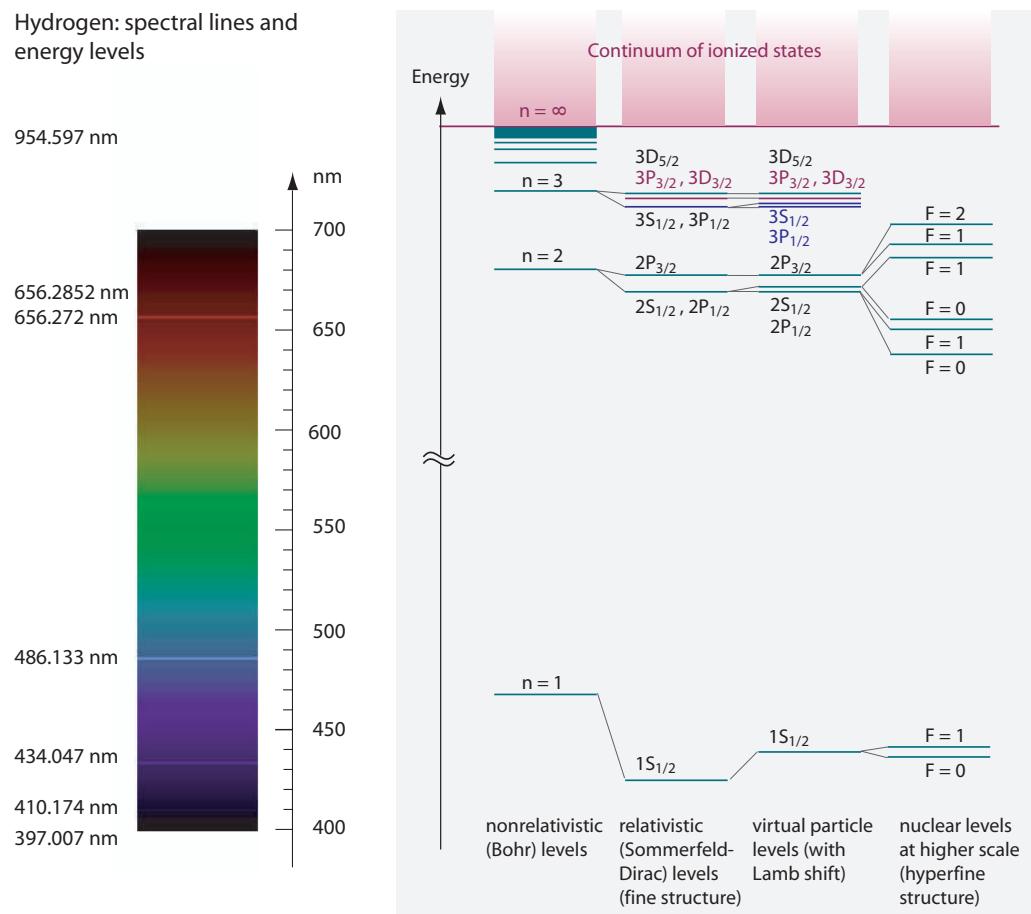
[Page 81](#)

[Challenge 145 e](#)

From the start, it was clear that the colours of hydrogen are due to the motion of its electron. (Why?) The first way to deduce Balmer's formula from the quantum of action was found by Niels Bohr in 1903. Bohr understood that in contrast to planets circling the Sun, the electron moving around the proton has only a discrete number of possible motion states: the angular momentum of the electron is quantized. Assuming that the angular momentum of the electron is an integer multiple of  $\hbar$  directly yields Balmer's formula and explains the numerical value of the Rydberg constant  $R$ . This calculation is so famous that it is found in many secondary school books. The result also strengthened Bohr's decision to dedicate his life to the exploration of the structure of the atom.

Twenty years time later, in 1926, Erwin Schrödinger solved his equation of motion for an electron moving in the electrostatic potential  $V(r) = e^2/4\pi\epsilon_0 r$  of a point-like proton. By doing so, Schrödinger reproduced Bohr's result, deduced Balmer's formula and became famous in the world of physics. However, this important calculation is long and complex. It can be simplified.

In order to understand hydrogen colours, it is not necessary to solve an equation of motion for the electron; it is sufficient to compare the energies of the initial and final states of the electron. This can be done most easily by noting that a specific form of the action must be a multiple of  $\hbar/2$ . This approach, a generalization of Bohr's explanation, was developed by Einstein, Brillouin and Keller, and is now named EBK quantization. It



**FIGURE 79** Atomic hydrogen: the visible spectrum of hydrogen (NASA) and its calculated energy levels, in four approximations of increasing precision. Can you associate the visible lines to the correct level transitions?

Ref. 134 relies on the fact that the action  $S$  of any quantum system obeys

$$S = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint dq_i p_i = \left( n_i + \frac{\mu_i}{4} \right) \hbar \quad (93)$$

for every coordinate  $q_i$  and its conjugate momentum  $p_i$ . The expression reflects the similarity between angular momentum and action. Here,  $n_i$  can be zero or any positive integer, and  $\mu_i$  is the so-called *Maslov index*, an even integer, which in the case of atoms has the value 2 for the radial and azimuthal coordinates  $r$  and  $\theta$ , and 0 for the rotation angle  $\varphi$ . The integral is to be taken along a full orbit. In simple words, *the action  $S$  is a half-integer multiple of the quantum of action*. This result can be used to calculate the energy levels of periodic quantum systems. Let us do so for hydrogen atoms.

Any rotational motion in a spherical potential  $V(r)$  is characterized by a constant energy  $E$  and constant angular momenta  $L$  and  $L_z$ . Therefore the conjugate momenta

Challenge 146 ny

for the coordinates  $r$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\varphi$  are

$$\begin{aligned} p_r &= \sqrt{2m(E - V(r)) - \frac{L^2}{r^2}} \\ p_\theta &= \sqrt{L^2 - \frac{L_z^2}{\sin^2 \theta}} \\ p_\varphi &= L_z . \end{aligned} \quad (94)$$

Using these expressions in equation (93) and setting  $n = n_r + n_\theta + n_\varphi + 1$ , we get\* the result

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{n^2} \frac{me^4}{2(4\pi\epsilon_0)^2\hbar^2} = -\frac{Rhc}{n^2} = -\frac{c^2 m \alpha^2}{2n^2} \approx -\frac{2.19 \text{ aJ}}{n^2} \approx -\frac{13.6 \text{ eV}}{n^2} . \quad (97)$$

Challenge 148 e

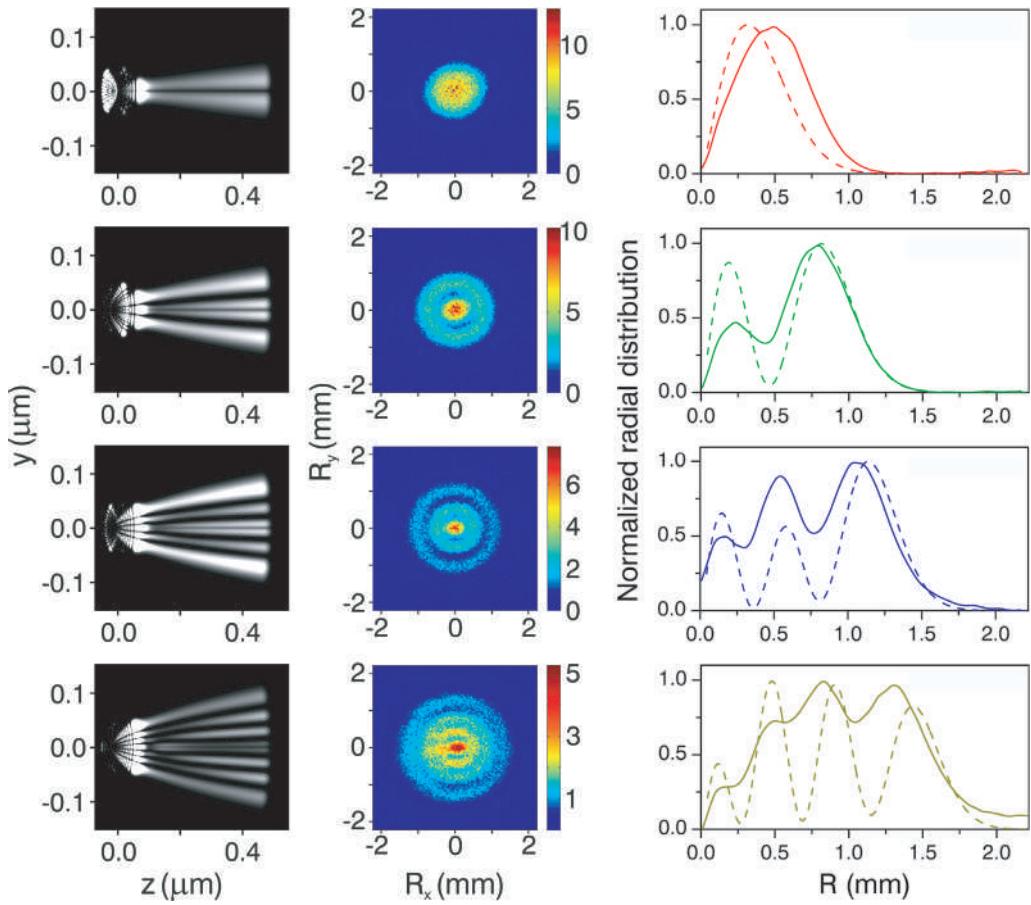
Challenge 149 s

Page 180

These *energy levels*  $E_n$ , the non-relativistic Bohr levels, are shown in Figure 79. Using the idea that a hydrogen atom emits a single photon when its electron changes from state  $E_n$  to  $E_m$ , we get exactly the formula deduced by Balmer and Rydberg from observations! The match between observation and calculation is about four digits. For (almost) the first time ever, a material property, the colour of hydrogen atoms, had been explained from a fundamental principle of nature. Key to this explanation was the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . (This whole discussion assumes that the electrons in hydrogen atoms that emit light are in eigenstates. Can you argue why this is the case?)

In short, the quantum of action implies that only certain specific energy values for an electron are allowed inside an atom. The lowest energy level, for  $n = 1$ , is called the *ground state*. Its energy value 2.19 aJ is the *ionization energy* of hydrogen; if that energy is added to the ground state, the electron is no longer bound to the nucleus. The ionization energy thus plays the same role for electrons around atoms as does the *escape velocity*, or better, the *escape energy*, for satellites or rockets shot from planets.

In the same way that the quantum of action determines the colours of the hydrogen atom, it determines the colours of all other atoms. All Fraunhofer lines, whether observed in the infrared, visible or ultraviolet, are due to the quantum of action. In fact, every colour in nature is due to a mixture of colour lines, so that all colours, also those of solids and liquids, are determined by the quantum of action.



**FIGURE 80** The figure shows the calculated and the measured nodal structure of the hydrogen atom in a weak external electric field, magnified by an electrostatic lens. The patterns are two-dimensional interference shadows of the wave functions. Left column: how the wave function is projected from the atoms to the macroscopic screen; central column: the measured nodal structure; right column: comparison of the measured (solid) and calculated (dashed) electron densities. (© Aneta Stodolna/APS, from Ref. 138).

### THE SHAPE OF ATOMS

Free atoms are spherical. Atoms in external fields are deformed. Whatever the situation, the shape of atoms is due to the shape of the wave function. The simplest case is the

---

\* The calculation is straightforward. After insertion of  $V(r) = e/4\pi\epsilon_0 r$  into equation (94) one needs to perform the (tricky) integration. Using the general result

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \oint \frac{dz}{z} \sqrt{Az^2 + 2Bz - C} = -\sqrt{C} + \frac{B}{\sqrt{-A}} \quad (95)$$

one gets

$$\left(n_r + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar + L = n\hbar = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \sqrt{\frac{m}{-2E}}. \quad (96)$$

This leads to the energy formula (97).

hydrogen atom. Its wave functions – more precisely, the eigenfunctions for the first few energy levels – are illustrated on the right hand side of [Figure 81](#). These functions had been calculated by Erwin Schrödinger already in 1926 and are found in all textbooks. We do not perform the calculation here, and just show the results.

The square of the wave function is the probability density of the electron. This density quickly decreases with increasing distance from the nucleus. Like for a real cloud, the density is never zero, even at large distances. We could thus argue that all atoms have infinite size; in practice however, chemical bonds or the arrangement of atoms in solids show that it is much more appropriate to imagine atoms as clouds of finite size.

Surprisingly, the first measurement of the wave function of an atom dates only from the year 2013; it was performed with a clever photoionization technique by Aneta Stodolna and her team. The beautiful experimental result is shown in [Figure 80](#). The figures confirm that wave functions, in contrast to probability densities, have nodes, i.e. lines – or better, surfaces – where their value is zero.

In summary, all experiments confirm that the electron in the hydrogen atom forms wave functions in exactly the way that is predicted by quantum theory. In particular, the shape of atoms is found to agree with the calculation from quantum mechanics.

### THE SIZE OF ATOMS

The calculation of the hydrogen energy levels also yields the effective radius of the electron orbits. It is given by

$$r_n = n^2 \frac{\hbar^2 4\pi \epsilon_0}{m_e e^2} = \frac{\hbar}{m_e c \alpha} = n^2 a_0 \approx n^2 52.918\,937 \text{ pm}, \text{ with } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (98)$$

We again see that, in contrast to classical physics, quantum theory allows only certain specific orbits around the nucleus. (For more details about the fine-structure constant  $\alpha$ , see below.) To be more precise, these radii are the average sizes of the electron clouds surrounding the nucleus. The smallest orbital radius value, 53 pm for  $n = 1$ , is called the *Bohr radius*, and is denoted by  $a_0$ .

[Page 188, page 196](#)

[Ref. 135](#)

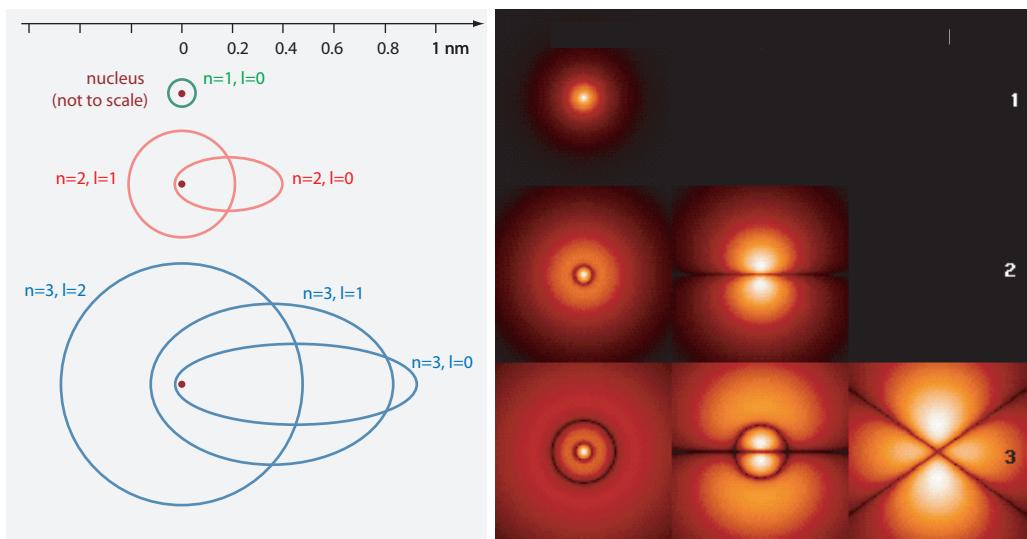
[Page 21](#)

In a gas of hydrogen atoms, most atoms are in the ground state described by  $r_1 = a_0$  and  $E_1$ . On the other hand, quantum theory implies that a hydrogen atom excited to the level  $n = 500$  is about 12  $\mu\text{m}$  in size: larger than many bacteria! Such blown-up atoms, usually called *Rydberg atoms*, have indeed been observed in the laboratory, although they are extremely sensitive to perturbations.

In short, the quantum of action determines *the size of atoms*. The result thus confirms the prediction by Arthur Erich Haas from 1910. In other words

- ▷ The quantum of action determines the size of all things.

In 1915, Arnold Sommerfeld understood that the analogy of electron motion with orbital gravitational motion could be continued in two ways. First of all, electrons can move, on average, on *ellipses* instead of circles. The quantization of angular momentum then implies that only selected eccentricities are possible. The higher the angular momentum, the larger the number of possibilities: the first few are shown in [Figure 81](#). The



**FIGURE 81** The imagined, but not existing and thus false electron orbits of the Bohr–Sommerfeld model of the hydrogen atom (left) and the correct description, using the probability density of the electron in the various states (right) (© Wikimedia).

highest eccentricity corresponds to the minimum value  $l = 0$  of the so-called azimuthal Ref. 137 quantum number, whereas the case  $l = n - 1$  correspond to circular orbits. Furthermore, the ellipses can have different orientations in space.

The second point Sommerfeld noted was that the speeds of the electron in hydrogen are – somewhat – relativistic: the speed values are not negligible compared to the speed of light. Indeed, the orbital frequency of electrons in hydrogen is

$$f_n = \frac{1}{n^3} \frac{e^4 m_e}{4\epsilon_0^2 h^3} = \frac{1}{n^3} \frac{m_e c^2 \alpha^2}{h} \approx \frac{6.7 \text{ PHz}}{n^3} \quad (99)$$

and the electron speed is

$$v_n = \frac{1}{n} \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0\hbar} = \frac{\alpha c}{n} \approx \frac{2.2 \text{ Mm/s}}{n} \approx \frac{0.007 c}{n} . \quad (100)$$

As expected, the further the electron's orbit is from the nucleus, the more slowly it moves. This result can also be checked by experiment: exchanging the electron for a muon allows us to measure the time dilation of its lifetime. Measurements are in excellent agreement Ref. 136 with the calculations.

In short, Sommerfeld noted that Bohr's calculation did not take into account relativistic effects. And indeed, high-precision measurements show slight differences between the Bohr's non-relativistical energy levels and the measured ones. The calculation must be improved.

### RELATIVISTIC HYDROGEN

Measuring atomic energy levels is possible with a much higher precision than measuring wave functions. In particular, energy level measurements allow to observe relativistic effects.

Also in the relativistic case, the EBK action has to be a multiple of  $\hbar/2$ . From the relativistic expression for the kinetic energy of the electron in a hydrogen atom

$$E + c^2 m = \sqrt{p^2 c^2 + m^2 c^4} - \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} \quad (101)$$

Challenge 150 e we get the expression

$$p_r^2 = 2mE \left( 1 + \frac{E}{2c^2 m} \right) + \frac{2me^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} \left( 1 + \frac{E}{c^2 m} \right). \quad (102)$$

We now introduce, for convenience, the so-called *fine-structure constant*, as  $\alpha = e^2/(4\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c) = \sqrt{4\pi\hbar R/mc} \approx 1/137.036$ . ( $\alpha$  is a dimensionless constant;  $R = 10.97 \mu\text{m}^{-1}$  is the Rydberg constant.) The radial EBK action then implies that

$$E_{nl} + c^2 m = \frac{c^2 m}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{\alpha^2}{\left(n-l-\frac{1}{2}+\sqrt{(l+\frac{1}{2})^2-\alpha^2}\right)^2}}}. \quad (103)$$

This result, first found by Arnold Sommerfeld in 1915, is correct for point-like, i.e., non-rotating electrons. In reality, the electron has spin 1/2; the correct relativistic energy levels thus appear when we set  $l = j \pm 1/2$  in the above formula. The result can be approximated by

$$E_{nj} = -\frac{R}{n^2} \left( 1 + \frac{\alpha^2}{n^2} \left( \frac{n}{j + \frac{1}{2}} - \frac{3}{4} \right) + \dots \right). \quad (104)$$

It reproduces the hydrogen spectrum to an extremely high accuracy. If we compare the result with the non-relativistic one, we note that each non-relativistic level  $n$  is split in  $n$  different levels. This splitting is illustrated in Figure 79. In precision experiments, the splitting of the lines of the hydrogen spectrum is visible as the so-called *fine structure*. The magnitude of the fine structure depends on  $\alpha$ , a fundamental constant of nature. Since Arnold Sommerfeld discovered the importance of this fundamental constant in this context, the name he chose, the *fine-structure constant*, has been taken over across the world.

Page 196 The fine-structure constant describes the *strength* of the electromagnetic interaction; the fine-structure constant is the electromagnetic coupling constant.

Page 183 Modern high-precision experiments show additional effects that modify the colours of atomic hydrogen. They are also illustrated in Figure 79. Virtual-particle effects and the coupling of the proton spin give additional corrections. But that is still not all: isotope effects, Doppler shifts and level shifts due to environmental electric or magnetic fields



FIGURE 82 Paul Dirac (1902–1984)

Vol. V, page 126

also influence the hydrogen spectrum. The final effect on the hydrogen spectrum, the famous Lamb shift, will be a topic later on.

Page 106

### RELATIVISTIC WAVE EQUATIONS – AGAIN

“The equation was more intelligent than I was.”  
Paul Dirac about his equation, repeating  
a statement made by Heinrich Hertz.

What is the evolution equation for the wave function in the case that relativity, spin and interactions with the electromagnetic field are taken into account? We could try to generalize the representation of relativistic motion given by Foldy and Wouthuysen to the case of particles with electromagnetic interactions. Unfortunately, this is not a simple matter. The simple identity between the classical and quantum-mechanical descriptions is lost if electromagnetism is included.

*Charged* quantum particles are best described by another, equivalent representation of the Hamiltonian, which was discovered much earlier, in 1926, by the British physicist Paul Dirac.\* Dirac found a neat trick to take the square root appearing in the relativistic energy operator. In Dirac’s representation, the Hamilton operator is given by

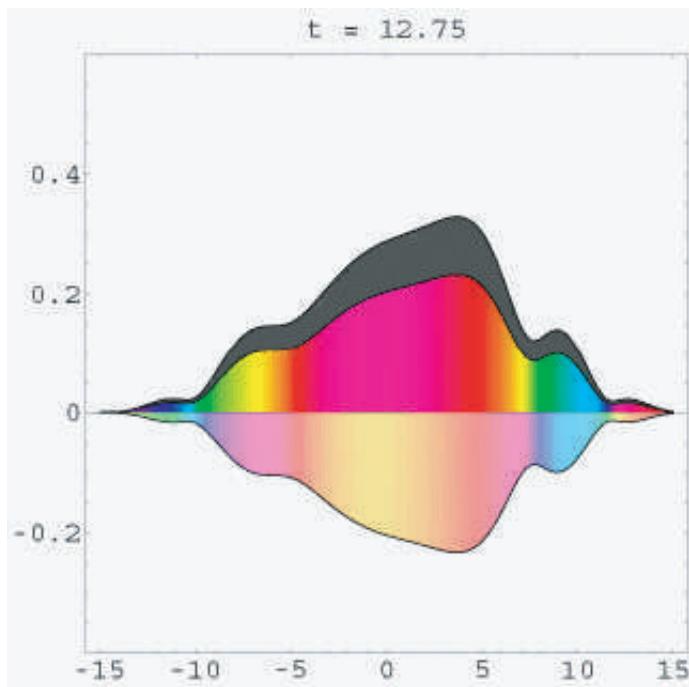
$$H_{\text{Dirac}} = \beta m + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{p}. \quad (105)$$

The quantities  $\beta$  and the three components  $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}$  turn out to be complex  $4 \times 4$  matrices.

In Dirac’s representation, the position operator  $x$  is not the position of a particle, but has additional terms; its velocity operator has only the eigenvalues plus or minus the velocity of light; the velocity operator is not simply related to the momentum operator;

---

\* Paul Adrien Maurice Dirac (b. 1902 Bristol, d. 1984 Tallahassee), bilingual physicist, studied electrotechnics in Bristol, then went to Cambridge, where he later became a professor, holding the chair that Newton had once held. In the years from 1925 to 1933 he published a stream of papers, of which several were worth a Nobel Prize; he received it in 1933. Dirac unified special relativity and quantum theory, predicted antimatter, worked on spin and statistics, predicted magnetic monopoles, speculated on the law of large numbers, and more besides. His introversion, friendliness and shyness, and his deep insights into nature, combined with a dedication to beauty in theoretical physics, made him a legend all over the world during his lifetime. For the latter half of his life he tried, unsuccessfully, to find an alternative to quantum electrodynamics, of which he was the founder, as he was repelled by the problems of infinities. He died in Florida, where he lived and worked after his retirement from Cambridge.



**FIGURE 83** The famous Zitterbewegung: the superposition of positive and negative energy states leads to an oscillation around a mean value. Colour indicates phase; two coloured curves are shown, as the Dirac equation in one dimension has only two components (not four); the grey curve is the probability density. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

Vol. III, page 85

Ref. 139

the equation of motion contains the famous ‘Zitterbewegung’ term; orbital angular momentum and spin are not separate constants of motion.

So why use this horrible Hamiltonian? Because only the Dirac Hamiltonian can easily be used for charged particles. Indeed, it is transformed to the Hamiltonian coupled to the electromagnetic field by the so-called *minimal coupling*, i.e., by the substitution

$$\mathbf{p} \rightarrow \mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A}, \quad (106)$$

that treats electromagnetic momentum like particle momentum. With this prescription, Dirac’s Hamiltonian describes the motion of charged particles interacting with an electromagnetic field  $\mathbf{A}$ . The minimal coupling substitution is not possible in the Foldy–Wouthuysen Hamiltonian. In the Dirac representation, particles are pure, point-like, structureless electric charges; in the Foldy–Wouthuysen representation they acquire a charge radius and a magnetic-moment interaction. (We will come to the reasons below, in the section on QED.)

In more detail, the simplest description of an electron (or any other elementary, stable,

electrically-charged particle of spin 1/2) is given by the action  $S$  and Lagrangian

$$S = \int \mathcal{L}_{\text{QED}} d^4x \quad \text{where} \quad (107)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{QED}} = \bar{\psi} (i\hbar c \not{D} - c^2 m) \psi - \frac{1}{4\mu_0} F_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu} \quad \text{and}$$

$$\not{D}_\mu = \gamma^\mu (\partial_\mu - ieA_\mu)$$

The first, matter term in the Lagrangian leads to the Dirac equation: it describes how elementary, charged, spin 1/2 particles are moved by electromagnetic fields. The second, radiation term leads to Maxwell's equations, and describes how electromagnetic fields are moved by the charged particle wave function. Together with a few calculating tricks, these equations describe what is usually called *quantum electrodynamics*, or QED for short.

As far as is known today, the relativistic description of the motion of charged matter and electromagnetic fields given the QED Lagrangian (107) is *perfect*: no differences between theory and experiment have ever been found, despite intensive searches and despite a high reward for anybody who would find one. All known predictions fully agree with all measurements. In the most spectacular cases, the correspondence between theory and measurement extends to more than thirteen digits. But even more interesting than the precision of QED are certain of its features that are missing in classical electrodynamics. Let's have a quick tour.

### GETTING A FIRST FEELING FOR THE DIRAC EQUATION

The QED Lagrangian implies that the wave function of a charged particle in a potential follows the Dirac equation:

$$i\hbar\gamma^\mu (\partial_\mu - ieA_\mu) \psi = mc\psi . \quad (108)$$

The many indices should not make us forget that this equation simply states that the eigenvalue of the energy-momentum operator is the rest mass (times the speed of light  $c$ ). In other words, the equation states that the wave  $\psi$  moves with a phase velocity  $c$ .

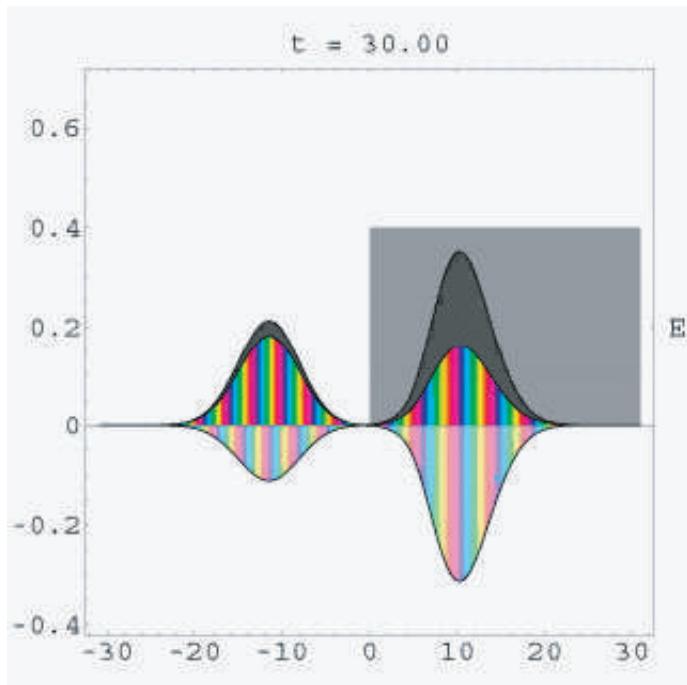
The wave function  $\psi$  has four complex components. Two describe the motion of particles, and two the motion of antiparticles. Each type of particle needs two complex components, because the equation describes spin and particle density. Spin is a rotation, and a rotation requires three real parameters. Spin and density thus require four real parameters; they can be combined into two complex numbers, both for particles and for antiparticles.

Each of the four components of the wave function of a relativistic spinning particle follows the relativistic Schrödinger–Klein–Gordon equation. This means that the relativistic energy–momentum relation is followed by each component separately.

The relativistic wave function  $\psi$  has the important property that a rotation by  $2\pi$  changes its sign. Only a rotation by  $4\pi$  leaves the wave function unchanged. This is the typical behaviour of spin 1/2 particles. For this reason, the four-component wave function of a spin 1/2 particle is called a *spinor*.

Challenge 152 e

Challenge 153 e



**FIGURE 84** Klein’s paradox: the motion of a relativistic wave function that encounters a very steep potential. Part of the wave function is transmitted; this part is antimatter, as the larger lower component shows. (QuickTime film © Bernd Thaller)

### ANTIMATTER

‘Antimatter’ is now a household term. Interestingly, the concept appeared *before* there was any experimental evidence for it. The relativistic expression for the energy  $E$  of an electron with charge  $e$  in the field of a charge  $Q$  is

$$E + \frac{Qe}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} = \sqrt{m^2 c^4 + p^2 c^2}. \quad (109)$$

This expression also allows solutions with *negative* energy and opposite charge  $-e$ , if the negative root is used. Quantum theory shows that this is a general property, and these solutions correspond to what is called *antimatter*.

Indeed, the antimatter companion of the electron was predicted in the 1920s by Paul Dirac from his equation (108), which is based on the above relativistic energy relation (109). Unaware of this prediction, Carl Anderson discovered the antielectron in 1932, and called it the *positron*. (The correct name would have been ‘positon’, without the ‘r’. This correct form is used in the French language.) Anderson was studying cosmic rays, and noticed that some ‘electrons’ were turning the wrong way in the magnetic field he had applied to his apparatus. He checked his apparatus thoroughly, and finally deduced that he had found a particle with the same mass as the electron but with positive electric charge.

The existence of positrons has many strange implications. Already in 1928, before their discovery, the Swedish theorist Oskar Klein had pointed out that Dirac’s equation for

Ref. 140

electrons makes a strange prediction: when an electron hits a sufficiently steep potential wall, the reflection coefficient is larger than unity. Such a wall will reflect *more* than is thrown at it. In addition, a large part of the wave function is transmitted through the wall. In 1935, after the discovery of the positron, Werner Heisenberg and Hans Euler explained the paradox. They found that the Dirac equation predicts that whenever an electric field exceeds the critical value of

$$E_c = \frac{m_e c^2}{e \lambda_e} = \frac{m_e^2 c^3}{e \hbar} = 1.3 \text{ EV/m} , \quad (110)$$

the vacuum will spontaneously generate electron–positron pairs, which are then separated by the field. As a result, the original field is reduced. This so-called *vacuum polarization* is the reason for the reflection coefficient greater than unity found by Klein. Indeed, steep potentials correspond to high electric fields.

Vacuum polarization shows that, in contrast to everyday life, the *number* of particles is not a constant in the microscopic domain. Only the *difference* between particle number and antiparticle number turns out to be conserved. Vacuum polarization thus limits our possibility to count particles in nature!

Vol. V, page 154

Vacuum polarization is a weak effect. It has been only observed in particle collisions of high energy. In those case, the effect even increases the fine-structure constant! Later on we will describe truly gigantic examples of vacuum polarization that are postulated around charged black holes.

Of course, the generation of electron–positron pairs is not a *creation* out of nothing, but a *transformation* of energy into matter. Such processes are part of every relativistic description of nature. Unfortunately, physicists have a habit of calling this transformation ‘pair creation’, thus confusing the issue somewhat. The transformation is described by quantum field theory, which we will explore in the next volume.

### VIRTUAL PARTICLES

Page 64

Despite what was said so far, action values smaller than the smallest action value do have a role to play. We have already encountered one example: in a collision between two electrons, there is an exchange of virtual photons. We learned that the exchanged virtual photon cannot be observed. Indeed, the action  $S$  for this exchange obeys

$$S \leq \hbar . \quad (111)$$

In short, *virtual* particles appear only as mediators in interactions. They cannot be observed. Virtual particles, in contrast to ordinary, real particles, do not obey the relation  $E^2 - p^2 c^2 = m^2 c^4$ . For example, the kinetic energy can be negative. Indeed, virtual particles are the opposite of ‘free’ or real particles. They may be observed in a vacuum if the measurement time is very short. They are intrinsically short-lived.

Virtual photons are the cause for electrostatic potentials, for magnetic fields, for the Casimir effect, for spontaneous emission, for the van der Waals force, and for the Lamb shift in atoms. A more detailed treatment shows that in every situation with virtual photons there are also, with even lower probability, virtual electrons and virtual

positrons.

Massive virtual particles are essential for vacuum polarization, for the limit in the number of the elements, for black-hole radiation and for Unruh radiation. Massive virtual particles also play a role in the strong interaction, where they hold the nucleons together in nuclei, and in weak nuclear interaction, where they explain why beta decay happens and why the Sun shines.

In particular, virtual particle–antiparticle pairs of matter and virtual radiation particles together form what we call the *vacuum*. In addition, virtual radiation particles form what are usually called static fields. Virtual particles are needed for a full description of all interactions. In particular, virtual particles are responsible for every decay process.

#### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT COLOUR AND ATOMS

Ref. 141

Where is the sea bluest? Sea water, like fresh water, is blue because it absorbs red and green light. The absorption is due to a vibrational band of the water molecule that is due to a combination of symmetric and asymmetric molecular stretches. The absorption is weak, but noticeable. At 700 nm (red), the  $1/e$  absorption length of water is 1 m.

Sea water can also be of bright colour if the sea floor reflects light. In addition, sea water can be green, if it contains small particles that scatter or absorb blue light. Most often, these particles are soil or plankton. (Satellites can determine plankton content from the ‘greenness’ of the sea.) Thus the sea is especially blue if it is deep, quiet and cold; in that case, the ground is distant, soil is not mixed into the water, and the plankton content is low. The Sargasso Sea is 5 km deep, quiet and cold for most of the year. It is often called the *bluest* of the Earth’s waters.

Lakes can also be blue if they contain small mineral particles. The particles scatter light and lead to a blue colour for reasons similar to the blue colour of the sky. Such blue lakes are found in many places on Earth.

\* \*

On modern high-precision measurements of the hydrogen spectra, listen to the undisputed master of the field: enjoy the 2012 talk by Theodor Hänsch, who has devoted a large part of his life to the topic, at [www.mediatheque.lindau-nobel.org](http://www.mediatheque.lindau-nobel.org).

\* \*

Ref. 142

The hydrogen atom bears many fascinating aspects. In 2015, Friedmann and Hagen showed that a well-known formula for  $\pi = 3.14159265\dots$  can be extracted from the colour spectrum. Quantum mechanics and colours are beautiful subjects indeed.

\* \*

Ref. 136

If atoms contain orbiting electrons, the rotation of the Earth, via the Coriolis acceleration, should have an effect on their motion, and thus on the colour of atoms. This beautiful prediction is due to Mark Silverman; the effect is so small, however, that it has not yet been measured.

\* \*

**Ref. 143** Light is diffracted by material gratings. Can matter be diffracted by light gratings? Surprisingly, it actually can, as predicted by Dirac and Kapitza in 1937. This was accomplished for the first time in 1986, using atoms. For free electrons, the feat is more difficult; the clearest confirmation came in 2001, when new laser technology was used to perform a beautiful measurement of the typical diffraction maxima for electrons diffracted by a light grating.

\* \*

**Ref. 136** Light is totally reflected when it is directed to a dense material at a large enough angle so that it cannot enter the material. A group of Russian physicists have shown that if the dense material is excited, the intensity of the totally-reflected beam can be *amplified*. It is unclear whether this will ever lead to applications.

\* \*

**Vol. I, page 344** The ways people handle *single* atoms with electromagnetic fields provide many beautiful examples of modern applied technologies. Nowadays it is possible to levitate, to trap, to excite, to photograph, to deexcite and to move single atoms just by shining light onto them. In 1997, the Nobel Prize in Physics has been awarded to the originators of the field, Steven Chu, Claude Cohen-Tannoudji and William Phillips.

**Ref. 145** Given two mirrors and a few photons, it is possible to capture an atom and keep it floating between the two mirrors. This feat, one of several ways to isolate single atoms, is now standard practice in laboratories. Can you imagine how it is done?

\* \*

**Ref. 146** An example of modern research is the study of *hollow* atoms, i.e., atoms missing a number of inner electrons. They have been discovered in 1990 by J.P. Briand and his group. They appear when a completely ionized atom, i.e., one without any electrons, is brought in contact with a metal. The acquired electrons then orbit on the outside, leaving the inner shells empty, in stark contrast with usual atoms. Such hollow atoms can also be formed by intense laser irradiation.

\* \*

Relativistic quantum effects can be seen with the unaided eye. The two most important ones concern gold and mercury. The yellow colour of gold – which has atomic number 79 – is due to the transition energy between 5d and 6s electrons, which absorbs blue light. Without relativistic effects, this transition would lie in the ultraviolet, similar to the transition between 4d and 5s electrons for silver, and gold would be colourless. The yellow colour of gold is thus a relativistic effect.

Mercury – which has atomic number 80 – has a filled 6s shell. Due to the same relativistic effects that appear in gold, these shells are contracted and do not like to form bonds. For this reason, mercury is still liquid at room temperature, in contrast to all other metals. Relativity is thus the reason that mercury is liquid, and that thermometers work.

\* \*

**Challenge 155 s** Is phosphorus phosphorescent?

\* \*

**Challenge 156 ny** It is possible to detect the passage of a single photon through an apparatus without absorbing it. How would you do this?

### MATERIAL PROPERTIES

Like the size of hydrogen atoms, also the size of all other atoms is fixed by the quantum of action. Indeed, the quantum of action determines to a large degree the interactions among electrons. By doing so, the quantum of change determines all the interactions between atoms in everyday matter; therefore it determines all other material properties. The elasticity, the plasticity, the brittleness, the magnetic and electric properties of materials are equally fixed by the quantum of action. Only  $\hbar$  makes electronics possible! We will study some examples of material properties in the next volume. Various details of the general connection between  $\hbar$  and material properties are still a subject of research, though none is in contradiction with the quantum of action. Material research is among the most important fields of modern science, and most advances in our standard of living result from it. We will explore some aspects in the next volume.

In summary, materials science has confirmed that quantum physics is also the correct description of all materials; quantum physics has confirmed that all material properties of everyday life are of electromagnetic origin; and quantum physics has confirmed that all material properties of everyday life are due to interactions that involve electrons.

### A TOUGH CHALLENGE: THE STRENGTH OF ELECTROMAGNETISM

The great physicist Wolfgang Pauli used to say that after his death, the first thing he would ask god would be to explain Sommerfeld's fine-structure constant. (Others used to comment that after god will have explained it to him, he will think a little, and then snap: 'Wrong!')

**Ref. 147** The *fine-structure constant*, introduced by Arnold Sommerfeld, is the dimensionless constant of nature whose value is measured to be

$$\alpha = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c} \approx \frac{1}{137.035\,999\,679(94)} \approx 0.007\,297\,352\,5376(50). \quad (112)$$

**Ref. 148** This number first appeared in explanations of the fine structure of atomic colour spectra; hence its strange name. Sommerfeld was the first to understand its general importance. It is central to quantum electrodynamics for several reasons.

First of all, the fine-structure constant describes the *strength* of electromagnetism. The number  $\alpha$  results from the interaction of two electric charges  $e$ . Writing Coulomb's relation for the force  $F$  between two electrons as

$$F = \alpha \frac{\hbar c}{r^2} \quad (113)$$

it becomes clear that the fine-structure constant describes the strength of electromagnet-

ism. A higher value for the fine-structure constant  $\alpha$  would mean a stronger attraction or repulsion between charged bodies. Thus the value of  $\alpha$  determines the sizes of atoms, and indeed of all things, as well as all colours in nature.

Secondly, it is only because the fine-structure constant  $\alpha$  is so small that we are able to talk about particles at all. Indeed, only because the fine-structure constant is much smaller than 1 it is possible to distinguish particles from each other. If the number  $\alpha$  were near to or larger than 1, particles would interact so strongly that it would not be possible to observe them separately or to talk about particles at all.

This leads on to the third reason for the importance of the fine-structure constant. Since it is a dimensionless number, it implies some yet-unknown mechanism that fixes its value. Uncovering this mechanism is one of the challenges remaining in our adventure. As long as the mechanism remains unknown – as was the case in 2016 – we do not understand the colour and size of a single thing around us!

Small changes in the strength of electromagnetic attraction between electrons and protons would have numerous important consequences. Can you describe what would happen to the size of people, to the colour of objects, to the colour of the Sun, or to the workings of computers, if the strength were to double? And what if it were to gradually drop to half its usual value?

Since the 1920s, explaining the value of  $\alpha$  has been seen as one of the toughest challenges facing modern physics. That is the reason for Pauli's fantasy. In 1946, during his Nobel Prize lecture, he repeated the statement that a theory that does not determine Ref. 149 this number cannot be complete. Since that time, physicists seem to have fallen into two classes: those who did not dare to take on the challenge, and those who had no clue. This fascinating story still awaits us.

The problem of the fine-structure constant is so deep that it leads many astray. For example, it is sometimes claimed that it is impossible to change physical units in such a way that  $\hbar$ ,  $c$  and  $e$  are all equal to 1 at the same time, because to do so would change the number  $\alpha = 1/137.036\dots(1)$ . Can you explain why the argument is wrong?

**Challenge 157 s**

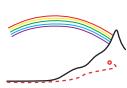
Ref. 149

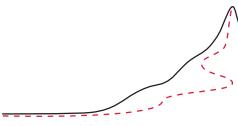
**Challenge 158 s**

#### A SUMMARY ON COLOURS AND MATERIALS

In summary, the quantum of action  $\hbar$  – together with the interaction between electromagnetic fields and the electrons inside atoms, molecules, liquids and solids – determines the size, the shape, the colour and the material properties of all things around us. The quantum of action determines mechanical properties such as hardness or elasticity, magnetic properties, thermal properties such as heat capacity or heat of condensation, optical properties such as transparency, and electrical properties such as metallic shine. In addition, the quantum of action determines all chemical and biological aspects of matter. This connection is the topic of the next volume.

The strength of the electromagnetic interaction is described by the fine-structure constant  $\alpha \approx 1/137.036$ . Its value is yet unexplained.





## CHAPTER 9

# QUANTUM PHYSICS IN A NUTSHELL

**C**ompared to classical physics, quantum theory is definitely more complex. The basic idea however, is simple: in nature there is a smallest change, or a smallest action with the value  $\hbar = 1.1 \cdot 10^{-34}$  Js. More precisely, all of quantum theory can be resumed in one sentence:

- ▷ In nature, actions or changes smaller than  $\hbar = 1.054\,571\,800(13) \cdot 10^{-34}$  Js are not observed.

This smallest action value, the *quantum of action*, leads to all the strange observations made in the microscopic domain, such as the wave behaviour of matter, indeterminacy relations, decoherence, randomness in measurements, indistinguishability, quantization of angular momentum, tunnelling, pair creation, decay and particle reactions.

The essence of quantum theory is thus the lack of infinitely small change. The mathematics of quantum theory is abstract and involved, though. Was this part of our walk worth the effort? It was: the results are profound, and the accuracy of the description is *complete*. We first give an overview of these results and then turn to the questions that are still left open.

### PHYSICAL RESULTS OF QUANTUM THEORY

The existence of a smallest action value in nature leads directly to the main lesson we learned about motion in the quantum part of our adventure:

- ▷ If it moves, it is made of quantons, or quantum particles.

This statement applies to every physical system, thus to all objects and to all images, i.e., to all matter and radiation. Moving stuff is made of *quantons*. Stones, water waves, light, sound waves, earthquakes, gelatine and everything else we can interact with is made of quantum particles.

In our exploration of relativity we discovered that also horizons and the vacuum can move. If all moving entities are made of quantum particles, what does this imply for horizons and empty space? We can argue that no fundamental problems are expected for horizons, because one way to describe horizons is as an extreme state of matter. But the details for the quantum aspects of vacuum are not simple; they will be the topic of the last part of this adventure.

Vol. II, page 293  
Vol. II, page 322

Earlier in our adventure we asked: what are matter, radiation and interactions? Now we know: they all are composites of elementary quantum particles. In particular, interactions are exchanges of elementary quantum particles.

An *elementary quantum particle* is a countable entity that is smaller than its own Compton wavelength. All elementary particles are described by energy-momentum, mass, spin, C, P and T parity. However, as we will see in the next volume, this is not yet the complete list of particle properties. About the *intrinsic* properties of quantum particles, i.e., those that do not depend on the observer, quantum theory makes a simple statement:

Page 128

- ▷ In nature, all intrinsic properties of quantons, or quantum particles – with the exception of mass – such as spin, electric charge, strong charge, parities etc., appear as integer multiples of a basic unit. Since all physical systems are made of quantons, in composed systems all intrinsic properties – with the exception of mass\* – either add or multiply.

Challenge 159 e

In summary, all moving entities are made of quantum particles described by *discrete* intrinsic properties. To see how deep this result is, you can apply it to all those moving entities for which it is usually forgotten, such as ghosts, spirits, angels, nymphs, demons, devils, gods, goddesses and souls. You can check yourself what happens when their particle nature is taken into account.

“ Deorum injuriae diis curae.”  
Tiberius, as reported by Tacitus.

### RESULTS ON THE MOTION OF QUANTUM PARTICLES

Quantons, or quantum particles, differ from everyday particles: quantum particles *interfere*: they behave like a mixture of particles and waves. This property follows directly from the existence of  $\hbar$ , the smallest possible action in nature. From the existence of  $\hbar$ , quantum theory deduces all its statements about quantum particle motion. We summarize the main ones.

There is *no rest* in nature. All objects obey the indeterminacy relation, which states that the indeterminacies in position  $x$  and momentum  $p$  follow

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar / 2 \quad \text{with} \quad \hbar = 1.1 \cdot 10^{-34} \text{ Js} \quad (114)$$

and making rest an impossibility. The state of quantum particles is defined by the same observables as in classical physics, with the difference that observables do not commute. Classical physics appears in the limit that the Planck constant  $\hbar$  can effectively be set to zero.

Quantum theory introduces a *probabilistic element* into motion. Probabilities result from the quantum of action through the interactions with the baths that are part of the

---

\* More precisely, together with mass, also mixing angles are not quantized. These properties are defined in the next volume.

\*\* ‘Offenses of gods are care of the gods.’

environment of every physical system. Equivalently, probabilities result in every experiment that tries to induce a change that is smaller than the quantum of action.

Quantum particles *behave like waves*. The associated de Broglie wavelength  $\lambda$  is given by the momentum  $p$  through

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{2\pi\hbar}{p} \quad (115)$$

both in the case of matter and of radiation. This relation is the origin of the wave behaviour of light and matter. The light particles are called photons; their observation is now standard practice. Quantum theory states that particle waves, like all waves, interfere, refract, disperse, dampen, can be damped and can be polarized. This applies to photons, electrons, atoms and molecules. All waves being made of quantum particles, all waves can be seen, touched and moved. Light for example, can be ‘seen’ in photon-photon scattering in vacuum at high energies, can be ‘touched’ using the Compton effect, and can be ‘moved’ by gravitational bending. Matter particles, such as molecules or atoms, can be seen in electron microscopes and can be touched and moved with atomic force microscopes. The interference and diffraction of wave particles is observed daily in the electron microscope.

Matter waves can be imagined as clouds that *rotate locally*. In the limit of negligible cloud size, quantum particles can be imagined as rotating little arrows. Equivalently, quantons have a *phase*.

Particles *cannot be enclosed forever*. Even though matter is impenetrable, quantum theory shows that tight boxes or insurmountable obstacles do not exist. Enclosure is never forever. Waiting long enough always allows us to overcome any boundary, since there is a finite probability to overcome any obstacle. This process is called *tunnelling* when seen from the spatial point of view and is called *decay* when seen from the temporal point of view. Tunnelling explains the working of television tubes as well as radioactive decay.

All particles and all particle beams *can be rotated*. Particles possess an intrinsic angular momentum called *spin*, specifying their behaviour under rotations. Bosons have integer spin, fermions have half integer spin. An even number of bound fermions or any number of bound bosons yield a composite boson; an odd number of bound fermions yield a low-energy fermion. Solids are impenetrable because of the fermion character of its electrons in the atoms.

Identical particles are *indistinguishable*. Radiation is made of indistinguishable particles called bosons, matter of fermions. Under exchange of two fermions at space-like separations, the wave function changes sign, whereas for two bosons the wave function remains unchanged. All other properties of quantum particles are the same as for classical particles, namely countability, interaction, mass, charge, angular momentum, energy, momentum, position, as well as impenetrability for matter and penetrability for radiation. Perfect copying machines do not exist.

In collisions, particles *interact locally*, through the exchange of other particles. When matter particles collide, they interact through the exchange of virtual bosons, i.e., off-shell bosons. Motion change is thus due to particle exchange. Exchange bosons of even spin mediate only attractive interactions. Exchange bosons of odd spin mediate repulsive interactions as well.

The properties of collisions imply the non-conservation of particle number. In collisions, particles can appear – i.e., can be ‘created’ – or disappear – i.e., can be ‘annihilated’. This is valid both for bosons and for fermions.

The properties of collisions imply the existence of *antiparticles*, which are regularly observed in experiments. Elementary fermions, in contrast to many elementary bosons, differ from their antiparticles; they can be created and annihilated only in pairs. Elementary fermions have non-vanishing mass and move slower than light.

Particles can *decay* and be *transformed*. Detailed investigations show that collisions imply the non-conservation of particle type. In collisions, selected particles can change their intrinsic properties. This observation will be detailed in the next volume. Equivalently, the quantum of action implies that things *break* and living beings *die*.

Images, made of radiation, are described by the same observables as matter: position, phase, speed, mass, momentum etc. – though their values and relations differ. Images can only be localized with a precision of the wavelength  $\lambda$  of the radiation producing them.

The appearance of Planck’s constant  $\hbar$  implies that *length scales* and *time scales* exist in nature. Quantum theory introduces a fundamental jitter in every example of motion. Thus the infinitely small is eliminated. In this way, lower limits to structural dimensions and to many other measurable quantities appear. In particular, quantum theory shows that it is impossible that on the electrons in an atom small creatures live in the same way that humans live on the Earth circling the Sun. Quantum theory shows the impossibility of Lilliput.

Clocks and metre bars have *finite precision*, due to the existence of a smallest action and due to their interactions with baths. On the other hand, all measurement apparatuses must contain baths, since otherwise they would not be able to record results.

Ref. 150 Quantum effects leave no room for cold fusion, astrology, teleportation, telekinesis, supernatural phenomena, creation out of nothing, multiple universes, or faster than light phenomena – the EPR paradox notwithstanding.  
Page 153

#### ACHIEVEMENTS IN ACCURACY AND PRECISION

Apart from the conceptual changes, quantum theory improved the accuracy of predictions from the few – if any – digits common in classical mechanics to the full number of digits – sometimes thirteen – that can be measured today. The limited precision is usually *not* given by the inaccuracy of theory, it is given by the measurement accuracy. In other words, the agreement is only limited by the amount of money the experimenter is willing to spend. [Table 8](#) shows this in more detail.

**TABLE 8** Selected comparisons between classical physics, quantum theory and experiment.

OBSERVABLE	CLAS- SICAL PREDICTION	PREDICTION OF QUANTUM THEORY <sup>a</sup>	MEASUREMENT	COST ESTI- MATE
<b>Simple motion of bodies</b>				
Indeterminacy	0	$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar/2$	$(1 \pm 10^{-2}) \hbar/2$	10 k€

OBSERVABLE	CLAS-SICAL PREDICTION	PREDICTION OF QUANTUM THEORY <sup>a</sup>	MEASUREMENT	COST ESTIMATE
Matter wavelength	none	$\lambda p = 2\pi\hbar$	$(1 \pm 10^{-2})\hbar$	10 k€
Compton wavelength	none	$\lambda_c = h/m_e c$	$(1 \pm 10^{-3})\lambda$	20 k€
Pair creation rate	0	$\sigma E$	agrees	100 k€
Radiative decay time in hydrogen	none	$\tau \sim 1/n^3$	$(1 \pm 10^{-2})$	5 k€
Smallest angular momentum	0	$\hbar/2$	$(1 \pm 10^{-6})\hbar/2$	10 k€
Casimir effect/pressure	0	$p = (\pi^2\hbar c)/(240r^4)$	$(1 \pm 10^{-3})$	30 k€
<b>Colours of objects</b>				
Spectrum of hot objects	diverges	$\lambda_{\max} = hc/(4.956kT)$	$(1 \pm 10^{-4})\Delta\lambda$	10 k€
Lamb shift	none	$\Delta\lambda = 1057.86(1) \text{ MHz}$	$(1 \pm 10^{-6})\Delta\lambda$	50 k€
Rydberg constant	none	$R_\infty = m_e c \alpha^2 / 2\hbar$	$(1 \pm 10^{-9})R_\infty$	50 k€
Stefan–Boltzmann constant	none	$\sigma = \pi^2 k^4 / 60 \hbar^3 c^2$	$(1 \pm 3 \cdot 10^{-8})\sigma$	20 k€
Wien's displacement constant	none	$b = \lambda_{\max} T$	$(1 \pm 10^{-5})b$	20 k€
Refractive index of water	none	1.34	within a few %	1 k€
Photon-photon scattering	0	from QED: finite	agrees	50 M€
Electron gyromagnetic ratio	1 or 2	2.002 319 304 365(7)	2.002 319 304 361 53(53)	30 M€
Muon anomalous magnetic moment	0	$11\,659\,1827(63) \cdot 10^{-11}$	$11\,659\,2080(60) \cdot 10^{-11}$	100 M€
<b>Composite matter properties</b>				
Atom lifetime	$\approx 1 \mu\text{s}$	$\infty$	$> 10^{20} \text{ a}$	1 €
Muonium hyperfine splitting	none	4 463 302 542(620) Hz	4 463 302 765(53) Hz	1 M€
Molecular size and shape	none	from QED	within $10^{-3}$	20 k€

Page 214 a. All these predictions are calculated from the basic physical constants given in Appendix A.

We notice that the predicted values *do not differ* from the measured ones. If we remember that classical physics does not allow us to calculate any of the measured values, we get an idea of the progress quantum physics has achieved. This advance in understanding is due to the introduction of the quantum of action  $\hbar$ . Equivalently, we can state: no description of nature without the quantum of action is complete.

In summary, quantum theory is precise and accurate. In the microscopic domain quantum theory is in *perfect* correspondence with nature; despite prospects of fame and riches, despite the largest number of researchers ever, no contradiction between observation and theory has been found yet. On the other hand, explaining the measured value

of the fine-structure constant,  $\alpha = 1/137.035\,999\,074(44)$ , remains an open problem of the electromagnetic interaction.

### IS QUANTUM THEORY MAGIC?

Studying nature is like experiencing magic. Nature often looks different from what it is. During magic we are fooled – but only if we forget our own limitations. Once we start to see ourselves as part of the game, we start to understand the tricks. That is the fun of magic. The same happens in quantum motion.

\* \*

*Nature seems irreversible*, even though it isn't. We never remember the future. We are fooled because we are macroscopic.

\* \*

*Nature seems decoherent*, even though it isn't. We are fooled again because we are macroscopic.

\* \*

*There are no clocks* in nature. We are fooled by those of everyday life because we are surrounded by a huge number of particles.

\* \*

*Motion often seems to disappear*, even though it is eternal. We are fooled again, because our senses cannot experience the microscopic domain.

\* \*

*Objects seem distinguishable*, even though the statistical properties of their components show that they are not. We are fooled because we live at low energies.

\* \*

*Matter seems continuous*, even though it isn't. We are fooled because of the limitations of our senses.

\* \*

*Motion seems deterministic in the classical sense*, even though it is random. We are fooled again because we are macroscopic.

\* \*

In short, our human condition permanently fools us. The answer to the title question is: classical physics is like magic, and the tricks are uncovered by quantum theory. That is its main attraction.

### QUANTUM THEORY IS EXACT, BUT CAN DO MORE

We can summarize this part of our adventure with a simple statement:

- ▷ Quantum physics is the description of matter and radiation *without* the concept of infinitely small.

All change in nature, in fact, everything is described by *finite* quantities, and above all, by the smallest change possible in nature, the quantum of action  $\hbar = 1.054\,571\,800(13) \cdot 10^{-34}$  Js.

All experiments, without exception, show that the quantum of action  $\hbar$  is the smallest observable change. The description of nature with the quantum of action is thus *exact* and *final*. The smallest measurable action  $\hbar$ , like the maximum energy speed  $c$ , is a fundamental property of nature. One could also call both of them *fundamental truths*.

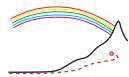
Since quantum theory follows logically and completely from the smallest measurable action  $\hbar$ , the simplest way – and the only way – to disprove quantum theory is to find an observation that contradicts the smallest change value  $\hbar$ . Try it!

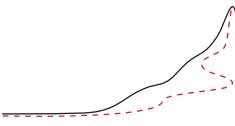
Challenge 160 e

Page 15

Even though we have deduced a fundamental property of nature, if we turn back to the start of our exploration of quantum theory, we cannot hide a certain disappointment. We know that classical physics cannot explain life. Searching for the details of microscopic motion, we encountered so many interesting aspects that we have *not yet* achieved the explanation of life. For example, we know what determines the speed of electrons in atoms, but we do not know what determines the running speed of an athlete. In fact, we have not even discussed the properties of any solid or liquid, let alone those of more complex structures like living beings.

In other terms, after this introduction into quantum theory, we must still connect quantum processes to our everyday world. Therefore, the topic of the next volume will be the exploration of the motion of and inside living things – and of the motion inside all kind of matter, from solids to stars, using the quantum of action as a foundation. After that, we will explore the motion of empty space.





## APPENDIX A

# UNITS, MEASUREMENTS AND CONSTANTS

Ref. 151

Measurements are comparisons with standards. Standards are based on *units*. Many different systems of units have been used throughout the world. Most of these standards confer power to the organization in charge of them. Such power can be misused; this is the case today, for example in the computer industry, and was so in the distant past. The solution is the same in both cases: organize an independent and global standard. For measurement units, this happened in the eighteenth century: in order to avoid misuse by authoritarian institutions, to eliminate problems with differing, changing and irreproducible standards, and – this is not a joke – to simplify tax collection and to make it more just, a group of scientists, politicians and economists agreed on a set of units. It is called the *Système International d'Unités*, abbreviated *SI*, and is defined by an international treaty, the ‘Convention du Mètre’. The units are maintained by an international organization, the ‘Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures’, and its daughter organizations, the ‘Commission Internationale des Poids et Mesures’ and the ‘Bureau International des Poids et Mesures’ (BIPM). All originated in the times just before the French revolution.

## SI UNITS

All SI units are built from seven *base units*. Their simplest definitions, translated from French into English, are the following ones, together with the dates of their formulation and a few comments:

- “The *second* is the duration of 9 192 631 770 periods of the radiation corresponding to the transition between the two hyperfine levels of the ground state of the caesium 133 atom.” (1967) The 2019 definition is equivalent, but much less clear.\*
- “The *metre* is the length of the path travelled by light in vacuum during a time interval of 1/299 792 458 of a second.” (1983) The 2019 definition is equivalent, but much less clear.\*
- “The *kilogram*, symbol  $\text{kg}$ , is the SI unit of mass. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the Planck constant  $h$  to be  $6.626\,070\,15 \cdot 10^{-34}$  when expressed in the unit  $\text{J} \cdot \text{s}$ , which is equal to  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ . (2019)\*
- “The *ampere*, symbol  $\text{A}$ , is the SI unit of electric current. It is defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the elementary charge  $e$  to be  $1.602\,176\,634 \cdot 10^{-19}$  when expressed in the unit  $\text{C}$ , which is equal to  $\text{A} \cdot \text{s}$ . (2019)\* This definition is equivalent to: One ampere is  $6.241\,509\,074\ldots \cdot 10^{18}$  elementary charges per second.
- “The *kelvin*, symbol  $\text{K}$ , is the SI unit of thermodynamic temperature. It is defined by

taking the fixed numerical value of the Boltzmann constant  $k$  to be  $1.380649 \cdot 10^{-23}$  when expressed in the unit  $\text{J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1}$ . (2019)\*

- ‘The mole, symbol mol, is the SI unit of amount of substance. One mole contains exactly  $6.02214076 \cdot 10^{23}$  elementary entities.’ (2019)\*
- ‘The *candela* is the luminous intensity, in a given direction, of a source that emits monochromatic radiation of frequency  $540 \cdot 10^{12}$  hertz and has a radiant intensity in that direction of  $(1/683)$  watt per steradian.’ (1979) The 2019 definition is equivalent, but much less clear.\*

We note that both time and length units are defined as certain properties of a standard example of motion, namely light. In other words, also the Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures makes the point that the observation of motion is a *prerequisite* for the definition and construction of time and space. *Motion is the fundament of every observation and of all measurement.* By the way, the use of light in the definitions had been proposed already in 1827 by Jacques Babinet.\*\*

From these basic units, all other units are defined by multiplication and division. Thus, all SI units have the following properties:

- SI units form a system with *state-of-the-art precision*: all units are defined with a precision that is higher than the precision of commonly used measurements. Moreover, the precision of the definitions is regularly being improved. The present relative uncertainty of the definition of the second is around  $10^{-14}$ , for the metre about  $10^{-10}$ , for the kilogram about  $10^{-9}$ , for the ampere  $10^{-7}$ , for the mole less than  $10^{-6}$ , for the kelvin  $10^{-6}$  and for the candela  $10^{-3}$ .
- SI units form an *absolute* system: all units are defined in such a way that they can be reproduced in every suitably equipped laboratory, independently, and with high precision. This avoids as much as possible any error or misuse by the standard-setting organization. In fact, the SI units are as now as near as possible to Planck’s natural units, which are presented below. In practice, the SI is now an international standard defining the numerical values of the seven constants  $\Delta\nu_{\text{Cs}}$ ,  $c$ ,  $\hbar$ ,  $e$ ,  $k$ ,  $N_A$  and  $K_{\text{cd}}$ . After over 200 years of discussions, the CGPM has little left to do.
- SI units form a *practical* system: the base units are quantities of everyday magnitude. Frequently used units have standard names and abbreviations. The complete list includes the seven base units just given, the supplementary units, the derived units and the admitted units.

The *supplementary* SI units are two: the unit for (plane) angle, defined as the ratio of arc length to radius, is the *radian* (rad). For solid angle, defined as the ratio of the subtended area to the square of the radius, the unit is the *steradian* (sr).

The *derived* units with special names, in their official English spelling, i.e., without capital letters and accents, are:

---

\* The symbols of the seven units are s, m, kg, A, K, mol and cd. The full offical definitions are found at [www.bipm.org](http://www.bipm.org). For more details about the levels of the caesium atom, consult a book on atomic physics. The Celsius scale of temperature  $\theta$  is defined as:  $\theta/\text{°C} = T/\text{K} - 273.15$ ; note the small difference with the number appearing in the definition of the kelvin. In the definition of the candela, the frequency of the light corresponds to 555.5 nm, i.e., green colour, around the wavelength to which the eye is most sensitive.

\*\* Jacques Babinet (1794–1874), French physicist who published important work in optics.

NAME	ABBREVIATION	NAME	ABBREVIATION
hertz	$\text{Hz} = 1/\text{s}$	newton	$\text{N} = \text{kg m/s}^2$
pascal	$\text{Pa} = \text{N/m}^2 = \text{kg/m s}^2$	joule	$\text{J} = \text{Nm} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{s}^2$
watt	$\text{W} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{s}^3$	coulomb	$\text{C} = \text{As}$
volt	$\text{V} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{As}^3$	farad	$\text{F} = \text{As/V} = \text{A}^2\text{s}^4/\text{kg m}^2$
ohm	$\Omega = \text{V/A} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{A}^2\text{s}^3$	siemens	$\text{S} = 1/\Omega$
weber	$\text{Wb} = \text{Vs} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{As}^2$	tesla	$\text{T} = \text{Wb/m}^2 = \text{kg/As}^2 = \text{kg/Cs}$
henry	$\text{H} = \text{Vs/A} = \text{kg m}^2/\text{A}^2\text{s}^2$	degree Celsius	${}^\circ\text{C}$ (see definition of kelvin)
lumen	$\text{lm} = \text{cd sr}$	lux	$\text{lx} = \text{lm/m}^2 = \text{cd sr/m}^2$
becquerel	$\text{Bq} = 1/\text{s}$	gray	$\text{Gy} = \text{J/kg} = \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$
sievert	$\text{Sv} = \text{J/kg} = \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$	katal	$\text{kat} = \text{mol/s}$

We note that in all definitions of units, the kilogram only appears to the powers of 1, 0 and  $-1$ . Can you try to formulate the reason?

The *admitted* non-SI units are *minute*, *hour*, *day* (for time), *degree*  $1^\circ = \pi/180 \text{ rad}$ , *minute*  $1' = \pi/10\,800 \text{ rad}$ , *second*  $1'' = \pi/648\,000 \text{ rad}$  (for angles), *litre*, and *tonne*. All other units are to be avoided.

All SI units are made more practical by the introduction of standard names and abbreviations for the powers of ten, the so-called *prefixes*.\*

POWER NAME	POWER NAME	POWER NAME	POWER NAME
$10^1$ deca da	$10^{-1}$ deci d	$10^{18}$ Exa E	$10^{-18}$ atto a
$10^2$ hecto h	$10^{-2}$ centi c	$10^{21}$ Zetta Z	$10^{-21}$ zepto z
$10^3$ kilo k	$10^{-3}$ milli m	$10^{24}$ Yotta Y	$10^{-24}$ yocto y
$10^6$ Mega M	$10^{-6}$ micro $\mu$	unofficial:	Ref. 153
$10^9$ Giga G	$10^{-9}$ nano n	$10^{27}$ Xenta X	$10^{-27}$ xenno x
$10^{12}$ Tera T	$10^{-12}$ pico p	$10^{30}$ Wekta W	$10^{-30}$ weko w
$10^{15}$ Peta P	$10^{-15}$ femto f	$10^{33}$ Vendekta V	$10^{-33}$ vendeko v
		$10^{36}$ Udekta U	$10^{-36}$ udeko u

- SI units form a *complete* system: they cover in a systematic way the full set of observables of physics. Moreover, they fix the units of measurement for all other sciences as well.

\* Some of these names are invented (yocto to sound similar to Latin *octo* ‘eight’, zepto to sound similar to Latin *septem*, yotta and zetta to resemble them, exa and peta to sound like the Greek words *έξακις* and *πεντάκις* for ‘six times’ and ‘five times’, the unofficial ones to sound similar to the Greek words for nine, ten, eleven and twelve); some are from Danish/Norwegian (atto from *atten* ‘eighteen’, femto from *femten* ‘fifteen’); some are from Latin (from *mille* ‘thousand’, from *centum* ‘hundred’, from *decem* ‘ten’, from *nanus* ‘dwarf’); some are from Italian (from *piccolo* ‘small’); some are Greek (micro is from *μικρός* ‘small’, deca/deka from *δέκα* ‘ten’, hecto from *έκατόν* ‘hundred’, kilo from *χίλιοι* ‘thousand’, mega from *μέγας* ‘large’, giga from *γίγας* ‘giant’, tera from *τέρας* ‘monster’).

Translate: I was caught in such a traffic jam that I needed a microcentury for a picoparsec and that my car’s fuel consumption was two tenths of a square millimetre.

- SI units form a *universal* system: they can be used in trade, in industry, in commerce, at home, in education and in research. They could even be used by extraterrestrial civilizations, if they existed.
- SI units form a *self-consistent* system: the product or quotient of two SI units is also an SI unit. This means that in principle, the same abbreviation, e.g. ‘SI’, could be used for every unit.

The SI units are not the only possible set that could fulfil all these requirements, but they are the only existing system that does so.\*

### THE MEANING OF MEASUREMENT

Challenge 163 e

Every measurement is a comparison with a standard. Therefore, any measurement requires *matter* to realize the standard (even for a speed standard), and *radiation* to achieve the comparison. The concept of measurement thus assumes that matter and radiation exist and can be clearly separated from each other.

Every measurement is a comparison. Measuring thus implies that space and time exist, and that they differ from each other.

Every measurement produces a measurement result. Therefore, every measurement implies the *storage* of the result. The process of measurement thus implies that the situation before and after the measurement can be distinguished. In other terms, every measurement is an *irreversible* process.

Every measurement is a process. Thus every measurement takes a certain amount of time and a certain amount of space.

All these properties of measurements are simple but important. Beware of anybody who denies them.

### PLANCK'S NATURAL UNITS

Challenge 164 e

Since the exact form of many equations depends on the system of units used, theoretical physicists often use unit systems optimized for producing simple equations. The chosen units and the values of the constants of nature are related. In microscopic physics, the system of *Planck's natural units* is frequently used. They are defined by setting  $c = 1$ ,  $\hbar = 1$ ,  $G = 1$ ,  $k = 1$ ,  $\epsilon_0 = 1/4\pi$  and  $\mu_0 = 4\pi$ . Planck units are thus defined from combinations of fundamental constants; those corresponding to the fundamental SI units are given in Table 10.\*\* The table is also useful for converting equations written in natural units back to SI units: just substitute every quantity  $X$  by  $X/X_{\text{Pl}}$ .

---

\* Apart from international units, there are also *provincial* units. Most provincial units still in use are of Roman origin. The mile comes from *milia passum*, which used to be one thousand (double) strides of about 1480 mm each; today a nautical mile, once defined as minute of arc on the Earth's surface, is defined as exactly 1852 m. The inch comes from *uncia/onzia* (a twelfth – now of a foot). The pound (from *pondere* ‘to weigh’) is used as a translation of *libra* – balance – which is the origin of its abbreviation lb. Even the habit of counting in dozens instead of tens is Roman in origin. These and all other similarly funny units – like the system in which all units start with ‘f’, and which uses furlong/fortnight as its unit of velocity – are now officially defined as multiples of SI units.

\*\* The natural units  $x_{\text{Pl}}$  given here are those commonly used today, i.e., those defined using the constant  $\hbar$ , and not, as Planck originally did, by using the constant  $h = 2\pi\hbar$ . The electromagnetic units can also be defined with other factors than  $4\pi\epsilon_0$  in the expressions: for example, using  $4\pi\epsilon_0\alpha$ , with the *fine-structure constant*  $\alpha$ , gives  $q_{\text{Pl}} = e$ . For the explanation of the numbers between brackets, see below.

TABLE 10 Planck's (uncorrected) natural units.

NAME	DEFINITION	VALUE
<b>Basic units</b>		
the Planck length	$l_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar G/c^3}$	= $1.6160(12) \cdot 10^{-35} \text{ m}$
the Planck time	$t_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar G/c^5}$	= $5.3906(40) \cdot 10^{-44} \text{ s}$
the Planck mass	$m_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar c/G}$	= $21.767(16) \mu\text{g}$
the Planck current	$I_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{4\pi\epsilon_0 c^6/G}$	= $3.4793(22) \cdot 10^{25} \text{ A}$
the Planck temperature	$T_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar c^5/Gk^2}$	= $1.4171(91) \cdot 10^{32} \text{ K}$
<b>Trivial units</b>		
the Planck velocity	$v_{\text{Pl}} = c$	= $0.3 \text{ Gm/s}$
the Planck angular momentum	$L_{\text{Pl}} = \hbar$	= $1.1 \cdot 10^{-34} \text{ Js}$
the Planck action	$S_{\text{aPl}} = \hbar$	= $1.1 \cdot 10^{-34} \text{ Js}$
the Planck entropy	$S_{\text{ePl}} = k$	= $13.8 \text{ yJ/K}$
<b>Composed units</b>		
the Planck mass density	$\rho_{\text{Pl}} = c^5/G^2\hbar$	= $5.2 \cdot 10^{96} \text{ kg/m}^3$
the Planck energy	$E_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar c^5/G}$	= $2.0 \text{ GJ} = 1.2 \cdot 10^{28} \text{ eV}$
the Planck momentum	$p_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar c^3/G}$	= $6.5 \text{ Ns}$
the Planck power	$P_{\text{Pl}} = c^5/G$	= $3.6 \cdot 10^{52} \text{ W}$
the Planck force	$F_{\text{Pl}} = c^4/G$	= $1.2 \cdot 10^{44} \text{ N}$
the Planck pressure	$p_{\text{Pl}} = c^7/G\hbar$	= $4.6 \cdot 10^{113} \text{ Pa}$
the Planck acceleration	$a_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{c^7/\hbar G}$	= $5.6 \cdot 10^{51} \text{ m/s}^2$
the Planck frequency	$f_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{c^5/\hbar G}$	= $1.9 \cdot 10^{43} \text{ Hz}$
the Planck electric charge	$q_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{4\pi\epsilon_0 c\hbar}$	= $1.9 \text{ aC} = 11.7 \text{ e}$
the Planck voltage	$U_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{c^4/4\pi\epsilon_0 G}$	= $1.0 \cdot 10^{27} \text{ V}$
the Planck resistance	$R_{\text{Pl}} = 1/4\pi\epsilon_0 c$	= $30.0 \Omega$
the Planck capacitance	$C_{\text{Pl}} = 4\pi\epsilon_0 \sqrt{\hbar G/c^3}$	= $1.8 \cdot 10^{-45} \text{ F}$
the Planck inductance	$L_{\text{Pl}} = (1/4\pi\epsilon_0) \sqrt{\hbar G/c^7}$	= $1.6 \cdot 10^{-42} \text{ H}$
the Planck electric field	$E_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{c^7/4\pi\epsilon_0 \hbar G^2}$	= $6.5 \cdot 10^{61} \text{ V/m}$
the Planck magnetic flux density	$B_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{c^5/4\pi\epsilon_0 \hbar G^2}$	= $2.2 \cdot 10^{53} \text{ T}$

The natural units are important for another reason: whenever a quantity is sloppily called ‘infinitely small (or large)’, the correct expression is ‘as small (or as large) as the corresponding corrected Planck unit’. As explained throughout the text, and especially in the final part, this substitution is possible because almost all Planck units provide, within a correction factor of order 1, the extremal value for the corresponding observable – some an upper and some a lower limit. Unfortunately, these correction factors are not yet widely known. The exact extremal value for each observable in nature is obtained

Challenge 165 s when  $G$  is substituted by  $4G$  and  $4\pi\epsilon_0$  by  $4\pi\epsilon_0\alpha$  in all Planck quantities. These extremal values, or *corrected Planck units*, are the *true natural units*. To exceed the extremal values is possible only for some extensive quantities. (Can you find out which ones?)

### OTHER UNIT SYSTEMS

A central aim of research in high-energy physics is the calculation of the strengths of all interactions; therefore it is not practical to set the gravitational constant  $G$  to unity, as in the Planck system of units. For this reason, high-energy physicists often only set  $c = \hbar = k = 1$  and  $\mu_0 = 1/\epsilon_0 = 4\pi$ ,<sup>\*</sup> leaving only the gravitational constant  $G$  in the equations.

In this system, only one fundamental unit exists, but its choice is free. Often a standard length is chosen as the fundamental unit, length being the archetype of a measured quantity. The most important physical observables are then related by

$$\begin{aligned} 1/[l^2] &= [E]^2 = [F] = [B] = [E_{\text{electric}}] , \\ 1/[l] &= [E] = [m] = [p] = [a] = [f] = [I] = [U] = [T] , \\ 1 &= [v] = [q] = [e] = [R] = [S_{\text{action}}] = [S_{\text{entropy}}] = \hbar = c = k = [\alpha] , \quad (116) \\ [l] &= 1/[E] = [t] = [C] = [L] \quad \text{and} \\ [l]^2 &= 1/[E]^2 = [G] = [P] \end{aligned}$$

where we write  $[x]$  for the unit of quantity  $x$ . Using the same unit for time, capacitance and inductance is not to everybody's taste, however, and therefore electricians do not use this system.<sup>\*\*</sup>

Often, in order to get an impression of the energies needed to observe an effect under study, a standard energy is chosen as fundamental unit. In particle physics the most common energy unit is the *electron volt* eV, defined as the kinetic energy acquired by an electron when accelerated by an electrical potential difference of 1 volt ('proton volt' would be a better name). Therefore one has  $1 \text{ eV} = 1.6 \cdot 10^{-19} \text{ J}$ , or roughly

$$1 \text{ eV} \approx \frac{1}{6} \text{ aJ} \quad (117)$$

which is easily remembered. The simplification  $c = \hbar = 1$  yields  $G = 6.9 \cdot 10^{-57} \text{ eV}^{-2}$  and allows one to use the unit eV also for mass, momentum, temperature, frequency, time and length, with the respective correspondences  $1 \text{ eV} \equiv 1.8 \cdot 10^{-36} \text{ kg} \equiv 5.4 \cdot 10^{-28} \text{ Ns} \equiv 242 \text{ THz} \equiv 11.6 \text{ kK}$  and  $1 \text{ eV}^{-1} \equiv 4.1 \text{ fs} \equiv 1.2 \mu\text{m}$ .

Challenge 166 e

Ref. 154

<sup>\*</sup> Other definitions for the proportionality constants in electrodynamics lead to the Gaussian unit system often used in theoretical calculations, the Heaviside–Lorentz unit system, the electrostatic unit system, and the electromagnetic unit system, among others.

<sup>\*\*</sup> In the list,  $l$  is length,  $E$  energy,  $F$  force,  $E_{\text{electric}}$  the electric and  $B$  the magnetic field,  $m$  mass,  $p$  momentum,  $a$  acceleration,  $f$  frequency,  $I$  electric current,  $U$  voltage,  $T$  temperature,  $v$  speed,  $q$  charge,  $R$  resistance,  $P$  power,  $G$  the gravitational constant.

The web page [www.chemie.fu-berlin.de/chemistry/general/units\\_en.html](http://www.chemie.fu-berlin.de/chemistry/general/units_en.html) provides a tool to convert various units into each other.

Researchers in general relativity often use another system, in which the *Schwarzschild radius*  $r_s = 2Gm/c^2$  is used to measure masses, by setting  $c = G = 1$ . In this case, mass and length have the *same* dimension, and  $\hbar$  has the dimension of an area.

**Ref. 155** To get some feeling for the unit eV, the following relations are useful. Room temperature, usually taken as 20°C or 293 K, corresponds to a kinetic energy per particle of 0.025 eV or 4.0 nJ. The highest particle energy measured so far belongs to a cosmic ray with an energy of  $3 \cdot 10^{20}$  eV or 48 J. Down here on the Earth, an accelerator able to produce an energy of about 105 GeV or 17 nJ for electrons and antielectrons has been built, and one able to produce an energy of 14 TeV or 2.2 μJ for protons will be finished soon. Both are owned by CERN in Geneva and have a circumference of 27 km.

**Ref. 156** The lowest temperature measured up to now is 280 pK, in a system of rhodium nuclei held inside a special cooling system. The interior of that cryostat may even be the coolest point in the whole universe. The kinetic energy per particle corresponding to that temperature is also the smallest ever measured: it corresponds to 24 feV or  $3.8 \text{ vJ} = 3.8 \cdot 10^{-33} \text{ J}$ . For isolated particles, the record seems to be for neutrons: kinetic energies as low as  $10^{-7}$  eV have been achieved, corresponding to de Broglie wavelengths of 60 nm.

### CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES ABOUT UNITS

**Ref. 157** The Planck length is roughly the de Broglie wavelength  $\lambda_B = h/mv$  of a man walking comfortably ( $m = 80 \text{ kg}$ ,  $v = 0.5 \text{ m/s}$ ); this motion is therefore aptly called the ‘Planck stroll.’

\* \*

The Planck mass is equal to the mass of about  $10^{19}$  protons. This is roughly the mass of a human embryo at about ten days of age.

\* \*

**Ref. 158** The most precisely measured quantities in nature are the frequencies of certain millisecond pulsars, the frequency of certain narrow atomic transitions, and the Rydberg constant of *atomic* hydrogen, which can all be measured as precisely as the second is defined. The caesium transition that defines the second has a finite linewidth that limits the achievable precision: the limit is about 14 digits.

\* \*

**Ref. 159** The most precise clock ever built, using microwaves, had a stability of  $10^{-16}$  during a running time of 500 s. For longer time periods, the record in 1997 was about  $10^{-15}$ ; but

**Ref. 160** values around  $10^{-17}$  seem within technological reach. The precision of clocks is limited for short measuring times by noise, and for long measuring times by drifts, i.e., by systematic effects. The region of highest stability depends on the clock type; it usually lies between 1 ms for optical clocks and 5000 s for masers. Pulsars are the only type of clock for which this region is not known yet; it certainly lies at more than 20 years, the time elapsed at the time of writing since their discovery.

\* \*

**Ref. 161** The shortest times measured are the lifetimes of certain ‘elementary’ particles. In particular, the lifetime of certain D mesons have been measured at less than  $10^{-23}$  s. Such times are measured using a bubble chamber, where the track is photographed. Can you

**Challenge 167 s** estimate how long the track is? (This is a trick question – if your length cannot be observed with an optical microscope, you have made a mistake in your calculation.)

\* \*

The longest times encountered in nature are the lifetimes of certain radioisotopes, over  $10^{15}$  years, and the lower limit of certain proton decays, over  $10^{32}$  years. These times are thus much larger than the age of the universe, estimated to be fourteen thousand million years.

**Ref. 162**

\* \*

Variations of quantities are often much easier to measure than their values. For example, in gravitational wave detectors, the sensitivity achieved in 1992 was  $\Delta l/l = 3 \cdot 10^{-19}$  for lengths of the order of 1 m. In other words, for a block of about a cubic metre of metal it is possible to measure length changes about 3000 times smaller than a proton radius. These set-ups are now being superseded by ring interferometers. Ring interferometers measuring frequency differences of  $10^{-21}$  have already been built; and they are still being improved.

**Ref. 163****Ref. 164**

### PRECISION AND ACCURACY OF MEASUREMENTS

Measurements are the basis of physics. Every measurement has an *error*. Errors are due to lack of precision or to lack of accuracy. *Precision* means how well a result is reproduced when the measurement is repeated; *accuracy* is the degree to which a measurement corresponds to the actual value.

Lack of precision is due to accidental or *random errors*; they are best measured by the *standard deviation*, usually abbreviated  $\sigma$ ; it is defined through

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2, \quad (118)$$

where  $\bar{x}$  is the average of the measurements  $x_i$ . (Can you imagine why  $n-1$  is used in the formula instead of  $n$ ?)

**Challenge 168 s**

For most experiments, the distribution of measurement values tends towards a normal distribution, also called *Gaussian distribution*, whenever the number of measurements is increased. The distribution, shown in Figure 85, is described by the expression

$$N(x) \approx e^{-\frac{(x-\bar{x})^2}{2\sigma^2}}. \quad (119)$$

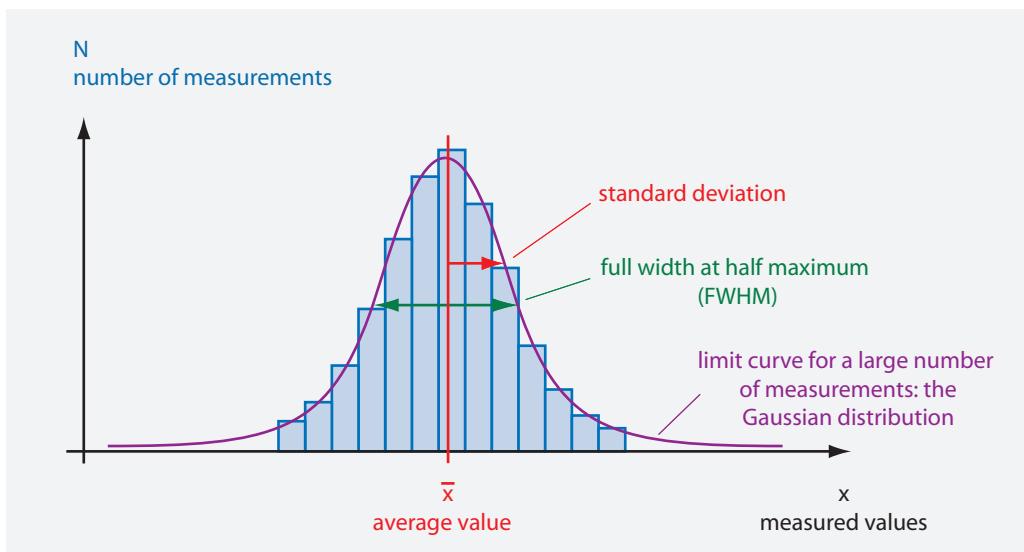
**Challenge 169 e**

The square  $\sigma^2$  of the standard deviation is also called the *variance*. For a Gaussian distribution of measurement values,  $2.35\sigma$  is the full width at half maximum.

**Ref. 165**

Lack of accuracy is due to *systematic errors*; usually these can only be estimated. This estimate is often added to the random errors to produce a *total experimental error*, sometimes also called *total uncertainty*. The *relative error* or uncertainty is the ratio between the error and the measured value.

For example, a professional measurement will give a result such as  $0.312(6)$  m. The



**FIGURE 85** A precision experiment and its measurement distribution. The precision is high if the width of the distribution is narrow; the accuracy is high if the centre of the distribution agrees with the actual value.

number between the parentheses is the standard deviation  $\sigma$ , in units of the last digits. As above, a Gaussian distribution for the measurement results is assumed. Therefore, a value of  $0.312(6)$  m implies that the actual value is expected to lie

- within  $1\sigma$  with 68.3 % probability, thus in this example within  $0.312 \pm 0.006$  m;
- within  $2\sigma$  with 95.4 % probability, thus in this example within  $0.312 \pm 0.012$  m;
- within  $3\sigma$  with 99.73 % probability, thus in this example within  $0.312 \pm 0.018$  m;
- within  $4\sigma$  with 99.9937 % probability, thus in this example within  $0.312 \pm 0.024$  m;
- within  $5\sigma$  with 99.999 943 % probability, thus in this example within  $0.312 \pm 0.030$  m;
- within  $6\sigma$  with 99.999 999 80 % probability, thus within  $0.312 \pm 0.036$  m;
- within  $7\sigma$  with 99.999 999 999 74 % probability, thus within  $0.312 \pm 0.041$  m.

Challenge 170 e

(Do the latter numbers make sense?)

Note that standard deviations have one digit; you must be a world expert to use two, and a fool to use more. If no standard deviation is given, a (1) is assumed. As a result, among professionals, 1 km and 1000 m are *not* the same length!

What happens to the errors when two measured values  $A$  and  $B$  are added or subtracted? If the all measurements are independent – or uncorrelated – the standard deviation of the sum *and* that of difference is given by  $\sigma = \sqrt{\sigma_A^2 + \sigma_B^2}$ . For both the product or ratio of two measured and uncorrelated values  $C$  and  $D$ , the result is  $\rho = \sqrt{\rho_C^2 + \rho_D^2}$ , where the  $\rho$  terms are the *relative* standard deviations.

Challenge 172 s

Assume you measure that an object moves 1 m in 3 s: what is the measured speed value?

Challenge 173 e  
Vol. VI, page 94

### LIMITS TO PRECISION

What are the limits to accuracy and precision? There is no way, even in principle, to measure a length  $x$  to a *precision* higher than about 61 digits, because in nature, the ratio between the largest and the smallest measurable length is  $\Delta x/x > l_{\text{Pl}}/d_{\text{horizon}} = 10^{-61}$ . (Is this ratio valid also for force or for volume?) In the final volume of our text, studies of clocks and metre bars strengthen this theoretical limit.

But it is not difficult to deduce more stringent practical limits. No imaginable machine can measure quantities with a higher precision than measuring the diameter of the Earth within the smallest length ever measured, about  $10^{-19}$  m; that is about 26 digits of precision. Using a more realistic limit of a 1000 m sized machine implies a limit of 22 digits. If, as predicted above, time measurements really achieve 17 digits of precision, then they are nearing the practical limit, because apart from size, there is an additional practical restriction: cost. Indeed, an additional digit in measurement precision often means an additional digit in equipment cost.

### PHYSICAL CONSTANTS

In physics, general observations are deduced from more fundamental ones. As a consequence, many measurements can be deduced from more fundamental ones. The most fundamental measurements are those of the physical constants.

Ref. 166

The following tables give the world's best values of the most important physical constants and particle properties – in SI units and in a few other common units – as published in the standard references. The values are the world averages of the best measurements made up to the present. As usual, experimental errors, including both random and estimated systematic errors, are expressed by giving the standard deviation in the last digits. In fact, behind each of the numbers in the following tables there is a long story which is worth telling, but for which there is not enough room here.

Ref. 167  
Vol. V, page 262

In principle, *all* quantitative properties of matter can be calculated with quantum theory – more precisely, equations of the standard model of particle – and a set of *basic* physical constants that are given in the next table. For example, the colour, density and elastic properties of any material can be predicted, in principle, in this way.

TABLE 11 Basic physical constants.

QUANTITY	SYMBOL	VALUE IN SI UNITS	UNCERT. <sup>a</sup>
<b>Constants that define the SI measurement units</b>			
Vacuum speed of light <sup>c</sup>	$c$	299 792 458 m/s	0
Original Planck constant <sup>c</sup>	$h$	$6.626\,070\,15 \cdot 10^{-34}$ Js	0
Reduced Planck constant, quantum of action	$\hbar$	$1.054\,571\,817 \dots \cdot 10^{-34}$ Js	0
Positron charge <sup>c</sup>	$e$	0.160 217 6634 aC	0
Boltzmann constant <sup>c</sup>	$k$	$1.380\,649 \cdot 10^{-23}$ J/K	0
Avogadro's number	$N_A$	$6.022\,140\,76 \cdot 10^{23}$ 1/mol	0
<b>Constant that <i>should</i> define the SI measurement units</b>			

TABLE 11 (Continued) Basic physical constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E I N S I U N I T S	U N C E R T. <sup>a</sup>
Gravitational constant	$G$	$6.674\,30(15) \cdot 10^{-11} \text{ Nm}^2/\text{kg}^2$	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-5}$
<b>Other fundamental constants</b>			
Number of space-time dimensions		$3 + 1$	$0^b$
Fine-structure constant <sup>d</sup> or $\alpha = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0\hbar c}$		$1/137.035\,999\,084(21)$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
e.m. coupling constant $= g_{\text{em}}(m_e^2 c^2)$		$= 0.007\,297\,352\,5693(11)$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Fermi coupling constant <sup>d</sup> or $G_F/(\hbar c)^3$		$1.166\,3787(6) \cdot 10^{-5} \text{ GeV}^{-2}$	$5.1 \cdot 10^{-7}$
weak coupling constant $\alpha_w(M_Z) = g_w^2/4\pi$		$1/30.1(3)$	$1 \cdot 10^{-2}$
Strong coupling constant <sup>d</sup> $\alpha_s(M_Z) = g_s^2/4\pi$		$0.1179(10)$	$8.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Weak mixing angle		$\sin^2 \theta_W(\overline{\text{MS}})$ $\sin^2 \theta_W$ (on shell) $= 1 - (m_W/m_Z)^2$	$0.231\,22(4)$ $0.222\,90(30)$ $1.7 \cdot 10^{-4}$ $1.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$
CKM quark mixing matrix	$ V $	$\begin{pmatrix} 0.97383(24) & 0.2272(10) & 0.00396(9) \\ 0.2271(10) & 0.97296(24) & 0.04221(80) \\ 0.00814(64) & 0.04161(78) & 0.999100(34) \end{pmatrix}$	
Jarlskog invariant	$J$	$3.08(18) \cdot 10^{-5}$	
PMNS neutrino mixing m.	$ P $	$\begin{pmatrix} 0.82(2) & 0.55(4) & 0.150(7) \\ 0.37(13) & 0.57(11) & 0.71(7) \\ 0.41(13) & 0.59(10) & 0.69(7) \end{pmatrix}$	
Electron mass	$m_e$	$9.109\,383\,7015(28) \cdot 10^{-31} \text{ kg}$ $5.485\,799\,090\,65(16) \cdot 10^{-4} \text{ u}$ $0.510\,998\,950\,00(15) \text{ MeV}$	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$ $2.9 \cdot 10^{-11}$ $3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Muon mass	$m_\mu$	$1.883\,531\,627(42) \cdot 10^{-28} \text{ kg}$ $105.658\,3755(23) \text{ MeV}$	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-8}$ $2.2 \cdot 10^{-8}$
Tau mass	$m_\tau$	$1.776\,82(12) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	$6.8 \cdot 10^{-5}$
El. neutrino mass	$m_{\nu_e}$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$	
Muon neutrino mass	$m_{\nu_\mu}$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$	
Tau neutrino mass	$m_{\nu_\tau}$	$< 2 \text{ eV}/c^2$	
Up quark mass	$u$	$21.6(+0.49 / - 0.26) \text{ MeV}/c^2$	
Down quark mass	$d$	$4.67(+0.48 / - 0.17) \text{ MeV}/c^2$	
Strange quark mass	$s$	$93(+11 / - 5) \text{ MeV}/c^2$	
Charm quark mass	$c$	$1.27(2) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Bottom quark mass	$b$	$4.18(3) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Top quark mass	$t$	$172.9(0.4) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Photon mass	$\gamma$	$< 2 \cdot 10^{-54} \text{ kg}$	
W boson mass	$W^\pm$	$80.379(12) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Z boson mass	$Z^0$	$91.1876(21) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Higgs mass	$H$	$125.10(14) \text{ GeV}/c^2$	
Gluon mass	$g_{1\dots 8}$	$c. 0 \text{ MeV}/c^2$	

a. Uncertainty: standard deviation of measurement errors.

b. Measured from to  $10^{-19}$  m to  $10^{26}$  m.

c. Defining constant.

d. All coupling constants depend on the 4-momentum transfer, as explained in the section on renormalization. *Fine-structure constant* is the traditional name for the electromagnetic coupling constant  $g_{\text{em}}$  in the case of a 4-momentum transfer of  $Q^2 = m_e^2 c^2$ , which is the smallest one possible. At higher momentum transfers it has larger values, e.g.,  $g_{\text{em}}(Q^2 = M_W^2 c^2) \approx 1/128$ . In contrast, the strong coupling constant has lower values at higher momentum transfers; e.g.,  $\alpha_s(34 \text{ GeV}) = 0.14(2)$ .

Page 132

Why do all these basic constants have the values they have? For any basic constant *with a dimension*, such as the quantum of action  $\hbar$ , the numerical value has only historical meaning. It is  $1.054 \cdot 10^{-34} \text{ Js}$  because of the SI definition of the joule and the second. The question why the value of a *dimensional* constant is not larger or smaller therefore always requires one to understand the origin of some *dimensionless* number giving the ratio between the constant and the corresponding *natural unit* that is defined with  $c$ ,  $G$ ,  $k$ ,  $N_A$  and  $\hbar$ . Details and values for the natural units are given in the dedicated section.

Page 208

In other words, understanding the sizes of atoms, people, trees and stars, the duration of molecular and atomic processes, or the mass of nuclei and mountains, implies understanding the ratios between these values and the corresponding natural units. The key to understanding nature is thus the understanding of all measurement ratios, and thus of all dimensionless constants. This quest, including the understanding of the fine-structure constant  $\alpha$  itself, is completed only in the final volume of our adventure.

The basic constants yield the following useful high-precision observations.

TABLE 12 Derived physical constants.

QUANTITY	SYMBOL	VALUE IN SI UNITS	UNCERT.
Vacuum permeability	$\mu_0$	$1.256\,637\,062\,12(19) \mu\text{H}/\text{m}$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Vacuum permittivity	$\epsilon_0 = 1/\mu_0 c^2$	$8.854\,187\,8128(13) \text{ pF}/\text{m}$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Vacuum impedance	$Z_0 = \sqrt{\mu_0/\epsilon_0}$	$376.730\,313\,668(57) \Omega$	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Loschmidt's number at 273.15 K and 101 325 Pa	$N_L$	$2.686\,780\,111\dots \cdot 10^{25} \text{ 1/m}^3$	0
Faraday's constant	$F = N_A e$	$96\,485.332\,12\dots \text{ C/mol}$	0
Universal gas constant	$R = N_A k$	$8.314\,462\,618\dots \text{ J/(mol K)}$	0
Molar volume of an ideal gas at 273.15 K and 101 325 Pa	$V = RT/p$	$22.413\,969\,54\dots \text{ l/mol}$	0
Rydberg constant <sup>a</sup>	$R_\infty = m_e c \alpha^2 / 2h$	$10\,973\,731.568\,160(21) \text{ m}^{-1}$	$1.9 \cdot 10^{-12}$
Conductance quantum	$G_0 = 2e^2/h$	$77.480\,917\,29\dots \mu\text{S}$	0
Magnetic flux quantum	$\varphi_0 = h/2e$	$2.067\,833\,848\dots \text{ fWb}$	0
Josephson frequency ratio	$2e/h$	$483.597\,8484\dots \text{ THz/V}$	0
Von Klitzing constant	$h/e^2 = \mu_0 c / 2\alpha$	$25\,812.807\,45\dots \Omega$	0
Bohr magneton	$\mu_B = e\hbar / 2m_e$	$9.274\,010\,0783(28) \text{ yJ/T}$	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Classical electron radius	$r_e = e^2 / 4\pi\epsilon_0 m_e c^2$	$2.817\,940\,3262(13) \text{ fm}$	$4.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Compton wavelength of the electron	$\lambda_C = h/m_e c$	$2.426\,310\,238\,67(73) \text{ pm}$	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
	$\lambda_c = \hbar/m_e c = r_e/\alpha$	$0.386\,159\,267\,96(12) \text{ pm}$	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$

TABLE 12 (Continued) Derived physical constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E I N S I U N I T S	U N C E R T .
Bohr radius <sup>a</sup>	$a_{\infty} = r_e/\alpha^2$	52.917 721 0903(80) pm	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Quantum of circulation	$h/2m_e$	3.636 947 5516(11) cm <sup>2</sup> /s	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Specific positron charge	$e/m_e$	175.882 001 076(55) GC/kg	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Cyclotron frequency of the electron	$f_c/B = e/2\pi m_e$	27.992 489 872(9) GHz/T	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Electron magnetic moment	$\mu_e$	-9.284 764 7043(28) yJ/T	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
	$\mu_e/\mu_B$	-1.001 159 652 181 28(18)	$1.7 \cdot 10^{-13}$
	$\mu_e/\mu_N$	-1 838.281 971 88(11) · 10 <sup>3</sup>	$6.0 \cdot 10^{-11}$
Electron g-factor	$g_e$	-2.002 319 304 362 56(35)	$1.7 \cdot 10^{-13}$
Muon-electron mass ratio	$m_{\mu}/m_e$	206.768 2830(46)	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-8}$
Muon magnetic moment	$\mu_{\mu}$	-4.490 448 30(10) · 10 <sup>-26</sup> J/T	$2.2 \cdot 10^{-8}$
Muon g-factor	$g_{\mu}$	-2.002 331 8418(13)	$6.3 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Atomic mass unit	$1 \text{ u} = m_{^{12}\text{C}}/12$	1.660 539 066 60(50) · 10 <sup>-27</sup> kg	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton mass	$m_p$	1.672 621 923 69(51) · 10 <sup>-27</sup> kg	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$
		1.007 276 466 621(53) u	$5.3 \cdot 10^{-11}$
		938.272 088 16(29) MeV	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton-electron mass ratio	$m_p/m_e$	1 836.152 673 43(11)	$6.0 \cdot 10^{-11}$
Specific proton charge	$e/m_p$	9.578 833 1560(29) · 10 <sup>7</sup> C/kg	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton Compton wavelength	$\lambda_{C,p} = h/m_p c$	1.321 409 855 39(40) fm	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Nuclear magneton	$\mu_N = e\hbar/2m_p$	5.050 783 7461(15) · 10 <sup>-27</sup> J/T	$3.1 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton magnetic moment	$\mu_p$	1.410 606 797 36(60) · 10 <sup>-26</sup> J/T	$4.2 \cdot 10^{-10}$
	$\mu_p/\mu_B$	1.521 032 202 30(46) · 10 <sup>-3</sup>	$3.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
	$\mu_p/\mu_N$	2.792 847 344 63(82)	$2.9 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton gyromagnetic ratio	$\gamma_p = 2\mu_p/h$	42.577 478 518(18) MHz/T	$4.2 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Proton g factor	$g_p$	5.585 694 6893(16)	$2.9 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Neutron mass	$m_n$	1.674 927 498 04(95) · 10 <sup>-27</sup> kg	$5.7 \cdot 10^{-10}$
		1.008 664 915 95(43) u	$4.8 \cdot 10^{-10}$
		939.565 420 52(54) MeV	$5.7 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Neutron-electron mass ratio	$m_n/m_e$	1 838.683 661 73(89)	$4.8 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Neutron-proton mass ratio	$m_n/m_p$	1.001 378 419 31(49)	$4.9 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Neutron Compton wavelength	$\lambda_{C,n} = h/m_n c$	1.319 590 905 81(75) fm	$5.7 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Neutron magnetic moment	$\mu_n$	-0.966 236 51(23) · 10 <sup>-26</sup> J/T	$2.4 \cdot 10^{-7}$
	$\mu_n/\mu_B$	-1.041 875 63(25) · 10 <sup>-3</sup>	$2.4 \cdot 10^{-7}$
	$\mu_n/\mu_N$	-1.913 042 73(45)	$2.4 \cdot 10^{-7}$
Stefan-Boltzmann constant	$\sigma = \pi^2 k^4 / 60 \hbar^3 c^2$	56.703 744 19... nW/m <sup>2</sup> K <sup>4</sup>	0
Wien's displacement constant	$b = \lambda_{\max} T$	2.897 771 955... mmK	0
		58.789 257 57... GHz/K	0
Electron volt	eV	0.160 217 6634... aJ	0
Bits to entropy conversion const. $k \ln 2$		$10^{23}$ bit = 0.956 994... J/K	0

**TABLE 12** (Continued) Derived physical constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E I N S I U N I T S	U N C E R T .
TNT energy content		3.7 to 4.0 MJ/kg	$4 \cdot 10^{-2}$

a. For infinite mass of the nucleus.

Some useful properties of our local environment are given in the following table.

**TABLE 13** Astronomical constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E
Tropical year 1900 <sup>a</sup>	<i>a</i>	31 556 925.9747 s
Tropical year 1994	<i>a</i>	31 556 925.2 s
Mean sidereal day	<i>d</i>	23 <sup>h</sup> 56'4.090 53"
Average distance Earth–Sun <sup>b</sup>		149 597 870.691(30) km
Astronomical unit <sup>b</sup>	AU	149 597 870 691 m
Light year, based on Julian year <sup>b</sup>	al	9.460 730 472 5808 Pm
Parsec	pc	30.856 775 806 Pm = 3.261 634 al
Earth's mass	$M_{\odot}$	$5.973(1) \cdot 10^{24}$ kg
Geocentric gravitational constant	GM	$3.986\ 004\ 418(8) \cdot 10^{14}$ m <sup>3</sup> /s <sup>2</sup>
Earth's gravitational length	$l_{\odot} = 2GM/c^2$	8.870 056 078(16) mm
Earth's equatorial radius <sup>c</sup>	$R_{\odot_{\text{eq}}}$	6378.1366(1) km
Earth's polar radius <sup>c</sup>	$R_{\odot_{\text{p}}}$	6356.752(1) km
Equator–pole distance <sup>c</sup>		10 001.966 km (average)
Earth's flattening <sup>c</sup>	$e_{\odot}$	1/298.25642(1)
Earth's av. density	$\rho_{\odot}$	5.5 Mg/m <sup>3</sup>
Earth's age	$T_{\odot}$	4.50(4) Ga = 142(2) Ps
Earth's normal gravity	$g$	9.806 65 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Earth's standard atmospher. pressure	$p_0$	101 325 Pa
Moon's radius	$R_{\mathbb{M}_{\text{v}}}$	1738 km in direction of Earth
Moon's radius	$R_{\mathbb{M}_{\text{h}}}$	1737.4 km in other two directions
Moon's mass	$M_{\mathbb{M}}$	$7.35 \cdot 10^{22}$ kg
Moon's mean distance <sup>d</sup>	$d_{\mathbb{M}}$	384 401 km
Moon's distance at perigee <sup>d</sup>		typically 363 Mm, historical minimum 359 861 km
Moon's distance at apogee <sup>d</sup>		typically 404 Mm, historical maximum 406 720 km
Moon's angular size <sup>e</sup>		average $0.5181^\circ = 31.08'$ , minimum $0.49^\circ$ , maximum $0.55^\circ$
Moon's average density	$\rho_{\mathbb{M}}$	3.3 Mg/m <sup>3</sup>
Moon's surface gravity	$g_{\mathbb{M}}$	1.62 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Moon's atmospheric pressure	$p_{\mathbb{M}}$	from $10^{-10}$ Pa (night) to $10^{-7}$ Pa (day)
Jupiter's mass	$M_{\mathbb{J}}$	$1.90 \cdot 10^{27}$ kg

TABLE 13 (Continued) Astronomical constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E
Jupiter's radius, equatorial	$R_{\text{J}}$	71.398 Mm
Jupiter's radius, polar	$R_{\text{J}}$	67.1(1) Mm
Jupiter's average distance from Sun	$D_{\text{J}}$	778 412 020 km
Jupiter's surface gravity	$g_{\text{J}}$	24.9 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Jupiter's atmospheric pressure	$p_{\text{J}}$	from 20 kPa to 200 kPa
Sun's mass	$M_{\odot}$	1.988 43(3) · 10 <sup>30</sup> kg
Sun's gravitational length	$2GM_{\odot}/c^2$	2.953 250 08(5) km
Heliocentric gravitational constant	$GM_{\odot}$	132.712 440 018(8) · 10 <sup>18</sup> m <sup>3</sup> /s <sup>2</sup>
Sun's luminosity	$L_{\odot}$	384.6 YW
Solar equatorial radius	$R_{\odot}$	695.98(7) Mm
Sun's angular size		0.53° average; minimum on fourth of July (aphelion) 1888 "", maximum on fourth of January (perihelion) 1952 "
Sun's average density	$\rho_{\odot}$	1.4 Mg/m <sup>3</sup>
Sun's average distance	AU	149 597 870.691(30) km
Sun's age	$T_{\odot}$	4.6 Ga
Solar velocity	$v_{\odot g}$	220(20) km/s around centre of galaxy
Solar velocity	$v_{\odot b}$	370.6(5) km/s against cosmic background
Sun's surface gravity	$g_{\odot}$	274 m/s <sup>2</sup>
Sun's lower photospheric pressure	$p_{\odot}$	15 kPa
Distance to Milky Way's centre		8.0(5) kpc = 26.1(1.6) kal
Milky Way's age		13.6 Ga
Milky Way's size		c. 10 <sup>21</sup> m or 100 kal
Milky Way's mass		10 <sup>12</sup> solar masses, c. 2 · 10 <sup>42</sup> kg
Most distant galaxy cluster known	SXDF-XCLJ 0218-0510	9.6 · 10 <sup>9</sup> al

Challenge 174 s  
Ref. 168

a. Defining constant, from vernal equinox to vernal equinox; it was once used to define the second. (Remember:  $\pi$  seconds is about a nanocentury.) The value for 1990 is about 0.7 s less, corresponding to a slowdown of roughly 0.2 ms/a. (Watch out: why?) There is even an empirical formula for the change of the length of the year over time.

b. The truly amazing precision in the average distance Earth–Sun of only 30 m results from time averages of signals sent from Viking orbiters and Mars landers taken over a period of over twenty years. Note that the International Astronomical Union distinguishes the average distance Earth–Sun from the *astronomical unit* itself; the latter is defined as a fixed and exact length. Also the *light year* is a unit defined as an exact number by the IAU. For more details, see [www.iau.org/public/measuring](http://www.iau.org/public/measuring).

c. The shape of the Earth is described most precisely with the World Geodetic System. The last edition dates from 1984. For an extensive presentation of its background and its details, see the

[www.wgs84.com](http://www.wgs84.com) website. The International Geodesic Union refined the data in 2000. The radii and the flattening given here are those for the ‘mean tide system’. They differ from those of the ‘zero tide system’ and other systems by about 0.7 m. The details constitute a science in itself.

*d.* Measured centre to centre. To find the precise position of the Moon at a given date, see the [www.fourmilab.ch/earthview/moon\\_ap\\_per.html](http://www.fourmilab.ch/earthview/moon_ap_per.html) page. For the planets, see the page [www.fourmilab.ch/solar/solar.html](http://www.fourmilab.ch/solar/solar.html) and the other pages on the same site.

*e.* Angles are defined as follows: 1 degree =  $1^\circ = \pi/180$  rad, 1 (first) minute =  $1' = 1^\circ/60$ , 1 second (minute) =  $1'' = 1'/60$ . The ancient units ‘third minute’ and ‘fourth minute’, each 1/60th of the preceding, are not in use any more. (‘Minute’ originally means ‘very small’, as it still does in modern English.)

Some properties of nature at large are listed in the following table. (If you want a challenge, can you determine whether any property of the universe itself is listed?)

Challenge 175 s

TABLE 14 Cosmological constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E
Cosmological constant	$\Lambda$	$c. 1 \cdot 10^{-52} \text{ m}^{-2}$
Age of the universe <sup>a</sup>	$t_0$	$4.333(53) \cdot 10^{17} \text{ s} = 13.8(0.1) \cdot 10^9 \text{ a}$ (determined from space-time, via expansion, using general relativity)
Age of the universe <sup>a</sup>	$t_0$	over $3.5(4) \cdot 10^{17} \text{ s} = 11.5(1.5) \cdot 10^9 \text{ a}$ (determined from matter, via galaxies and stars, using quantum theory)
Hubble parameter <sup>a</sup>	$H_0$	$2.3(2) \cdot 10^{-18} \text{ s}^{-1} = 0.73(4) \cdot 10^{-10} \text{ a}^{-1}$ $= h_0 \cdot 100 \text{ km/s Mpc} = h_0 \cdot 1.0227 \cdot 10^{-10} \text{ a}^{-1}$
Reduced Hubble parameter <sup>a</sup>	$h_0$	0.71(4)
Deceleration parameter <sup>a</sup>	$q_0 = -(\ddot{a}/a)_0/H_0^2$	-0.66(10)
Universe’s horizon distance <sup>a</sup>	$d_0 = 3ct_0$	$40.0(6) \cdot 10^{26} \text{ m} = 13.0(2) \text{ Gpc}$
Universe’s topology		trivial up to $10^{26} \text{ m}$
Number of space dimensions		3, for distances up to $10^{26} \text{ m}$
Critical density of the universe	$\rho_c = 3H_0^2/8\pi G$	$h_0^2 \cdot 1.878\,82(24) \cdot 10^{-26} \text{ kg/m}^3$ $= 0.95(12) \cdot 10^{-26} \text{ kg/m}^3$
(Total) density parameter <sup>a</sup>	$\Omega_0 = \rho_0/\rho_c$	1.02(2)
Baryon density parameter <sup>a</sup>	$\Omega_{B0} = \rho_{B0}/\rho_c$	0.044(4)
Cold dark matter density parameter <sup>a</sup>	$\Omega_{CDM0} = \rho_{CDM0}/\rho_c$	0.23(4)
Neutrino density parameter <sup>a</sup>	$\Omega_{\nu 0} = \rho_{\nu 0}/\rho_c$	0.001 to 0.05
Dark energy density parameter <sup>a</sup>	$\Omega_{X0} = \rho_{X0}/\rho_c$	0.73(4)
Dark energy state parameter	$w = p_X/\rho_X$	-1.0(2)
Baryon mass	$m_b$	$1.67 \cdot 10^{-27} \text{ kg}$
Baryon number density		$0.25(1) / \text{m}^3$
Luminous matter density		$3.8(2) \cdot 10^{-28} \text{ kg/m}^3$
Stars in the universe	$n_s$	$10^{22 \pm 1}$
Baryons in the universe	$n_b$	$10^{81 \pm 1}$
Microwave background temperature <sup>b</sup>	$T_0$	2.725(1) K
Photons in the universe	$n_\gamma$	$10^{89}$
Photon energy density	$\rho_\gamma = \pi^2 k^4/15T_0^4$	$4.6 \cdot 10^{-31} \text{ kg/m}^3$

TABLE 14 (Continued) Cosmological constants.

Q U A N T I T Y	S Y M B O L	V A L U E
Photon number density		$410.89 \text{ /cm}^3$ or $400 \text{ /cm}^3 (T_0/2.7 \text{ K})^3$
Density perturbation amplitude	$\sqrt{S'}$	$5.6(1.5) \cdot 10^{-6}$
Gravity wave amplitude	$\sqrt{T'}$	$< 0.71 \sqrt{S'}$
Mass fluctuations on 8 Mpc	$\sigma_8$	$0.84(4)$
Scalar index	$n$	$0.93(3)$
Running of scalar index	$d\eta/d\ln k$	$-0.03(2)$
Planck length	$l_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar G/c^3}$	$1.62 \cdot 10^{-35} \text{ m}$
Planck time	$t_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar G/c^5}$	$5.39 \cdot 10^{-44} \text{ s}$
Planck mass	$m_{\text{Pl}} = \sqrt{\hbar c/G}$	$21.8 \mu\text{g}$
Instants in history <sup>a</sup>	$t_0/t_{\text{Pl}}$	$8.7(2.8) \cdot 10^{60}$
Space-time points inside the horizon <sup>a</sup>	$N_0 = (R_0/l_{\text{Pl}})^3 \cdot (t_0/t_{\text{Pl}})$	$10^{244 \pm 1}$
Mass inside horizon	$M$	$10^{54 \pm 1} \text{ kg}$

a. The index 0 indicates present-day values.

b. The radiation originated when the universe was 380 000 years old and had a temperature of about 3000 K; the fluctuations  $\Delta T_0$  which led to galaxy formation are today about  $16 \pm 4 \mu\text{K} = 6(2) \cdot 10^{-6} T_0$ .

Vol. II, page 231

Ref. 169

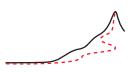
Challenge 176 s

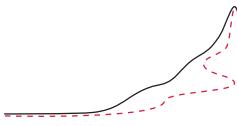
### U S E F U L N U M B E R S

$\pi$	3.14159 26535 89793 23846 26433 83279 50288 41971 69399 37510 <sub>5</sub>
e	2.71828 18284 59045 23536 02874 71352 66249 77572 47093 69995 <sub>9</sub>
$\gamma$	0.57721 56649 01532 86060 65120 90082 40243 10421 59335 93992 <sub>3</sub>
$\ln 2$	0.69314 71805 59945 30941 72321 21458 17656 80755 00134 36025 <sub>5</sub>
$\ln 10$	2.30258 50929 94045 68401 79914 54684 36420 76011 01488 62877 <sub>2</sub>
$\sqrt{10}$	3.16227 76601 68379 33199 88935 44432 71853 37195 55139 32521 <sub>6</sub>

If the number  $\pi$  is *normal*, i.e., if all digits and digit combinations in its decimal expansion appear with the same limiting frequency, then every text ever written or yet to be written, as well as every word ever spoken or yet to be spoken, can be found coded in its sequence. The property of normality has not yet been proven, although it is suspected to hold. Does this mean that all wisdom is encoded in the simple circle? No. The property is nothing special: it also applies to the number 0.123456789101112131415161718192021... and many others. Can you specify a few examples?

By the way, in the graph of the exponential function  $e^x$ , the point  $(0, 1)$  is the only point with two rational coordinates. If you imagine painting in blue all points on the plane with two rational coordinates, the plane would look quite bluish. Nevertheless, the graph goes through only one of these points and manages to avoid all the others.





## APPENDIX B

# NUMBERS AND VECTOR SPACES

“ A mathematician is a machine that transforms coffee into theorems.

Paul Erdős (b. 1913 Budapest, d. 1996 Warsaw)

**M**athematical concepts can all be expressed in terms of ‘sets’ and ‘relations.’ Many fundamental concepts were presented in the last chapter. Why does mathematics, given this simple basis, grow into a passion for certain people? How can sets and relations become the center of a person’s life? The mathematical appendices present a few more advanced concepts as simply and vividly as possible, for all those who want to understand and to smell the passion for mathematics.

Unfortunately, the passion for mathematics is not easy to spot, because like many other professions, also mathematicians *hide* their passions. In mathematics, this is done through formalism and apparent detachment from intuition. Good mathematical teaching however, puts intuition at the beginning. In this appendix we shall introduce the simplest *algebraic* structures. The appendix in the next volume will present some more involved algebraic structures and then the most important *topological* structures; the third basic type of mathematical structures, *order* structures, are not so important in physics – with one exception: the definition of the real numbers contains an order structure.

Mathematicians are concerned not only with the exploration of concepts, but also with their *classification*. Whenever a new mathematical concept is introduced, mathematicians try to classify all the possible cases and types. This has been achieved most spectacularly for the different types of numbers, for finite simple groups and for many types of spaces and manifolds.

### NUMBERS AS MATHEMATICAL STRUCTURES

Challenge 177 ny

“ A person who can solve  $x^2 - 92y^2 = 1$  in less than a year is a mathematician.

Brahmagupta (b. 598 Sindh, d. 668) (implied: solve in *integers*)

Children know: numbers are entities that can be added and multiplied. Mathematicians are more discerning. Any mathematical system with the same basic properties as the *natural* numbers is called a *semi-ring*. Any mathematical system with the same basic properties as the *integers* is called a *ring*. (The terms are due to David Hilbert. Both structures can also be finite rather than infinite.) More precisely, a *ring*  $(R, +, \cdot)$  is a set  $R$  of ele-

ments with two binary operations, called *addition* and *multiplication*, usually written  $+$  and  $\cdot$  (the latter may simply be understood, thus without explicit notation), for which the following properties hold for all elements  $a, b, c \in R$ :

- $R$  is a commutative group with respect to addition, i.e.  
 $a + b \in R, a + b = b + a, a + 0 = a, a + (-a) = a - a = 0$  and  $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$ ;
- $R$  is closed under multiplication, i.e.,  $ab \in R$ ;
- multiplication is associative, i.e.,  $a(bc) = (ab)c$ ;
- distributivity holds, i.e.,  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$  and  $(b + c)a = ba + ca$ .

Many authors add the axiom

- a multiplicative unit exists, i.e.,  $1a = a1 = a$ .

Defining properties such as these are called *axioms*. We stress that axioms are *not* basic beliefs, as is often stated or implied; axioms are the basic properties used in the definition of a concept: in this case, of a ring. With the last axiom, one also speaks of a *unital ring*.

A *semi-ring* is a set satisfying all the axioms of a ring, except that the existence of neutral and negative elements for addition is replaced by the weaker requirement that if  $a + c = b + c$  then  $a = b$ . Sloppily, a semi-ring is a ring ‘without’ negative elements.

To incorporate division and define the rational numbers, we need another concept. A *number field* or *field*  $K$  is a ring with

- a multiplicative identity 1, such that all elements  $a$  obey  $1a = a$ ;
- at least one element different from zero; and most importantly
- a (multiplicative) inverse  $a^{-1}$  for every element  $a \neq 0$ .

A ring or field is said to be *commutative* if the multiplication is commutative. A non-commutative field is also called a *skew field*. Fields can be finite or infinite. (A field or a ring is characterized by its *characteristic*  $p$ . This is the smallest number of times one has to add 1 to itself to give zero. If there is no such number the characteristic is set to 0.  $p$  is always a prime number or zero.) All finite fields are commutative. In a field, all equations of the type  $cx = b$  and  $xc = b$  ( $c \neq 0$ ) have solutions for  $x$ ; there is a unique solution if  $b \neq 0$ . To sum up sloppily by focusing on the most important property, a field is a set of elements for which, together with addition, subtraction and multiplication, a *division* (by non-zero elements) is also defined. The *rational numbers* are the simplest field that incorporates the integers.

The system of the *real numbers* is the minimal extension of the rationals which is complete and totally ordered.\* Can you show that  $\sqrt{2}$  is a real, but not a rational number?

Challenge 178 e

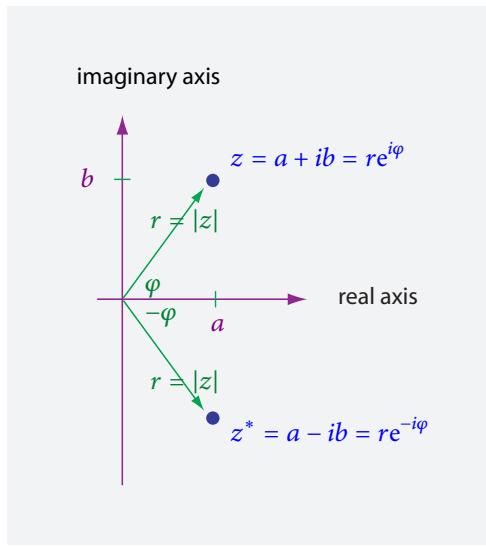
---

\* A set is mathematically *complete* if physicists call it continuous. More precisely, a set of numbers is *complete* if every non-empty subset that is bounded above has a least upper bound.

A set is *totally ordered* if there exists a binary relation  $\leq$  between pairs of elements such that for all elements  $a$  and  $b$

- if  $a \leq b$  and  $b \leq c$ , then  $a \leq c$ ;
- if  $a \leq b$  and  $b \leq a$ , then  $a = b$ ;
- $a \leq b$  or  $b \leq a$  holds.

In summary, a set is totally ordered if there is a binary relation that allows saying about any two elements which one is the predecessor of the other in a consistent way. This is the fundamental – and also the only – order structure used in physics.



**FIGURE 86** Complex numbers are points in the two-dimensional plane; a complex number  $z$  and its conjugate  $z^*$  can be described in cartesian form or in polar form.

**Challenge 179** In classical physics and quantum theory, it is always stressed that measurement results are and must be real numbers. But are all real numbers possible measurement results? In other words, are all measurement results just a subset of the reals?

**Ref. 171** However, the concept of ‘number’ is not limited to these examples. It can be generalized in several ways. The simplest generalization is achieved by extending the real numbers to manifolds of more than one dimension.

### COMPLEX NUMBERS

In nature, complex numbers are a useful way to describe in compact form systems and situations that contain a *phase*. Complex numbers are thus useful to describe waves of any kind.

Complex numbers form a two-dimensional manifold. A complex number is defined, in its cartesian form, by  $z = a + ib$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers, and  $i$  is a new symbol, the so-called *imaginary unit*. Under multiplication, the generators of the complex numbers, 1 and  $i$ , obey

$$\begin{array}{c|cc} \cdot & 1 & i \\ \hline 1 & 1 & i \\ i & i & -1 \end{array} \quad (120)$$

often summarized as  $i = +\sqrt{-1}$ . In a complex number  $z = a + ib$ ,  $a$  is called the *real part*, and  $b$  the *complex part*. They are illustrated in Figure 86.

The *complex conjugate*  $z^*$ , also written  $\bar{z}$ , of a complex number  $z = a + ib$  is defined as  $z^* = a - ib$ . The *absolute value*  $|z|$  of a complex number is defined as  $|z| = \sqrt{zz^*} = \sqrt{z^*z} = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ . It defines a *norm* on the vector space of the complex numbers. From  $|wz| = |w| |z|$  follows the *two-squares theorem*

$$(a_1^2 + a_2^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2) = (a_1b_1 - a_2b_2)^2 + (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1)^2 \quad (121)$$

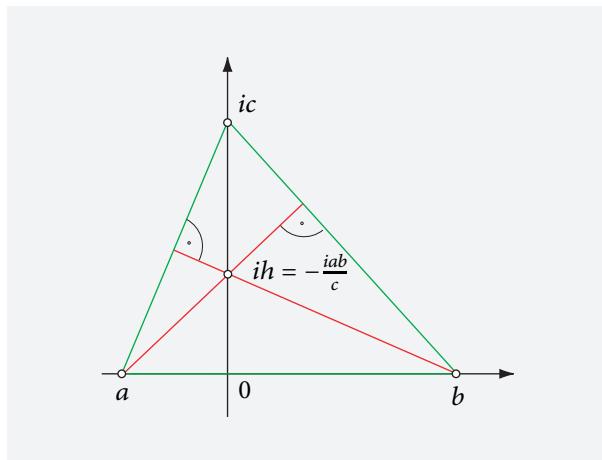


FIGURE 87 A property of triangles easily provable with complex numbers.

valid for all real numbers  $a_i, b_i$ . It was already known, in its version for integers, to Diophantus of Alexandria in the third century CE.

Complex numbers can also be written as ordered pairs  $(a, A)$  of real numbers, with their addition defined as  $(a, A) + (b, B) = (a + b, A + B)$  and their multiplication defined as  $(a, A) \cdot (b, B) = (ab - AB, aB + bA)$ . This notation allows us to identify the complex numbers with the *points* on a plane or, if we prefer, to *arrows* in a plane. Translating the definition of multiplication into geometrical language allows us to rapidly prove certain geometrical theorems, such as the one of Figure 87.

Challenge 180 e

Complex numbers  $a + ib$  can also be represented as  $2 \times 2$  matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{with } a, b \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (122)$$

Matrix addition and multiplication then correspond to complex addition and multiplication. In this way, complex numbers can be represented by a special type of real matrix. What is  $|z|$  in matrix language?

Challenge 181 s

Page 235

Challenge 182 e

The set  $\mathbb{C}$  of complex numbers with addition and multiplication as defined above forms both a commutative two-dimensional field and a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . In the field of complex numbers, quadratic equations  $az^2 + bz + c = 0$  for an unknown  $z$  always have two solutions (for  $a \neq 0$  and counting multiplicity).

Complex numbers can be used to describe the points of a plane. A rotation around the origin can be described by multiplication by a complex number of unit length. Other two-dimensional quantities can also be described with complex numbers. Electrical engineers use complex numbers to describe quantities with phases, such as alternating currents or electrical fields in space.

Challenge 183 e

Writing complex numbers of unit length as  $\cos \theta + i \sin \theta$  is a useful method for remembering angle addition formulae. Since one has  $\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta = (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)^n$ , one can easily deduce formulae such as  $\cos 2\theta = \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta$  and  $\sin 2\theta = 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$ . By the way, the unit complex numbers form the Lie group  $\mathrm{SO}(2) = \mathrm{U}(1)$ .

Challenge 184 e

Every complex number can be written as

$$z = r e^{i\varphi}. \quad (123)$$

This polar form of writing complex numbers is the reason for introducing them in the first place. The angle  $\varphi$  is called the *phase*; the real number  $r = |z|$  is called the *absolute value* or the *modulus* or the *magnitude*. When used to describe oscillations or waves, it makes sense to call  $r$  the *amplitude*. The complex exponential function is periodic in  $2\pi i$ ; in other words, we have

$$e^1 = e^{1+2\pi i}, \quad (124)$$

which shows the property we expect from a phase angle.

If one uses the last equation twice, one may write

$$e^1 = e^{1+2\pi i} = (e^{1+2\pi i})^{1+2\pi i} = e^{(1+2\pi i)(1+2\pi i)} = e^{1-4\pi^2+4\pi i} = e^{1-4\pi^2}. \quad (125)$$

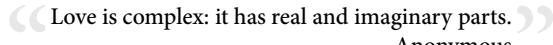
Challenge 185 e

Oops, that would imply  $\pi = 0$ ! What is wrong here?

Complex numbers can also be used to describe Euclidean plane geometry. Rotations, translations and other isometries, but also reflections, glide reflections and scaling are easily described by simple operations on the complex numbers that describe the coordinate of points.

By the way, there are exactly as many complex numbers as there are real numbers. Can you show this?

Challenge 186 s

 Love is complex: it has real and imaginary parts.  
Anonymous

## QUATERNIONS

The positions of the points on a line can be described by real numbers. Complex numbers can be used to describe the positions of the points of a plane. It is natural to try to generalize the idea of a number to higher-dimensional spaces. However, it turns out that no useful number system can be defined for *three*-dimensional space. A new number system, the *quaternions*, can be constructed which corresponds the points of *four*-dimensional space, but only if the commutativity of multiplication is sacrificed. No useful number system can be defined for dimensions other than 1, 2 and 4.

The quaternions were discovered by several mathematicians in the nineteenth century, among them Hamilton,\* who studied them for much of his life. In fact, Maxwell's theory of electrodynamics was formulated in terms of quaternions before three-dimensional vectors were used.

Ref. 173  
Vol. V, page 359

Under multiplication, the quaternions  $\mathbb{H}$  form a 4-dimensional algebra over the reals

---

\* William Rowan Hamilton (b. 1805 Dublin, d. 1865 Dunsink), child prodigy and famous mathematician, named the quaternions after an expression from the Vulgate (Acts. 12: 4).

with a basis  $1, i, j, k$  satisfying

.	1	$i$	$j$	$k$
1	1	$i$	$j$	$k$
$i$	$i$	-1	$k$	$-j$
$j$	$j$	$-k$	-1	$i$
$k$	$k$	$j$	$-i$	-1

(126)

These relations are also often written  $i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1$ ,  $ij = -ji = k$ ,  $jk = -kj = i$ ,  $ki = -ik = j$ . The quaternions  $1, i, j, k$  are also called *basic units* or *generators*. The lack of symmetry across the diagonal of the table shows the non-commutativity of quaternionic multiplication. With the quaternions, the idea of a non-commutative product appeared for the first time in mathematics. However, the multiplication of quaternions is associative. As a consequence of non-commutativity, polynomial equations in quaternions have many more solutions than in complex numbers: just search for all solutions of the equation  $X^2 + 1 = 0$  to convince yourself of it.

Challenge 187 

Every quaternion  $X$  can be written in the form

$$X = x_0 + x_1 i + x_2 j + x_3 k = x_0 + \mathbf{v} = (x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3) = (x_0, \mathbf{v}), \quad (127)$$

where  $x_0$  is called the *scalar* part and  $\mathbf{v}$  the *vector* part. The multiplication is thus defined as  $(x, \mathbf{v})(y, \mathbf{w}) = (xy - \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}, x\mathbf{w} + y\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$ . The multiplication of two general quaternions can be written as

$$(a_1, b_1, c_1, d_1)(a_2, b_2, c_2, d_2) = (a_1 a_2 - b_1 b_2 - c_1 c_2 - d_1 d_2, a_1 b_2 + b_1 a_2 + c_1 d_2 - d_1 c_2, a_1 c_2 - b_1 d_2 + c_1 a_2 + d_1 b_2, a_1 d_2 + b_1 c_2 - c_1 b_2 + d_1 a_2). \quad (128)$$

The conjugate quaternion  $\overline{X}$  is defined as  $\overline{X} = x_0 - \mathbf{v}$ , so that  $\overline{XY} = \overline{Y} \overline{X}$ . The *norm*  $|X|$  of a quaternion  $X$  is defined as  $|X|^2 = X\overline{X} = \overline{XX} = x_0^2 + x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 = x_0^2 + \mathbf{v}^2$ . The norm is multiplicative, i.e.,  $|XY| = |X| |Y|$ .

Unlike complex numbers, every quaternion is related to its complex conjugate by

$$\overline{X} = -\frac{1}{2}(X + iXi + jXj + kXk). \quad (129)$$

No relation of this type exists for complex numbers. In the language of physics, a complex number and its conjugate are independent variables; for quaternions, this is not the case. As a result, functions of quaternions are less useful in physics than functions of complex variables.

The relation  $|XY| = |X| |Y|$  implies the *four-squares theorem*

$$\begin{aligned} & (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 + a_4^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2 + b_4^2) \\ &= (a_1 b_1 - a_2 b_2 - a_3 b_3 - a_4 b_4)^2 + (a_1 b_2 + a_2 b_1 + a_3 b_4 - a_4 b_3)^2 \\ &+ (a_1 b_3 + a_3 b_1 + a_4 b_2 - a_2 b_4)^2 + (a_1 b_4 + a_4 b_1 + a_2 b_3 - a_3 b_2)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (130)$$

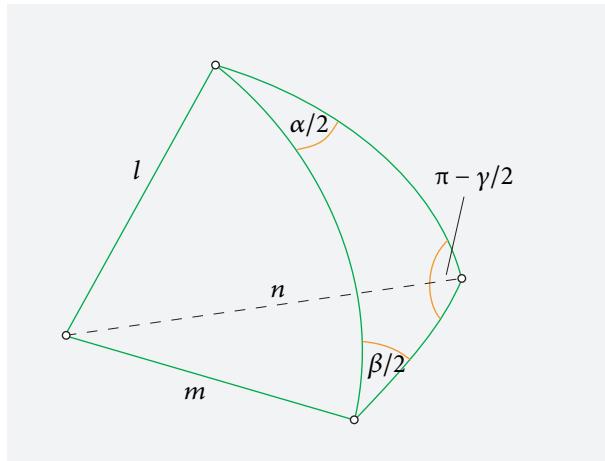


FIGURE 88 Combinations of rotations.

valid for all real numbers  $a_i$  and  $b_i$ , and thus also for any set of eight integers. It was discovered in 1748 by Leonhard Euler (1707–1783) when trying to prove that each integer is the sum of four squares. (The latter fact was proved only in 1770, by Joseph Lagrange.)

Hamilton thought that a quaternion with zero scalar part, which he simply called a *vector* (a term which he invented), could be identified with an ordinary three-dimensional translation vector; but this is wrong. Such a quaternion is now called a *pure*, or *homogeneous*, or *imaginary* quaternion. The product of two pure quaternions  $V = (0, \mathbf{v})$  and  $W = (0, \mathbf{w})$  is given by  $VW = (-\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$ , where  $\cdot$  denotes the scalar product and  $\times$  denotes the vector product. Note that any quaternion can be written as the ratio of two pure quaternions.

In reality, a pure quaternion  $(0, \mathbf{v})$  does not behave like a translation vector under coordinate transformations; in fact, a pure quaternion represents a *rotation* by the angle  $\pi$  or  $180^\circ$  around the axis defined by the direction  $\mathbf{v} = (v_x, v_y, v_z)$ .

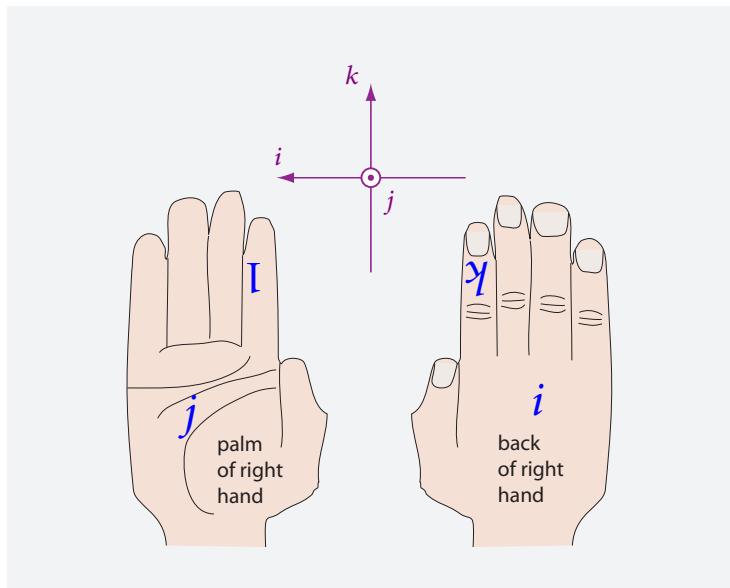
It turns out that in three-dimensional space, a *general* rotation about the origin can be described by a *unit* quaternion  $Q$ , also called a *normed* quaternion, for which  $|Q| = 1$ . Such a quaternion can be written as  $(\cos \theta/2, \mathbf{n} \sin \theta/2)$ , where  $\mathbf{n} = (n_x, n_y, n_z)$  is the normed vector describing the direction of the rotation axis and  $\theta$  is the rotation angle. Such a unit quaternion  $Q = (\cos \theta/2, \mathbf{n} \sin \theta/2)$  rotates a pure quaternion  $V = (0, \mathbf{v})$  into another pure quaternion  $W = (0, \mathbf{w})$  given by

$$W = QVQ^*. \quad (131)$$

Thus, if we use pure quaternions such as  $V$  or  $W$  to describe positions, we can use unit quaternions to describe rotations and to calculate coordinate changes. The concatenation of two rotations is then given by the product of the corresponding unit quaternions. Indeed, a rotation by an angle  $\alpha$  about the axis  $\mathbf{l}$  followed by a rotation by an angle  $\beta$  about the axis  $\mathbf{m}$  gives a rotation by an angle  $\gamma$  about the axis  $\mathbf{n}$ , with the values determined by

$$(\cos \gamma/2, \sin \gamma/2 \mathbf{n}) = (\cos \beta/2, \sin \beta/2 \mathbf{m})(\cos \alpha/2, \sin \alpha/2 \mathbf{l}). \quad (132)$$

Challenge 188 ny



**FIGURE 89** The top and back of the right hand, and the quaternions.

One way to show the result graphically is given in [Figure 88](#). By drawing a triangle on a unit sphere, and taking care to remember the factor  $1/2$  in the angles, the combination of two rotations can be simply determined.

The interpretation of quaternions as rotations is also illustrated, in a somewhat different way, in the motion of any hand. To see this, take a green marker and write the letters  $1, i, j$  and  $k$  on your hand as shown in [Figure 89](#). Defining the three possible  $180^\circ$  rotation axes as shown in the figure and taking concatenation as multiplication, the motion of the right hand follows the same ‘laws’ as those of pure unit quaternions. (One needs to distinguish  $+i$  and  $-i$ , and the same for the other units, by the sense of the arm twist. And the result of a multiplication is that letter that can be read by a person facing you.) You can show that  $i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1$ , that  $i^4 = 1$ , and conform all other quaternion relations. The model also shows that the rotation angle of the arm is half the rotation angle of the corresponding quaternion. In other words, quaternions can be used to describe the belt trick, if the multiplication  $VW$  of two quaternions is taken to mean that rotation  $V$  is performed *after* rotation  $W$ . Quaternions, like human hands, thus behave like a spin  $1/2$  particle. Quaternions and spinors are isomorphic.

Challenge 189 e

Ref. 174

Challenge 190 s

Page 130

Vol. V, page 370

Page 130

The reason for the half-angle behaviour of rotations can be specified more precisely using mathematical language. The rotations in three dimensions around a point form the ‘special orthogonal group’ in three dimensions, which is called  $\text{SO}(3)$ . But the motions of a hand attached to a shoulder via an arm form a different group, isomorphic to the Lie group  $\text{SU}(2)$ . The difference is due to the appearance of half angles in the parametrization of rotations; indeed, the above parametrizations imply that a rotation by  $2\pi$  corresponds to a multiplication by  $-1$ . Only in the twentieth century was it realized that there exist fundamental physical observables that behaves like hands attached to arms: they are called *spinors*. More on spinors can be found in the section on permutation symmetry, where belts are used as an analogy as well as arms. In short, the group  $\text{SU}(2)$  formed by

Ref. 175 the unit quaternions is the *double cover* of the rotation group SO(3).

The simple representation of rotations and positions with quaternions is used by computer programmes in robotics, in astronomy and in flight simulation. In the software used to create three-dimensional images and animations, visualization software, quaternions are often used to calculate the path taken by repeatedly reflected light rays and thus give surfaces a realistic appearance.

The algebra of the quaternions is the only associative, non-commutative, finite-dimensional normed algebra with an identity over the field of real numbers. Quaternions form a non-commutative field, i.e., a skew field, in which the inverse of a quaternion  $X$  is  $\bar{X}/|X|$ . We can therefore define division of quaternions (while being careful to distinguish  $XY^{-1}$  and  $Y^{-1}X$ ). Therefore quaternions are said to form a *division algebra*. In fact, the quaternions  $\mathbb{H}$ , the complex numbers  $\mathbb{C}$  and the reals  $\mathbb{R}$  are the only three finite-dimensional associative division algebras. In other words, the skew-field of quaternions is the only finite-dimensional real associative non-commutative algebra without divisors of zero. The *centre* of the quaternions, i.e., the set of quaternions that commute with all other quaternions, is just the set of real numbers.

Quaternions can be represented as matrices of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ -B^* & A^* \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{with } A, B \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{thus } A = a + ib, B = c + id, \quad (133)$$

or, alternatively, as

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b & c & d \\ -b & a & -d & c \\ -c & d & a & -b \\ -d & -c & b & a \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{with } a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}, \quad (134)$$

where the quaternion  $X$  then is given as  $X = A + Bj = a + ib + jc + kd$ . Matrix addition and multiplication then corresponds to quaternionic addition and multiplication.

The generators of the quaternions can be realized as

$$1 : \sigma_0 \quad , \quad i : -i\sigma_1 \quad , \quad j : -i\sigma_2 \quad , \quad k : -i\sigma_3 \quad (135)$$

where the  $\sigma_n$  are the Pauli spin matrices.\*

---

\* The *Pauli spin matrices* are the complex Hermitean matrices

$$\sigma_0 = \mathbf{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad \sigma_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad \sigma_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad \sigma_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (136)$$

all of whose eigenvalues are  $\pm 1$ ; they satisfy the relations  $[\sigma_i, \sigma_k]_+ = 2\delta_{ik}$  and  $[\sigma_i, \sigma_k]_- = 2i\epsilon_{ikl}\sigma_l$ . The linear combinations  $\sigma_{\pm} = \frac{1}{2}(\sigma_1 \pm \sigma_2)$  are also frequently used. By the way, another possible representation of the quaternions is  $i : i\sigma_3, j : i\sigma_2, k : i\sigma_1$ .

Real  $4 \times 4$  representations are not unique, as the alternative representation

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b & -d & -c \\ -b & a & -c & d \\ d & c & a & b \\ c & -d & -b & a \end{pmatrix} \quad (137)$$

Challenge 191 ny

shows. No representation of quaternions by  $3 \times 3$  matrices is possible.

These matrices contain real and complex elements, which pose no special problems. In contrast, when matrices with quaternionic elements are constructed, care has to be taken, because quaternionic multiplication is not commutative, so that simple relations such as  $\text{tr}AB = \text{tr}BA$  are *not* generally valid.

Vol. VI, page 174

What can we learn from quaternions about the description of nature? First of all, we see that binary rotations are similar to positions, and thus to translations: all are represented by 3-vectors. Are rotations the basic operations of nature? Is it possible that translations are only ‘shadows’ of rotations? The connection between translations and rotations is investigated in the last volume of our mountain ascent.

Vol. III, page 76

When Maxwell wrote down his equations of electrodynamics, he used quaternion notation. (The now usual 3-vector notation was introduced later by Hertz and Heaviside.) The equations can be written in various ways using quaternions. The simplest is achieved when one keeps a distinction between  $\sqrt{-1}$  and the units  $i, j, k$  of the quaternions. One then can write all of electrodynamics in a single equation:

$$dF = -\frac{Q}{\epsilon_0} \quad (138)$$

Ref. 173

Challenge 192 s

where  $F$  is the generalized electromagnetic field and  $Q$  the generalized charge. These are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} F &= E + \sqrt{-1}cB \\ E &= iE_x + jE_y + kE_z \\ B &= iB_x + jB_y + kB_z \\ d &= \delta + \sqrt{-1}\partial_t/c \\ \delta &= i\partial_x + j\partial_y + k\partial_z \\ Q &= \rho + \sqrt{-1}J/c \end{aligned} \quad (139)$$

where the fields  $E$  and  $B$  and the charge distributions  $\rho$  and  $J$  have the usual meanings. The content of equation (138) for the electromagnetic field is exactly the same as the usual formulation.

Despite their charm and their four-dimensionality, quaternions do not seem to be useful for the reformulation of special relativity; the main reason for this is the sign in the expression for their norm. Therefore, relativity and space-time are usually described using real numbers. And even if quaternions were useful, they would not provide additional insights into physics or into nature.

### OCTONIONS

In the same way that quaternions are constructed from complex numbers, *octonions* can be constructed from quaternions. They were first investigated by Arthur Cayley (1821–1895). Under multiplication, *octonions* (or *octaves*) are the elements of an eight-dimensional algebra over the reals with the generators  $1, i_n$  with  $n = 1 \dots 7$  satisfying

.	1	$i_1$	$i_2$	$i_3$	$i_4$	$i_5$	$i_6$	$i_7$
1	1	$i_1$	$i_2$	$i_3$	$i_4$	$i_5$	$i_6$	$i_7$
$i_1$	$i_1$	-1	$i_3$	$-i_2$	$i_5$	$-i_4$	$i_7$	$-i_6$
$i_2$	$i_2$	$-i_3$	-1	$i_1$	$-i_6$	$i_7$	$i_4$	$-i_5$
$i_3$	$i_3$	$i_2$	$-i_1$	-1	$i_7$	$i_6$	$-i_5$	$-i_4$
$i_4$	$i_4$	$-i_5$	$i_6$	$-i_7$	-1	$i_1$	$-i_2$	$i_3$
$i_5$	$i_5$	$i_4$	$-i_7$	$-i_6$	$-i_1$	-1	$i_3$	$i_2$
$i_6$	$i_6$	$-i_7$	$-i_4$	$i_5$	$i_2$	$-i_3$	-1	$i_1$
$i_7$	$i_7$	$i_6$	$i_5$	$i_4$	$-i_3$	$-i_2$	$-i_1$	-1

(140)

In fact, 479 other, equivalent multiplication tables are also possible. This algebra is called the *Cayley algebra*; it has an identity and a unique division. The algebra is non-commutative, and also non-associative. It is, however, *alternative*, meaning that for all elements  $x$  and  $y$ , one has  $x(xy) = x^2y$  and  $(xy)y = xy^2$ : a property somewhat weaker than associativity. It is the only 8-dimensional real alternative algebra without zero divisors. Because it is not associative, the set  $\mathbb{O}$  of all octonions does not form a field, nor even a ring, so that the old designation of ‘Cayley numbers’ has been abandoned. The octonions are the most general hypercomplex ‘numbers’ whose norm is multiplicative. Its generators obey  $(i_n i_m) i_l = \pm i_n (i_m i_l)$ , where the minus sign, which shows the non-associativity, is valid for combinations of indices that are not quaternionic, such as 1-2-4.

Octonions can be represented as matrices of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ -\bar{B} & \bar{A} \end{pmatrix} \text{ where } A, B \in \mathbb{H}, \text{ or as real } 8 \times 8 \text{ matrices.} \quad (141)$$

Matrix multiplication then gives the same result as octonionic multiplication.

The relation  $|wz| = |w| |z|$  allows one to deduce the impressive *eight-squares theorem*

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 + a_4^2 + a_5^2 + a_6^2 + a_7^2 + a_8^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2 + b_4^2 + b_5^2 + b_6^2 + b_7^2 + b_8^2) \\
 &= (a_1b_1 - a_2b_2 - a_3b_3 - a_4b_4 - a_5b_5 - a_6b_6 - a_7b_7 - a_8b_8)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1 + a_3b_4 - a_4b_3 + a_5b_6 - a_6b_5 + a_7b_8 - a_8b_7)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_3 - a_2b_4 + a_3b_1 + a_4b_2 - a_5b_7 + a_6b_8 + a_7b_5 - a_8b_6)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_4 + a_2b_3 - a_3b_2 + a_4b_1 + a_5b_8 + a_6b_7 - a_7b_6 - a_8b_5)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_5 - a_2b_6 + a_3b_7 - a_4b_8 + a_5b_1 + a_6b_2 - a_7b_3 + a_8b_4)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_6 + a_2b_5 - a_3b_8 - a_4b_7 - a_5b_2 + a_6b_1 + a_7b_4 + a_8b_3)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_7 - a_2b_8 - a_3b_5 + a_4b_6 + a_5b_3 - a_6b_4 + a_7b_1 + a_8b_2)^2 \\
 &+ (a_1b_8 + a_2b_7 + a_3b_6 + a_4b_5 - a_5b_4 - a_6b_3 - a_7b_2 + a_8b_1)^2
 \end{aligned} \tag{142}$$

valid for all real numbers  $a_i$  and  $b_i$  and thus in particular also for all integers. (There are many variations of this expression, with different possible sign combinations.) The theorem was discovered in 1818 by Carl Ferdinand Degen (1766–1825), and then rediscovered in 1844 by John Graves and in 1845 by Arthur Cayley. There is no generalization to higher numbers of squares, a fact proved by Adolf Hurwitz (1859–1919) in 1898.

The octonions can be used to show that a vector product can be defined in more than three dimensions. A *vector product* or *cross product* is an operation  $\times$  satisfying

$$\begin{aligned}
 u \times v &= -v \times u \quad \text{anticommutativity} \\
 (u \times v) w &= u(v \times w) \quad \text{exchange rule.}
 \end{aligned} \tag{143}$$

Using the definition

$$X \times Y = \frac{1}{2}(XY - YX), \tag{144}$$

the cross products of imaginary quaternions, i.e., of quaternions of the type  $(0, \mathbf{u})$ , are again imaginary, and correspond to the usual, three-dimensional vector product, thus fulfilling (143). Interestingly, it is possible to use definition (144) for *octonions* as well. In that case, the product of imaginary octonions is also imaginary, and (143) is again satisfied. In fact, this is the only other non-trivial example of a vector product.

In summary: A *vector product exists only in three and in seven dimensions*. Many scholars have conjectured that this relation is connected with a possible ten-dimensionality of nature; however, these speculations have not met with any success.

The symmetries of the forces in nature lead to a well-known question. The unit complex numbers from the Lie group U(1) and the unit quaternions the Lie group SU(2). Do the unit octonions form the Lie group SU(3)?

#### OTHER TYPES OF NUMBERS

The process of constructing new systems of hypercomplex ‘numbers’ or real algebras by ‘doubling’ a given one can be continued ad infinitum. However, octonions, *sedenions* and

all the following doublings are neither rings nor fields, but only non-associative algebras with unity. Other finite-dimensional algebras with unit element over the reals, once called hypercomplex ‘numbers’, can also be defined: they include the so-called ‘dual numbers’, ‘double numbers’, ‘Clifford–Lifshitz numbers’ etc. They play no role in physics.

Mathematicians have also defined number fields which have ‘one and a bit’ dimensions, such as algebraic number fields. There is also a generalization of the concept of integers to the complex domain: the *Gaussian integers*, defined as  $n + im$ , where  $n$  and  $m$  are ordinary integers. Gauss even defined what are now known as *Gaussian primes*. (Can you find out how?) They are not used in the description of nature, but are important in

**Challenge 195 s** integers to the complex domain: the *Gaussian integers*, defined as  $n + im$ , where  $n$  and  $m$  are ordinary integers. Gauss even defined what are now known as *Gaussian primes*. (Can you find out how?) They are not used in the description of nature, but are important in number theory, the exploration of the properties of integers.

Physicists used to call quantum-mechanical operators ‘q-numbers.’ But this term has now fallen out of fashion.

Another way in which the natural numbers can be extended is to include numbers larger than infinite. The most important such classes of *transfinite number* are the *ordinals*, the *cardinals* and the *surreals*. The ordinals are essentially an extension of the integers beyond infinity, whereas the surreals are a continuous extension of the reals, also beyond infinity. Loosely speaking, among the transfinites, the ordinals have a similar role as the integers have among the reals; the surreals fill in all the gaps between the ordinals, like the reals do for integers. Interestingly, many series that diverge in  $\mathbb{R}$  converge in the surreals. Can you find one example?

The surreals include infinitely small numbers, as do the numbers of *nonstandard analysis*, also called *hyperreals*. In both number systems, in contrast to real numbers, the numbers 1 and 0.999 999... (where an infinite, but hyperfinite string of nines is implied) do not coincide, but are separated by infinitely many other numbers. We explored surreals earlier on. Nonstandard numbers can be used to define the infinitesimals used in integration and differentiation, even at secondary school level.

### FROM VECTOR SPACES TO HILBERT SPACES

Vector spaces, also called *linear spaces*, are mathematical generalizations of certain aspects of the intuitive three-dimensional space. A set of elements any two of which can be added together and any one of which can be multiplied by a number is called a vector space, if the result is again in the set and the usual rules of calculation hold.

More precisely, a *vector space* over a number field  $K$  is a set of elements, called *vectors*, for which a vector addition and a scalar multiplication is defined, such that for all vectors  $a, b, c$  and for all numbers  $s$  and  $r$  from  $K$  one has

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a + b) + c &= a + (b + c) && \text{associativity of vector addition} \\
 n + a &= a && \text{existence of null vector} \\
 (-a) + a &= n && \text{existence of negative vector} \\
 1a &= a && \text{regularity of scalar multiplication} \\
 (s + r)(a + b) &= sa + sb + ra + rb && \text{complete distributivity of scalar multiplication}
 \end{aligned} \tag{145}$$

If the field  $K$ , whose elements are called *scalars* in this context, is taken to be the real (or

complex, or quaternionic) numbers, one speaks of a real (or complex, or quaternionic) vector space. Vector spaces are also called *linear vector spaces* or simply *linear spaces*.

The complex numbers, the set of all real functions defined on the real line, the set of all polynomials, the set of matrices with a given number of rows and columns, all form vector spaces. In mathematics, a vector is thus a more general concept than in physics. (What is the simplest possible mathematical vector space?)

**Challenge 197 s**

In physics, the term ‘vector’ is reserved for elements of a more specialized type of vector space, namely normed inner product spaces. To define these, we first need the concept of a metric space.

A *metric space* is a set with a metric, i.e., a way to define distances between elements. A real function  $d(a, b)$  between elements is called a metric if

$$\begin{aligned} d(a, b) &\geq 0 && \text{positivity of metric} \\ d(a, b) + d(b, c) &\geq d(a, c) && \text{triangle inequality} \\ d(a, b) = 0 &\quad \text{if and only if } a = b && \text{regularity of metric} \end{aligned} \tag{146}$$

**Challenge 198 s**

A non-trivial example is the following. We define a special distance  $d$  between cities. If the two cities lie on a line going through Paris, we use the usual distance. In all other cases, we define the distance  $d$  by the shortest distance from one to the other travelling via Paris. This strange method defines a metric between all cities in France, the so-called *French railroad distance*.

A *normed* vector space is a linear space with a norm, or ‘length’, associated to each a vector. A *norm* is a non-negative number  $\|a\|$  defined for each vector  $a$  with the properties

$$\begin{aligned} \|ra\| &= |r| \|a\| && \text{linearity of norm} \\ \|a + b\| &\leq \|a\| + \|b\| && \text{triangle inequality} \\ \|a\| = 0 &\quad \text{only if } a = 0 && \text{regularity} \end{aligned} \tag{147}$$

**Challenge 199 ny**

Usually there are many ways to define a norm for a given vector space. Note that a norm can always be used to define a metric by setting

$$d(a, b) = \|a - b\| \tag{148}$$

so that all normed spaces are also metric spaces. This is the *natural* distance definition (in contrast to unnatural ones like that between French cities given above).

The norm is often defined with the help of an inner product. Indeed, the most special class of linear spaces are the *inner product spaces*. These are vector spaces with an *inner product*, also called *scalar product*  $\cdot$  (not to be confused with the scalar multiplication!)

which associates a number to each pair of vectors. An inner product space over  $\mathbb{R}$  satisfies

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \cdot b &= b \cdot a && \text{commutativity of scalar product} \\
 (ra) \cdot (sb) &= rs(a \cdot b) && \text{bilinearity of scalar product} \\
 (a + b) \cdot c &= a \cdot c + b \cdot c && \text{left distributivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot (b + c) &= a \cdot b + a \cdot c && \text{right distributivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot a &\geq 0 && \text{positivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot a = 0 &\quad \text{if and only if } a = 0 && \text{regularity of scalar product}
 \end{aligned} \tag{149}$$

for all vectors  $a, b, c$  and all scalars  $r, s$ . A *real* inner product space of finite dimension is also called a *Euclidean* vector space. The set of all velocities, the set of all positions, or the set of all possible momenta form such spaces.

An inner product space over  $\mathbb{C}$  satisfies\*

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \cdot b &= \overline{b \cdot a} = \bar{b} \cdot \bar{a} && \text{Hermitean property} \\
 (ra) \cdot (sb) &= r\bar{s}(a \cdot b) && \text{sesquilinearity of scalar product} \\
 (a + b) \cdot c &= a \cdot c + b \cdot c && \text{left distributivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot (b + c) &= a \cdot b + a \cdot c && \text{right distributivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot a &\geq 0 && \text{positivity of scalar product} \\
 a \cdot a = 0 &\quad \text{if and only if } a = 0 && \text{regularity of scalar product}
 \end{aligned} \tag{150}$$

for all vectors  $a, b, c$  and all scalars  $r, s$ . A *complex* inner product space (of finite dimension) is also called a *unitary* or *Hermitean* vector space. If the inner product space is *complete*, it is called, especially in the infinite-dimensional complex case, a *Hilbert space*. The space of all possible states of a quantum system forms a Hilbert space.

All inner product spaces are also metric spaces, and thus normed spaces, if the metric is defined by

$$d(a, b) = \sqrt{(a - b) \cdot (a - b)} . \tag{151}$$

Only in the context of an inner product spaces we can speak about angles (or phase differences) between vectors, as we are used to in physics. Of course, like in normed spaces, inner product spaces also allows us to speak about the length of vectors and to define a *basis*, the mathematical concept necessary to define a coordinate system. Which vector spaces or inner product spaces are of importance in physics?

**Challenge 200** s

The *dimension* of a vector space is the number of linearly independent basis vectors.

**Challenge 201** s

Can you define these terms precisely?

A *Hilbert space* is a real or complex inner product space that is also a *complete* metric space. In other terms, in a Hilbert space, distances vary continuously and behave as naively expected. Hilbert spaces usually, but not always, have an infinite number of dimensions.

---

\* Two inequivalent forms of the sesquilinearity axiom exist. The other is  $(ra) \cdot (sb) = \bar{r}s(a \cdot b)$ . The term *sesquilinear* is derived from Latin and means for ‘one-and-a-half-linear’.

The definition of Hilbert spaces and vector spaces assume continuous sets to start with. If nature would not be continuous, could one still use the concepts?

### MATHEMATICAL CURIOSITIES AND FUN CHALLENGES

Mathematics provides many counter-intuitive results. Reading a good book on the topic, such as BERNARD R. GELBAUM & JOHN M. H. OLMSTED, *Theorems and Counter-examples in Mathematics*, Springer, 1993, can help you sharpen your mind and make you savour the beauty of mathematics even more.

\* \*

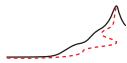
It is possible to draw a curve that meets all points in a square or all points in a cube. This is shown, for example, in the text HANS SAGAN, *Space Filling Curves*, Springer Verlag, 1994. As a result, the distinction between one, two and three dimensions is blurred in pure mathematics. In physics however, dimensions are clearly and well-defined; every object in nature has three dimensions.

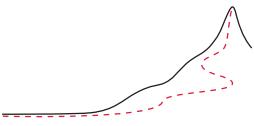
\* \*

Challenge 203 e Show that two operators  $A$  and  $B$  obey

$$\begin{aligned}
 e^A e^B = & \exp(A + B + \frac{1}{2}[A, B]) \\
 & + \frac{1}{12}[[A, B], B] - \frac{1}{12}[[A, B], A] \\
 & - \frac{1}{48}[B, [A, [A, B]]] - \frac{1}{48}[A, [B, [A, B]]] \\
 & + \dots
 \end{aligned} \tag{152}$$

for most operators  $A$  and  $B$ . This result is often called the *Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula* or the *BCH formula*.





## CHALLENGE HINTS AND SOLUTIONS

“Never make a calculation before you know the answer.

John Wheeler’s motto

**Challenge 1**, page 10: Do not hesitate to be demanding and strict. The next edition of the text will benefit from it.

**Challenge 2**, page 16: Classical physics fails in explaining any material property, such as colour or softness. Material properties result from nature’s interactions; they are inevitably quantum. Explanations of material properties require, without exception, the use of particles and their quantum properties.

**Challenge 3**, page 17: Classical physics allows any observable to change *smoothly* with time. In classical physics, there is no minimum value for any observable physical quantity.

**Challenge 4**, page 19: The higher the mass, the smaller the motion fuzziness induced by the quantum of action, because action is mass times speed times distance: For a large mass, the speed and distance variations are small.

**Challenge 5**, page 20: The simplest time is  $\sqrt{G\hbar/c^5}$ . The numerical factor is obviously not fixed; it is changed later on. Using  $4G$  instead of  $G$  the time becomes the shortest time measurable in nature.

**Challenge 7**, page 21: The electron charge is special to the electromagnetic interactions; it does not take into account the nuclear interactions or gravity. It is unclear why the length defined with the elementary charge  $e$  should be of importance for neutral systems or for the vacuum. On the other hand, the quantum of action  $\hbar$  is valid for *all* interactions and *all* observations.

In addition, we can argue that the two options to define a fundamental length – with the quantum of action and with the quantum of charge – are not too different: the electron charge is related to the quantum of action by  $e = \sqrt{4\pi\epsilon_0\alpha c\hbar}$ . The two length scales defined by the two options differ only by a factor near 11.7. In fact, both scales are *quantum* scales.

**Challenge 8**, page 21: On purely dimensional grounds, the radius of an atom must be

$$r \approx \frac{\hbar^2 4\pi\epsilon_0}{m_e e^2}, \quad (153)$$

**Page 186** which is about 53 nm. Indeed, this guess is excellent: it is just the Bohr radius.

**Vol. I, page 338** **Challenge 9**, page 21: Due to the quantum of action, atoms in all people, be they giants or dwarfs, have the same size. This implies that giants cannot exist, as was shown already by Galileo. The argument is based on the given strength of materials; and a same strength everywhere is equivalent to the same properties of atoms everywhere. That dwarfs cannot exist is due to a similar reason; nature is not able to make people smaller than usual (even in the womb they differ markedly from adults) as this would require smaller atoms.

**Challenge 12**, page 27: A disappearance of a mass  $m$  in a time  $\Delta t$  is an action change  $c^2 m \Delta t$ . That is much larger than  $\hbar$  for all objects of everyday life.

**Challenge 14**, page 29: Tunnelling of a lion would imply action values  $S$  of the order of  $S = 100 \text{ kgm}^2/\text{s} \gg \hbar$ . This cannot happen spontaneously.

**Challenge 15**, page 29: Every memory, be it human memory or an electronic computer memory, must avoid decay. And decay can only be avoided through high walls and low tunnelling rates.

**Challenge 16**, page 30: Yes! Many beliefs and myths – from lottery to ghosts – are due to the neglect of quantum effects.

**Challenge 17**, page 30: Perfectly continuous flow is in contrast to the fuzziness of motion induced by the quantum of action.

**Challenge 18**, page 30: The impossibility of following two particles along their path appears when their mutual distance  $d$  is smaller than their position indeterminacy due to their relative momentum  $p$ , thus when  $d < \hbar/p$ . Check the numbers with electrons, atoms, molecules, bacteria, people and galaxies.

**Challenge 19**, page 30: Also photons are indistinguishable. See [page 63](#).

**Challenge 21**, page 36: In the material that forms the escapement mechanism.

**Challenge 22**, page 36: Growth is not proportional to light intensity or to light frequency, but shows both intensity and frequency *thresholds*. These are quantum effects.

**Challenge 23**, page 36: All effects mentioned above, such as tunnelling, interference, decay, transformation, non-emptiness of the vacuum, indeterminacy and randomness, are also observed in the nuclear domain.

**Challenge 24**, page 36: This is not evident from what was said so far, but it turns out to be correct. In fact, there is no other option, as you will see when you try to find one.

**Challenge 25**, page 37: Tom Thumb is supposedly as smart as a normal human. But a brain cannot be scaled down. Fractals contradict the existence of Planck's length, and Moore's law contradicts the existence of atoms.

**Challenge 26**, page 37: The total angular momentum counts, including the orbital angular momentum. The orbital angular momentum  $L$  is given, using the radius and the linear momentum,  $L = r \times p$ . The total angular momentum is a multiple of  $\hbar$ .

**Challenge 27**, page 37: Yes, we could have!

**Challenge 28**, page 37: That is just the indeterminacy relation. Bohr expanded this idea to all sort of other pairs of concepts, more in the philosophical domain, such as clarity and precision of explanations: both cannot be high at the same time.

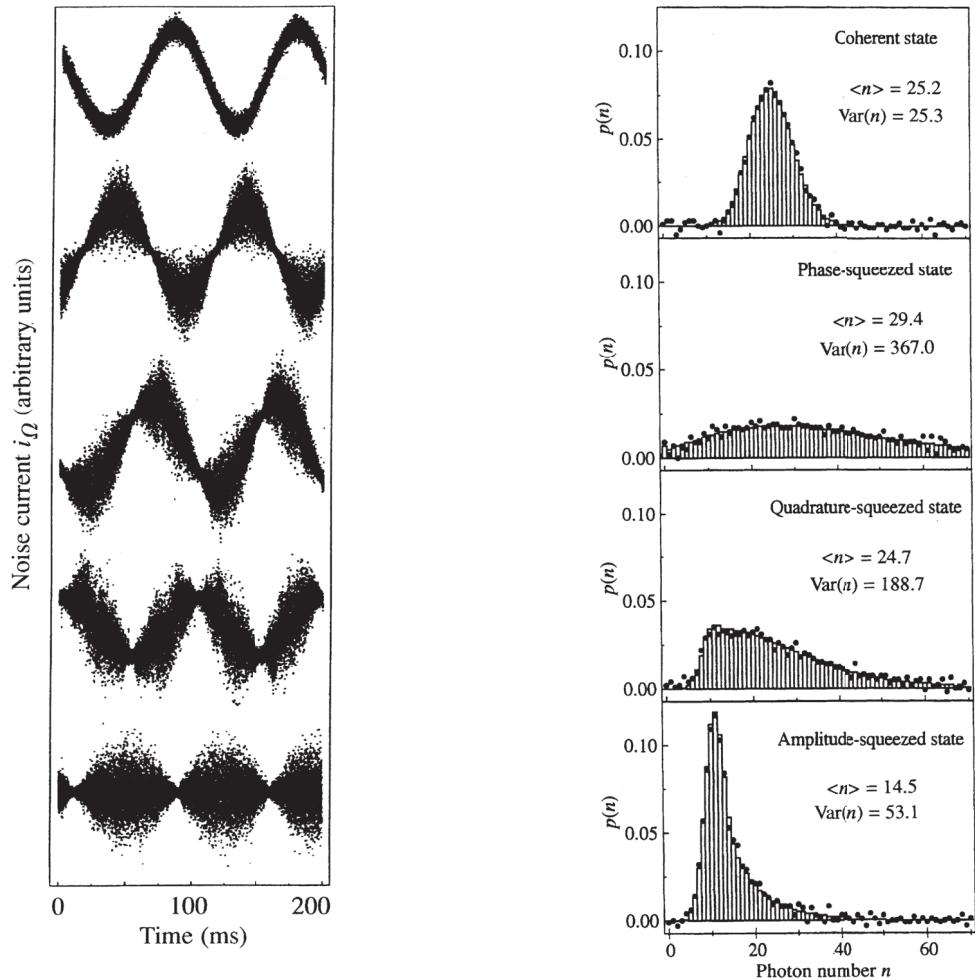
**Challenge 29**, page 39: The big bang cannot have been an event, for example.

**Challenge 32**, page 45: Charged photons would be deflected by electric or magnetic fields; in particular, they would not cross undisturbed. This is not observed. Massive photons would be deflected by masses, such as the Sun, much more than is observed.

**Challenge 34**, page 45: To measure momentum, we need a spatially extended measurement device; to measure position, we need a localized measurement device.

**Challenge 35**, page 47: Photons are elementary because they realize the minimum action, because they cannot decay, because they cannot be deformed or split, because they have no mass, no electric charge and no other quantum number, and because they appear in the Lagrangian of quantum electrodynamics.

**Challenge 36**, page 50: The measured electric fields and photon distribution are shown in the famous graphs reproduced in [Figure 90](#).



**FIGURE 90** Left, from top to bottom: the electric field and its fuzziness measured for a coherent state, for a squeezed vacuum state, for a phase-squeezed state, for a mixed, quadrature-squeezed state and for an amplitude-squeezed state, all with a small number of photons. Right: the corresponding photon number distributions for the uppermost four states. (© G. Breitenbach/Macmillan, from Ref. 19)

**Challenge 38**, page 50: This is an unclearly posed problem. The radiation is thermal, but the photon number depends on the volume under discussion.

**Challenge 40**, page 56: Radio photons can be counted using optical pumping experiments in which atomic states are split by a small, ‘radio-wavelength’ amount, with the help of magnetic fields. Also caesium clocks detect radio photons with optical means. The Josephson effect and magnetic resonance imaging are additional detection methods for radio photons.

**Challenge 41**, page 57: To be observable to the eye, the interference fringes need to be visible for around 0.1 s. That implies a maximum frequency difference between the two beams of around 10 Hz. This is achievable only if either a single beam is split into two or if the two beams come from high-precision, stabilized lasers.

**Challenge 42**, page 62: Implicit in the arrow model is the idea that one quantum particle is described by one arrow.

Ref. 178

**Challenge 48**, page 64: Despite a huge number of attempts and the promise of eternal fame, this is the sober conclusion.

**Challenge 53**, page 68: Yes, the argument is correct. In fact, more detailed discussions show that classical electrodynamics is in contradiction with *all* colours observed in nature.

**Challenge 57**, page 73: The calculation is not easy, but not too difficult either. For an initial orientation *close* to the vertical, the fall time  $T$  turns out to be

$$T = \frac{1}{2\pi} T_0 \ln \frac{8}{\alpha} \quad (154)$$

where  $\alpha$  is the starting angle, and a fall through angle  $\pi$  is assumed. Here  $T_0$  is the oscillation time of the pencil for small angles. (Can you determine it?) The indeterminacy relation for the tip of the pencil yields a *minimum* starting angle, because the momentum indeterminacy cannot be made arbitrarily large. You should be able to provide an upper limit. Once this angle is known, you can calculate the maximum time.

**Challenge 58**, page 74: Use the temperature to calculate the average kinetic energy, and thus the average speed of atoms.

**Challenge 59**, page 74: At such low temperatures, the atoms cannot be fully distinguished; they form a state of matter with peculiar properties, called a *condensate*. The condensate is not at rest either; but due to its large mass, its fluctuations are greatly reduced, compared to those of a single atom.

**Challenge 61**, page 78: Only variables whose product has the same units as physical action – Js – can be complementary to each other.

**Challenge 62**, page 79: Use  $\Delta E < E$  and  $a \Delta t < c$ .

**Challenge 67**, page 86: The quantum of action does not apply only to measurements, it applies to motion itself, and in particular, to all motion. Also effects of the nuclear forces, of nuclear particles and of nuclear radiation particles must comply to the limit. And experiments show that they indeed do. In fact, if they did not, the quantum of action in electrodynamic situations could be circumvented, as you can check.

**Challenge 74**, page 96: Outside the garage, all atoms need to form the same solid structure again.

**Challenge 75**, page 97: Terabyte chips would need to have small memory cells. Small cells imply thin barriers. Thin barriers imply high probabilities for tunnelling. Tunnelling implies lack of memory.

**Challenge 81**, page 108: If a particle were not elementary, its components would be bound by an interaction. But there are no known interactions outside those of the standard model.

**Challenge 82**, page 109: The difficulties to see hydrogen atoms are due to their small size and their small number of electrons. As a result, hydrogen atoms produce only weak contrasts in X-ray images. For the same reasons it is difficult to image them using electrons; the Bohr radius of hydrogen is only slightly larger than the electron Compton wavelength.

For the first time, in 2008, a research team claimed to have imaged hydrogen atoms adsorbed on graphene with the help of a transmission electron microscope. For details, see J. C. MEYER, C. O. GRIT, M. F. CROMMLE & A. ZETTI, *Imaging and dynamics of light atoms and molecules on graphene*, Nature 454, pp. 319–322, 2008. However, it seems that the report has not been confirmed by another group yet.

More hydrogen images have appeared in recent years. You may search for olympicene on the internet, for example. For another recent result about hydrogen imaging, see above.

**Challenge 84**, page 109: This is not easy! Can you use the concept of action to show that there indeed is a fundamental difference between very similar and very different operators?

**Challenge 86**, page 110:  $r = 86 \text{ pm}$ , thus  $T = 12 \text{ eV}$ . This compares to the actual value of  $13.6 \text{ eV}$ . The trick for the derivation of the formula is to use  $\langle \psi | r_x^2 | \psi \rangle = \frac{1}{3} \langle \psi | \mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r} | \psi \rangle$ , a relation valid for states with no orbital angular momentum. It is valid for all coordinates and also for the three momentum observables, as long as the system is non-relativistic.

**Challenge 87**, page 111: A quantum fluctuation would require the universe to exist already. Such statements, regularly found in the press, are utter nonsense.

**Challenge 88**, page 112: Point particles cannot be marked; nearby point particles cannot be distinguished, due to the quantum of action.

**Challenge 89**, page 112: The solution is *two* gloves. In the original setting, if two men and two women want to make love without danger, in theory they need only *two* condoms.

**Challenge 94**, page 114: The Sackur–Tetrode formula is best deduced in the following way. We start with an ideal monoatomic gas of volume  $V$ , with  $N$  particles, and total energy  $U$ . In phase space, *state sum*  $Z$  is given by

$$Z = \frac{V^N}{N!} \frac{1}{\Lambda^{3N}}. \quad (155)$$

We use Stirling's approximation  $N! \approx N^N/e^N$ , and the definition of the entropy as  $S = \partial(kT \ln Z)/\partial T$ . Inserting the definition of  $\Lambda$ , this gives the Sackur–Tetrode equation.

**Challenge 96**, page 117: To write anything about two particles on paper, we need to distinguish them, even if the distinction is arbitrary.

**Challenge 99**, page 123: The idea, also called *quantum money*, is not compatible with the size and lifetime requirements of actual banknotes.

**Challenge 100**, page 124: Twins differ in the way their intestines are folded, in the lines of their hands and other skin folds. Sometimes, but not always, features like black points on the skin are mirror inverted on the two twins.

**Challenge 109**, page 135: Three.

**Challenge 110**, page 135: Not for a mattress. This is not easy to picture.

**Challenge 111**, page 136: Angels can be distinguished by name, can talk and can sing; thus they are made of a large number of fermions. In fact, many angels are human sized, so that they do not even fit on the tip of a pin.

**Challenge 117**, page 140: A boson can be represented by an object glued to one infinitesimally thin thread whose two tails reach spatial infinity.

**Challenge 118**, page 141: Trees, like all macroscopic objects, have a spin value that depends on their angular momentum. Being classical objects whose phase can be observed, the spin value is uncertain. It makes no sense to ask whether trees or other macroscopic objects are bosons or fermions, as they are not quantons.

**Challenge 121**, page 142: Ghosts, like angels, can be distinguished by name, can talk and can be seen; thus they contain fermions. However, they can pass through walls and they are transparent; thus they cannot be made of fermions, but must be images, made of bosons. That is a contradiction.

**Challenge 122**, page 144: Macroscopic superpositions cannot be drawn, because observation implies interaction with a bath, which destroys macroscopic superposition.

**Challenge 124**, page 146: The loss of non-diagonal elements leads to an increase in the diagonal elements, and thus of entropy.

**Challenge 127**, page 153: The energy speed is given by the advancement of the outer two tails; that speed is never larger than the speed of light.

**Challenge 128**, page 155: No, as taking a photo implies an interaction with a bath, which would destroy the superposition. In more detail, a photograph requires illumination; illumination is a macroscopic electromagnetic field; a macroscopic field is a bath; a bath implies decoherence; decoherence destroys superpositions.

**Challenge 131**, page 157: It depends. They can be due to interference or to intensity sums. In the case of radio the effect is clearer. If at a particular frequency the signals changes periodically from one station to another, one has a genuine interference effect.

**Challenge 132**, page 157: They interfere. But this is a trick question; what is a monochromatic electron? Does it occur in the laboratory?

**Challenge 133**, page 157: Such a computer requires clear phase relations between components; such phase relations are extremely sensitive to outside disturbances. At present, they do not hold longer than a hundred microseconds, whereas long computer programs require minutes and hours to run.

**Challenge 134**, page 157: A record is an effect of a process that must be *hard to reverse or undo*. The traces of a broken egg are easy to clean on a large glass plate, but hard in the wool of a sheep. Broken teeth, torn clothes, or scratches on large surfaces are good records. Forensic scientists know many additional examples.

**Challenge 138**, page 166: Any other bath also does the trick, such as the atmosphere, sound vibrations, electromagnetic fields, etc.

**Challenge 139**, page 166: The Moon is in contact with baths like the solar wind, falling meteorites, the electromagnetic background radiation of the deep universe, the neutrino flux from the Sun, cosmic radiation, etc.

**Challenge 140**, page 168: Spatially periodic potentials have the property. Decoherence then leads to momentum diagonalization.

**Challenge 142**, page 171: If so, let the author know.

**Challenge 143**, page 182: The red shift value is  $z = 9.9995$ . From the formula for the longitudinal Doppler shift we get  $v/c = ((z+1)^2 - 1)/((z+1)^2 + 1)$ ; this yields 0.984 in the present case. The galaxy thus moves away from Earth with 98.4 % of the speed of light.

**Challenge 149**, page 184: Hydrogen atoms are in eigenstates for the reasons explained in the chapter on superpositions and probabilities: in a gas, atoms are part of a bath, and thus almost always in energy eigenstates.

**Challenge 154**, page 195: If several light beams are focused in the space between the mirrors, and if the light beam frequency is properly tuned with respect to the absorption frequencies of the atoms, atoms will experience a restoring force whenever they move away from the focus region. By shining light beams to the focus region from 6 directions, atoms are trapped. The technique of laser cooling is now widely used in research laboratories.

**Challenge 155**, page 196: No, despite its name, phosphorus is not phosphorescent, but chemoluminescent.

**Challenge 157**, page 197: This is a trick question. A change in  $\alpha$  requires a change in  $c$ ,  $\hbar$ ,  $e$  or  $\epsilon_0$ . None of these changes is possible or observable, as all our measurement apparatus are based on these units. Speculations about change of  $\alpha$ , despite their frequency in the press and in scientific journals, are idle talk.

**Challenge 158**, page 197: A change of physical units such that  $\hbar = c = e = 1$  would change the value of  $\epsilon_0$  in such a way that  $4\pi\epsilon_0 = 1/\alpha \approx 137.036$ .

**Challenge 161**, page 207: Mass is a measure of the amount of energy. The ‘square of mass’ makes no sense.

Vol. VI, page 112

**Challenge 165**, page 210: Planck limits can be exceeded for extensive observables for which many particle systems can exceed single particle limits, such as mass, momentum, energy or electrical resistance.

**Challenge 167**, page 212: Do not forget the relativistic time dilation.

**Challenge 168**, page 212: The formula with  $n - 1$  is a better fit. Why?

**Challenge 171**, page 213: No! They are much too precise to make sense. They are only given as an illustration for the behaviour of the Gaussian distribution. Real measurement distributions are not Gaussian to the precision implied in these numbers.

**Challenge 172**, page 213: About 0.3 m/s. It is *not* 0.33 m/s, it is *not* 0.333 m/s and it is *not* any longer strings of threes.

**Challenge 174**, page 219: The slowdown goes *quadratically* with time, because every new slowdown adds to the old one!

**Challenge 175**, page 220: No, only properties of parts of the universe are listed. The universe itself has no properties, as shown in the last volume.

**Challenge 176**, page 221: The double of that number, the number made of the sequence of all even numbers, etc.

**Challenge 179**, page 225: We will find out in the last volume that all measurement values have upper and lower bounds. We will also find out that two physical measurement results cannot differ just from, say, the 300th decimal place onwards. So indeed, all measurement results are real numbers, but not vice versa. It needs to be stressed that for quantum theory, for relativity and also for Galilean physics this restriction has no consequences whatsoever.

**Challenge 181**, page 226:  $|z|^2$  is the *determinant* of the matrix  $z = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Challenge 186**, page 227: Use Cantor's diagonal argument, as in challenge 274.

**Challenge 187**, page 228: Any quaternion  $X = ai + bj + ck$  with  $a^2 + b^2 + c^2 = 1$  solves the equation  $X^2 + 1 = 0$ ; the purely imaginary solutions  $+i$  and  $-i$  are thus augmented by a continuous sphere of solutions in quaternion space.

**Challenge 190**, page 230: Any rotation by an angle  $2\pi$  is described by  $-1$ . Only a rotation by  $4\pi$  is described by  $+1$ ; quaternions indeed describe spinors.

**Challenge 192**, page 232: Just check the result component by component. See also the mentioned reference.

**Challenge 194**, page 234: No. Because the unit octonions are not associative, they do not form a group at all. Despite its superficial appeal, this line of reasoning has not led to any insight into the nature of the fundamental interactions.

**Challenge 195**, page 235: For a Gaussian integer  $n + im$  to be prime, the integer  $n^2 + m^2$  must be prime, and in addition, a condition on  $n \bmod 3$  must be satisfied; which one and why?

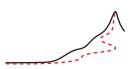
**Challenge 197**, page 236: The set that contains only the zero vector.

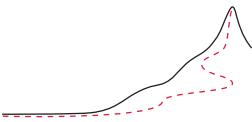
**Challenge 198**, page 236: The metric is regular, positive definite and obeys the triangle inequality.

**Challenge 200**, page 237: Essentially only the vector spaces listed in the appendix (or in the book).

**Challenge 201**, page 237: If you cannot, blame your math teacher at secondary school, and then look up the definitions. It is not a difficult topic.

**Challenge 202**, page 238: Spaces could exist approximately, as averages of non-continuous structures. This idea is explored in modern research; an example is given in the last volume of this series.





## BIBLIOGRAPHY

“ No man but a blockhead ever wrote except for money.

Samuel Johnson

“ As soon as you write, no time to read remains.

Anonymous

- 1 GIUSEPPE FUMAGALLI, *Chi l'ha detto?*, Hoepli, Milano, 1983. Cited on page 15.
- 2 The quantum of action was introduced in MAX PLANCK, *Über irreversible Strahlungsvorgänge*, Sitzungsberichte der Preußischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Berlin pp. 440–480, 1899. In the paper, Planck used the letter *b* for what nowadays is called *h*. Cited on page 17.
- 3 Bohr explained the indivisibility of the quantum of action in his famous Como lecture. See N. BOHR, *Atomtheorie und Naturbeschreibung*, Springer, 1931. On page 16 he writes: ‘No more is it likely that the fundamental concepts of the classical theories will ever become superfluous for the description of physical experience. The recognition of the indivisibility of the quantum of action, and the determination of its magnitude, not only depend on an analysis of measurements based on classical concepts, but it continues to be the application of these concepts alone that makes it possible to relate the symbolism of the quantum theory to the data of experience.’ He also writes: ‘...the fundamental postulate of the indivisibility of the quantum of action is itself, from the classical point of view, an irrational element which inevitably requires us to forgo a causal mode of description and which, because of the coupling between phenomena and their observation, forces us to adopt a new mode of description designated as complementary in the sense that any given application of classical concepts precludes the simultaneous use of other classical concepts which in a different connection are equally necessary for the elucidation of the phenomena ...’ and ‘...the finite magnitude of the quantum of action prevents altogether a sharp distinction being made between a phenomenon and the agency by which it is observed, a distinction which underlies the customary concept of observation and, therefore, forms the basis of the classical ideas of motion.’ Other statements about the indivisibility of the quantum of action can be found in N. BOHR, *Atomic Physics and Human Knowledge*, Science Editions, 1961. See also MAX JAMMER, *The Philosophy of Quantum Mechanics*, Wiley, first edition, 1974, pp. 90–91. Cited on page 17.
- 4 For some of the rare modern publications emphasizing the quantum of action see M. B. MENSKY, *The action uncertainty principle and quantum gravity*, Physics Letters A 162, p. 219, 1992, and M. B. MENSKY, *The action uncertainty principle in continuous quantum measurements*, Physics Letters A 155, pp. 229–235, 1991. Schwinger's quantum-action principle is also used in RICHARD F. W. BADER, *Atoms in Molecules – A Quantum Theory*, Oxford University Press, 1994.

There is a large number of general textbooks on quantum theory. There is one for every taste.

A well-known *conceptual* introduction is JEAN-MARC LÉVY-LEBLOND & FRANÇOISE BALIBAR, *Quantique – Rudiments*, Masson, 1997, translated into English as *Quantics*, North-Holland, 1990.

One of the most beautiful books is JULIAN SCHWINGER, *Quantum Mechanics – Symbolism of Atomic Measurements*, edited by Berthold-Georg Englert, Springer Verlag, 2001.

A modern approach with a beautiful introduction is MAX SCHUBERT & GERMARD WEBER, *Quantentheorie – Grundlagen und Anwendungen*, Spektrum Akademischer Verlag, 1993.

A standard beginner's text is C. COHEN-TANNOUDJI, B. DIU & F. LALOË, *Mécanique quantique I et II*, Hermann, Paris, 1977. It is also available in several translations.

A good text is ASHER PERES, *Quantum Theory – Concepts and Methods*, Kluwer, 1995.

For a lively approach, see VINCENT ICKE, *The Force of Symmetry*, Cambridge University Press, 1994.

New textbooks are published regularly around the world. Cited on pages 17 and 255.

- 5 The best source for the story about the walk in the forest with Planck's son Erwin is HANS ROOS & ARMIN HERMANN, editors, *Max Planck – Vorträge, Reden, Erinnerungen*, Springer, 2001, page 125. As the text explains, the story was told by Erwin Planck to at least two different people. Erwin Planck himself was part of the failed 1944 plot against Hitler and was hanged in January 1945. Cited on page 20.
- 6 MAX BORN, *Zur Quantenmechanik der Stoßvorgänge (vorläufige Mitteilung)*, Zeitschrift für Physik 37, pp. 863–867, 1926, MAX BORN, *Quantenmechanik der Stoßvorgänge*, Zeitschrift für Physik 38, pp. 803–827, 1926. Cited on page 24.
- 7 See for example the papers by JAN HILGEVOORD, *The uncertainty principle for energy and time*, American Journal of Physics 64, pp. 1451–1456, 1996, and by PAUL BUSCH, *On the time-energy uncertainty relation, parts 1 & 2*, Foundations of Physics 20, pp. 1–43, 1990. A classic is the paper by EUGENE P. WIGNER, *On the time-energy uncertainty relation*, in ABDUS SALAM & EUGENE P. WIGNER, editors, *Aspects of Quantum Theory*, Cambridge University Press, 1972. Cited on page 25.
- 8 See also the booklet by CLAUS MATTHECK, *Warum alles kaputt geht – Form und Versagen in Natur und Technik*, Forschungszentrum Karlsruhe, 2003. Cited on page 29.
- 9 R. CLIFTON, J. BUB & H. HALVORSON, *Characterizing quantum theory in terms of information-theoretic constraints*, [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0211089](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0211089). Cited on page 36.
- 10 This way to look at cans of beans goes back to the text by SUSAN HEWITT & EDWARD SUBITZKY, *A call for more scientific truth in product warning labels*, Journal of Irreproducible Results 36, nr. 1, 1991. Cited on page 37.
- 11 J. MALIK, *The yields of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki nuclear explosions*, Technical Report LA-8819, Los Alamos National Laboratory, September 1985. Cited on page 38.
- 12 The quotes on motion are found in chapter VI of F. ENGELS, *Herrn Eugen Dührings Umnwälzung der Wissenschaft*, Verlag für fremdsprachliche Literatur, 1946. The book is commonly called *Anti-Dühring*. Cited on pages 39 and 74.
- 13 RODNEY LOUDON, *The Quantum Theory of Light*, Oxford University Press, 2000. Cited on page 40.
- 14 E. M. BRUMBERG & S. I. VAVILOV, Izvest. Akad. Nauk. Omen Ser. 7, p. 919, 1933. Cited on page 40.
- 15 On photon detection in the human eye, see the influential review by F. RIEKE &

- D. A. BAYLOR, *Single-photon detection by rod cells of the retina*, Reviews of Modern Physics 70, pp. 1027–1036, 1998. It can be found on the internet as a pdf file. Cited on page 42.
- 16** F. RIEKE & D. A. BAYLOR, *Single-photon detection by rod cells of the retina*, Reviews of Modern Physics 70, pp. 1027–1036, 1998. They also mention that the eye usually works at photon fluxes between  $10^8 \text{ /}\mu\text{m}^2\text{s}$  (sunlight) and  $10^{-2} \text{ /}\mu\text{m}^2\text{s}$  (starlight). The cones, in the retina detect, in colour, light intensities in the uppermost seven or eight decades, whereas the rods detect, in black and white, the lower light intensities. Cited on page 44.
- 17** E. FISCHBACH, H. KLOOR, R. A. LANGEL, A. T. Y. LUI & M. PEREDO, *New geomagnetic limit on the photon mass and on long-range forces coexisting with electromagnetism*, Physical Review Letters 73, pp. 514–517, 1994. Cited on page 45.
- 18** A. H. COMPTON, *The scattering of X-rays as particles*, American Journal of Physics 29, pp. 817–820, 1961. This is a pedagogical presentation of the discoveries he made in 1923. Cited on page 45.
- 19** The reference paper on this topic is G. BREITENBACH, S. SCHILLER & J. MLYNEK, *Measurement of the quantum states of squeezed light*, 387, pp. 471–475, 1997. It is available freely at [gerdbreitenbach.de/publications/nature1997.pdf](http://gerdbreitenbach.de/publications/nature1997.pdf). Cited on pages 48 and 241.
- 20** The famous paper is R. HANBURY BROWN & R. Q. TWISS, Nature 178, p. 1046, 1956. They got the idea to measure light in this way from their earlier work, which used the same method with radio waves: R. HANBURY BROWN & R. Q. TWISS, Nature 177, p. 27, 1956. The complete discussion is given in their papers R. HANBURY BROWN & R. Q. TWISS, *Interferometry of the intensity fluctuations in light. I. Basic theory: the correlation between photons in coherent beams of radiation*, Proceedings of the Royal Society A 242, pp. 300–324, 1957, and R. HANBURY BROWN & R. Q. TWISS, *Interferometry of the intensity fluctuations in light. II. An experimental test of the theory for partially coherent light*, Proceedings of the Royal Society A 243, pp. 291–319, 1958. Both are downloadable for free on the internet and are well worth reading. Cited on page 52.
- 21** J. GLANZ, *First light from a space laser*, Science 269, p. 1336, 1995. Cited on page 54.
- 22** A. EINSTEIN, *Über einen die Erzeugung und Umwandlung des Lichtes betreffenden heuristischen Standpunkt*, Annalen der Physik 17, pp. 132–184, 1905. Cited on page 55.
- 23** See the summary by P. W. MILONNI, *Answer to question 45: What (if anything) does the photoelectric effect teach us?*, American Journal of Physics 65, pp. 11–12, 1997. Cited on page 55.
- 24** For a detailed account, See J. J. PRENTIS, *Poincaré's proof of the quantum discontinuity of nature*, American Journal of Physics 63, pp. 339–350, 1995. The original papers are HENRI POINCARÉ, *Sur la théorie des quanta*, Comptes Rendus de l'Académie des Sciences (Paris) 153, pp. 1103–1108, 1911, and HENRI POINCARÉ, *Sur la théorie des quanta*, Journal de Physique (Paris) 2, pp. 5–34, 1912. Cited on page 55.
- 25** J. JACOBSON, G. BJÖRK, I. CHANG & Y. YAMAMOTO, *Photonic de Broglie waves*, Physical Review Letters 74, pp. 4835–4838, 1995. The first measurement was published by E. J. S. FONSECA, C. H. MONKEN & S. DE PÁDUA, *Measurement of the de Broglie wavelength of a multiphoton wave packet*, Physical Review Letters 82, pp. 2868–2671, 1995. Cited on page 55.
- 26** For the three-photon state, see M. W. MITCHELL, J. S. LUNDEEN & A. M. STEINBERG, *Super-resolving phase measurements with a multiphoton entangled state*, Nature 429, pp. 161–164, 2004, and for the four-photon state see, in the same edition, P. WALThER, J.-W. PAN,

- M. ASPELMEYER, R. URGIN, S. GASPARONI & A. ZEILINGER, *De Broglie wavelength of a non-local four-photon state*, Nature 429, pp. 158–161, 2004. Cited on page 55.
- 27 For an introduction to squeezed light, see L. MANDEL, *Non-classical states of the electromagnetic field*, Physica Scripta T 12, pp. 34–42, 1986. Cited on page 55.
- 28 FRIEDRICH HERNECK, *Einstein und sein Weltbild: Aufsätze und Vorträge*, Buchverlag Der Morgen, 1976, page 97. Cited on page 56.
- 29 The famous quote on single-photon interference is found on page 9 of famous, beautiful but difficult textbook P. A. M. DIRAC, *The Principles of Quantum Mechanics*, Clarendon Press, 1930. It is also discussed, in a somewhat confused way, in the otherwise informative article by H. PAUL, *Interference between independent photons*, Reviews of Modern Physics 58, pp. 209–231, 1986. Cited on pages 59 and 66.
- 30 The original papers on coherent states are three: R. J. GLAUBER, *The quantum theory of optical coherence*, Physical Review 130, pp. 2529–2539, 1963, J. R. KLAUDER, *Continuous-representation theory*, I and II, Journal of Mathematical Physics 4, pp. 1055–1058, 1963, and E. C. G. SUDARSHAN, *Equivalence of semiclassical and quantum mechanical descriptions of statistical light beams*, Physical Review Letters 10, p. 227, 1963. Cited on page 63.
- 31 See, for example the wonderful text RICHARD P. FEYNMAN, *QED – The Strange Theory of Light and Matter*, pp. 73–75, Princeton University Press, 1988, or RICHARD P. FEYNMAN & STEVEN WEINBERG, *Elementary Particles and the Laws of Physics*, p. 23, Cambridge University Press 1987. Cited on page 63.
- 32 WOLFGANG TITTEL, J. BRENDL, H. ZBINDEN & N. GISIN, *Violation of Bell inequalities by photons more than 10 km apart*, Physical Review Letters 81, pp. 3563–3566, 26 October 1998. Cited on page 64.
- 33 N. BOHR & L. ROSENFIELD, *Zur Frage der Meßbarkeit der elektromagnetischen Feldgrößen*, Mat.-fys. Medd. Danske Vid. Selsk. 12, p. 8, 1933. The results were later published in English as N. BOHR & L. ROSENFIELD, *Field and charge measurements in quantum electrodynamics*, Physical Review 78, pp. 794–798, 1950. Cited on page 65.
- 34 Misleading statements are given in the introduction and in the conclusion of the review by H. PAUL, *Interference between independent photons*, Review of Modern Physics 58, pp. 209–231, 1986. However, in the bulk of the article the author in practice retracts the statement, e.g. on page 221. Cited on page 66.
- 35 G. MAGYAR & L. MANDEL, *Interference fringes produced by superposition of two independent maser light beams*, Nature 198, pp. 255–256, 1963. Cited on page 67.
- 36 R. KIDD, J. AEDINI & A. ANTON, *Evolution of the modern photon*, American Journal of Physics 57, pp. 27–35, 1989, Cited on page 69.
- 37 The whole bunch of atoms behaves as one single molecule; one speaks of a Bose–Einstein condensate. The first observations, worthy of a Nobel prize, were by M.H. ANDERSON & al., *Observation of Bose–Einstein condensation in a dilute atomic vapour*, Science 269, pp. 198–201, 1995, C. C. BRADLEY, C. A. SACKETT, J. J. TOLLETT & R. G. HULET, *Evidence of Bose–Einstein condensation in an atomic gas with attractive interactions*, Physical Review Letters 75, pp. 1687–1690, 1995, K. B. DAVIS, M. -O. MEWES, M. R. ANDREWS, N. J. VAN DRUTEN, D. S. DURFEE, D. M. KURN & W. KETTERLE, *Bose–Einstein condensation in a gas of sodium atoms*, Physical Review Letters 75, pp. 3969–3973, 1995. For a simple introduction, see W. KETTERLE, *Experimental studies of Bose–Einstein condensation*, Physics Today pp. 30–35, December 1999. Cited on page 74.
- 38 J. L. COSTA-KRÄMER, N. GARCIA, P. GARCÍA-MOCHALES & P. A. SERENA, *Nanowire formation in macroscopic metallic contacts: a universal property of metals*, Surface

- Science Letters 342, pp. L1144–L1152, 1995. See also J. L. COSTA-KRÄMER, N. GARCIA, P. A. SERENA, P. GARCÍA-MOCHALES, M. MARQUÉS & A. CORREIA, *Conductance quantization in nanowires formed in macroscopic contacts*, Physical Review B p. 4416, 1997. Cited on page 74.
- 39** The beautiful undergraduate experiments made possible by this discovery are described in E. L. FOLEY, D. CANDELA, K. M. MARTINI & M. T. TUOMINEN, *An undergraduate laboratory experiment on quantized conductance in nanocontacts*, American Journal of Physics 67, pp. 389–393, 1999. Cited on pages 74 and 75.
- 40** L. DE BROGLIE, *Ondes et quanta*, Comptes rendus de l'Académie des Sciences 177, pp. 507–510, 1923. Cited on page 76.
- 41** C. JÖNSSON, *Interferenz von Elektronen am Doppelspalt*, Zeitschrift für Physik 161, pp. 454–474, 1961, C. JÖNSSON, *Electron diffraction at multiple slits*, American Journal of Physics 42, pp. 4–11, 1974. Because of the charge of electrons, this experiment is not easy to perform: any parts of the set-up that are insulating get charged and distort the picture. That is why the experient was performed much later with electrons than with atoms, neutrons and molecules. Cited on page 77.
- 42** M. ARNDT, O. NAIRZ, J. VOS-ANDREAE, C. KELLER, G. VAN DER ZOUW & A. ZEILINGER, *Wave-particle duality of C<sub>60</sub> molecules*, Nature 401, pp. 680–682, 14 October 1999. See also the observation for tetraphenyleporphyrin and C<sub>60</sub>F<sub>48</sub> by the same team, published as L. HACKERMÜLLER & al., *Wave nature of biomolecules and fluorofullerenes*, Physical Review Letters 91, p. 090408, 2003.  
No phenomoenon of quantum theory has been experimentally studied as much as quantum interference. The transition from interference to non-interference has also been explored, as in P. FACCHI, A. MARIANO & S. PASCAZIO, *Mesoscopic interference*, Recent Developments in Physics 3, pp. 1–29, 2002. Cited on page 77.
- 43** G. PAPINI, *Shadows of a maximal acceleration*, [arxiv.org/abs/gr-qc/0211011](https://arxiv.org/abs/gr-qc/0211011). Cited on page 79.
- 44** J. PERRIN, *Nobel Prize speech*, found at [www.nobel.se](http://www.nobel.se), and H. NAGAOKA, *Kinetics of a system of particles illustrating the line and the band spectrum and the phenomena of radioactivity*, Philosophical Magazine S6, 7, pp. 445–455, March 1904. Cited on page 79.
- 45** N. BOHR, *On the constitution of atoms and molecules: Introduction and Part I – binding of electrons by positive nuclei*, Philosophical Magazine 26, pp. 1–25, 1913, *On the constitution of atoms and molecules: Part II – systems containing only a single nucleus*, ibid., pp. 476–502, *On the constitution of atoms and molecules: Part III*, ibid., pp. 857–875. Cited on page 79.
- 46** ROBERT H. DICKE & JAMES P. WITTKE, *Introduction to Quantum Theory*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1960. See also STEPHEN GASIOROWICZ, *Quantum Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, 1974. Cited on page 81.
- 47** P. CARRUTHERS & M. M. NIETO, *Phase and angle variables in quantum mechanics*, Review of Modern Physics 40, pp. 411–440, 1968. Cited on page 82.
- 48** The indeterminacy relation for rotational motion is well explained by W. H. LOISELL, *Amplitude and phase uncertainty relations*, Physics Letters 7, p. 60, 1963. Cited on page 82.
- 49** S. FRANKE-ARNOLD, S. M. BARNETT, E. YAO, J. LEACH, J. COURTIAL & M. PADGETT, *Uncertainty principle for angular position and angular momentum*, New Journal of Physics 6, p. 103, 2004. This is a freely accessible online journal. Cited on page 82.
- 50** W. GERLACH & O. STERN, *Der experimentelle Nachweis des magnetischen Moments des Silberatoms*, Zeitschrift für Physik 8, p. 110, 1921. See also the pedagogical explanation by

- M. HANNOUT, S. HOYT, A. KRYOWONOS & A. WIDOM, *Quantum measurement and the Stern–Gerlach experiment*, American Journal of Physics 66, pp. 377–379, 1995. Cited on page 83.
- 51** J. P. WOERDMAN, G. NIENHUIS, I. KUŠČER, *Is it possible to rotate an atom?*, Optics Communications 93, pp. 135–144, 1992. We are talking about atoms rotating around their centre of mass; atoms can of course rotate around other bodies, as discussed by M. P. SILVERMAN, *Circular birefringence of an atom in uniform rotation: the classical perspective*, American Journal of Physics 58, pp. 310–317, 1990. Cited on page 85.
- 52** J. SCHMIEDMAYER, M. S. CHAPMAN, C. R. EKSTROM, T. D. HAMMOND, S. WEHINGER & D. E. PRITCHARD, *Index of refraction of various gases for sodium matter waves*, Physical Review Letters 74, p. 1043-1046, 1995. Cited on page 85.
- 53** The original result is due to V. DE SABBATA & C. SIVARAM, *A minimal time and time-temperature uncertainty principle*, Foundations of Physics Letters 5, pp. 183–189, 1992. Experimental details are found, for example, in G. T. GILLIES & S. W. ALLISON, *Experimental test of a time-temperature formulation of the uncertainty principle via nanoparticle fluorescence*, Foundations of Physics Letters 18, pp. 65–74, 2005. Cited on page 86.
- 54** ALBERT EINSTEIN & MAX BORN, *Briefwechsel 1916 bis 1955*, Rowohlt, 1969, as cited on page 34. Cited on page 87.
- 55** E. SCHRÖDINGER, *Quantisierung als Eigenwertproblem I*, Annalen der Physik 79, pp. 361–376, 1926, and *Quantisierung als Eigenwertproblem II*, Annalen der Physik 79, pp. 489–527, 1926. Cited on page 92.
- 56** C. G. GRAY, G. KARL & V. A. NOVIKOV, *From Maupertius to Schrödinger. Quantization of classical variational principles*, American Journal of Physics 67, pp. 959–961, 1999. Cited on page 92.
- 57** Y. AHARONOV & D. BOHM, *Significance of electromagnetic potentials in the quantum theory*, Physical Review 115, pp. 485–491, 1959. Cited on page 98.
- 58** R. COLELLA, A. W. OVERHAUSER & S. A. WERNER, *Observation of gravitationally induced quantum interference*, Physical review Letters 34, pp. 1472–1474, 1975. Cited on page 100.
- 59** The trend-setting result that started this exploration was HANS-WERNER FINK & al., *Atomic resolution in lens-less low-energy electron holography*, Physical Review Letters 67, pp. 1543–1546, 1991. Cited on page 101.
- 60** L. CSER, Gy. TÖRÖK, G. KREXNER, I. SHARKOV & B. FARAGÓ, *Holographic imaging of atoms using thermal neutrons*, Physical Review Letters 89, p. 175504, 2002. Cited on page 101.
- 61** G. E. UHLENBECK & S. GOUDSMIT, *Ersetzung der Hypothese vom unmechanischen Zwang durch eine Forderung bezüglich des inneren Verhaltens jedes einzelnen Elektrons*, Naturwissenschaften 13, pp. 953–954, 1925. Cited on page 104.
- 62** L. THOMAS, *The motion of the spinning electron*, Nature 117, p. 514, 1926. Cited on page 105.
- 63** K. VON MEYENN & E. SCHUCKING, *Wolfgang Pauli*, Physics Today pp. 43–48, February 2001. Cited on page 105.
- 64** T. D. NEWTON & E. P. WIGNER, *Localized states for elementary systems*, Review of Modern Physics 21, pp. 400–406, 1949. L. L. FOLDY & S. A. WOUTHUYSEN, *On the Dirac theory of spin 1/2 particles and its nonrelativistic limit*, Physical Review 78, pp. 29–36, 1950. Both are classic papers. Cited on page 106.

- 65** J. P. COSTELLA & B. H. J. MCKELLAR, *The Foldy–Wouthuysen transformation*, American Journal of Physics 63, pp. 1119–1121, 1995. Cited on page 106.
- 66** For an account of the first measurement of the g-factor of the electron, see H. R. CRANE, *How we happened to measure g-2: a tale of serendipity*, Physics in Perspective 2, pp. 135–140, 2000. The most interesting part is how the experimentalists had to overcome the conviction of almost all theorists that the measurement was impossible in principle. Cited on page 107.
- 67** The *g*-factors for composite nuclei are explained briefly on [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nuclear\\_magnetic\\_moment](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nuclear_magnetic_moment) and measured values are found at [www-nds.iaea.org](http://www-nds.iaea.org). See also H. DEHMELT, *Is the electron a composite particle?*, Hyperfine Interactions 81, pp. 1–3, 1993. Cited on pages 108 and 254.
- 68** The nearest anyone has come to an image of a hydrogen atom is found in A. YAZDANI, *Watching an atom tunnel*, Nature 409, pp. 471–472, 2001. The experiments on Bose–Einstein condensates are also candidates for images of hydrogen atoms. The company Hitachi made a fool of itself in 1992 by claiming in a press release that its newest electron microscope could image hydrogen atoms. Cited on page 109.
- 69** A. M. WOLSKY, *Kinetic energy, size, and the uncertainty principle*, American Journal of Physics 42, pp. 760–763, 1974. Cited on page 110.
- 70** For a fascinating summary, see M. A. CIRONE, G. METIKAS & W. P. SCHLEICH, *Unusual bound or localized states*, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0102065](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0102065). Cited on page 110.
- 71** See the paper by MARTIN GARDNER, *Science fiction puzzle tales*, Clarkson Potter, 67, pp. 104–105, 1981, or his book *Aha! Insight*, Scientific American & W.H. Freeman, 1978. Several versions are given A. HAJNAL & P. LOVÁSZ, *An algorithm to prevent the propagation of certain diseases at minimum cost*, in *Interfaces Between Computer Science and Operations Research*, edited by J. K. LENSTRA, A. H. G. RINNOOY KAN & P. VAN EMDE BOAS, Mathematisch Centrum, Amsterdam 1978, whereas the computer euphemism is used by A. ORLITZKY & L. SHEPP, *On curbing virus propagation*, Technical memorandum, Bell Labs 1989. Cited on page 112.
- 72** A complete discussion of the problem can be found in chapter 10 of ILAN VARDI, *Computational Recreations in Mathematica*, Addison Wesley, 1991. Cited on page 112.
- 73** On Gibbs’ paradox, see your favourite text on thermodynamics or statistical mechanics. See also W. H. ZUREK, *Algorithmic randomness and physical entropy*, Physical Review A 40, pp. 4731–4751, 1989. Zurek shows that the Sackur–Tetrode formula can be derived from algorithmic entropy considerations. Cited on page 114.
- 74** S. N. BOSE, *Plancks Gesetz und Lichtquantenhypothese*, Zeitschrift für Physik 26, pp. 178–181, 1924. The theory was then expanded in A. EINSTEIN, *Quantentheorie des einatomigen idealen Gases*, Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin 22, pp. 261–267, 1924, A. EINSTEIN, *Quantentheorie des einatomigen idealen Gases. Zweite Abhandlung*, Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin 23, pp. 3–14, 1925, A. EINSTEIN, *Zur Quantentheorie des idealen Gases*, Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin 23, pp. 18–25, 1925. Cited on page 118.
- 75** C. K. HONG, Z. Y. OU & L. MANDEL, *Measurement of subpicosecond time intervals between two photons by interference*, Physical Review Letters 59, pp. 2044–2046, 1987. See also T. B. PITTMAN, D. V. STREKALOV, A. MIGDAL, M. H. RUBIN, A. V. SERGIENKO & Y. H. SHIH, *Can two-photon interference be considered the interference of two photons?*, Physical Review Letters 77, pp. 1917–1920, 1996. Cited on page 118.

- 76** An example of such an experiment performed with electrons instead of photons is described in E. BOQUILLON, V. FREULON, J.-M. BERROIR, P. DEGIOVANNI, B. PLAÇAIS, A. CAVANNA, Y. JIN & G. FÈVE, *Coherence and indistinguishability of single electrons emitted by independent sources*, Science 339, pp. 1054–1057, 2013. See also the comment C. SCHÖNENBERGER, *Two indistinguishable electrons interfere in an electronic device*, Science 339, pp. 1041–1042, 2013. Cited on page 119.
- 77** M. SCHELLEKENS, R. HOPPELER, A. PERRIN, J. VIANA GOMES, D. BOIRON, C. I. WESTBROOK & A. ASPECT, *Hanbury Brown Twiss effect for ultracold quantum gases*, Science 310, p. 648, 2005, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/cond-mat/0508466](https://arxiv.org/abs/cond-mat/0508466). J. VIANA GOMES, A. PERRIN, M. SCHELLEKENS, D. BOIRON, C. I. WESTBROOK & M. BELSLY, *Theory for a Hanbury Brown Twiss experiment with a ballistically expanding cloud of cold atoms*, Physical Review A 74, p. 053607, 2006, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0606147](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0606147). T. JELTES, J. M. McNAMARA, W. HOGERVORST, W. VASSEN, V. KRACHMALNICOFF, M. SCHELLEKENS, A. PERRIN, H. CHANG, D. BOIRON, A. ASPECT & C. I. WESTBROOK, *Comparison of the Hanbury Brown-Twiss effect for bosons and fermions*, Nature 445, p. 402, 2007, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/cond-mat/0612278](https://arxiv.org/abs/cond-mat/0612278). Cited on page 120.
- 78** The experiment is described in E. RAMBERG & G. A. SNOW, *Experimental limit on a small violation of the Pauli principle*, Physics Letters B 238, pp. 438–441, 1990. Other experimental tests are reviewed in O. W. GREENBERG, *Particles with small violations of Fermi or Bose statistics*, Physical Review D 43, pp. 4111–4120, 1991. Cited on page 122.
- 79** The original no-cloning theorem is by D. DIEKS, *Communication by EPR devices*, Physics Letters A 92, pp. 271–272, 1982, and by W. K. WOOTTERS & W. H. ZUREK, *A single quantum cannot be cloned*, Nature 299, pp. 802–803, 1982. For a discussion of photon and multiparticle cloning, see N. GISIN & S. MASSAR, *Optimal quantum cloning machines*, Physics Review Letters 79, pp. 2153–2156, 1997. The whole topic has been presented in detail by V. BUZEK & M. HILLERY, *Quantum cloning*, Physics World 14, pp. 25–29, November 2001. Cited on page 122.
- 80** S. J. WIESNER, *Conjugate Coding*, SIGACT News, 15, pp. 78–88, 1983. This widely cited paper was one of starting points of quantum information theory. Cited on page 123.
- 81** The most recent experimental and theoretical results on physical cloning are described in A. LAMAS-LINARES, C. SIMON, J. C. HOWELL & D. BOUWMEESTER, *Experimental quantum cloning of single photons*, Science 296, pp. 712 – 714, 2002, D. COLLINS & S. POPESCU, *A classical analogue of entanglement*, preprint [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0107082](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/0107082), 2001, and A. DAFFERTSHOFER, A. R. PLASTINO & A. PLASTINO, *Classical no-cloning theorem*, Physical Review Letters 88, p. 210601, 2002. Cited on page 123.
- 82** E. WIGNER, *On unitary representations of the inhomogeneous Lorentz group*, Annals of Mathematics 40, pp. 149–204, 1939. This famous paper summarises the work which later brought him the Nobel Prize in Physics. Cited on pages 125 and 137.
- 83** For a full list of isotopes, see R. B. FIRESTONE, *Table of Isotopes, Eighth Edition, 1999 Update*, with CDROM, John Wiley & Sons, 1999. Cited on page 127.
- 84** This is deduced from the  $g - 2$  measurements, as explained in his Nobel-prize talk by HANS DEHMELT, *Experiments with an isolated subatomic particle at rest*, Reviews of Modern Physics 62, pp. 525–530, 1990. On this topic, see also his paper Ref. 67. No citations. and in HANS DEHMELT, *Is the electron a composite particle?*, Hyperfine Interactions 81, pp. 1–3, 1993.
- 85** G. GABRIELSE, H. DEHMELT & W. KELLS, *Observation of a relativistic, bistable hysteresis in the cyclotron motion of a single electron*, Physical Review Letters 54, pp. 537–540,

1985. No citations.
- 86** W. PAULI, *The connection between spin and statistics*, Physical Review 58, pp. 716– 722, 1940. Cited on page 133.
- 87** The belt trick has been popularized by Dirac, Feynman and many others. An example is R. P. FEYNMAN, *The reason for antiparticles*, in *Elementary Particles and the Laws of Physics: The 1986 Dirac Memorial Lectures*, Cambridge University Press, 1987. The belt trick is also explained, for example, on page 1148 in C. W. MISNER, K. S. THORNE & J. A. WHEELER, *Gravitation*, Freeman, 1973. It is called the *scissor trick* on page 43 of volume 1 of R. PENROSE & W. RINDLER, *Spinors and Spacetime*, 1984. It is also cited and discussed by R. GOULD, *Answer to question #7*, American Journal of Physics 63, p. 109, 1995. Still, some physicists do not like the belt-trick image for spin 1/2 particles; for an example, see I. DUCK & E. C. G. SUDARSHAN, *Toward an understanding of the spin-statistics theorem*, American Journal of Physics 66, pp. 284–303, 1998. Cited on page 133.
- 88** M. V. BERRY & J. M. ROBBINS, *Indistinguishability for quantum particles: spin, statistics and the geometric phase*, Proceedings of the Royal Society in London A 453, pp. 1771–1790, 1997. See also the comments to this result by J. TWAMLEY, *Statistics given a spin*, Nature 389, pp. 127–128, 11 September 1997. Their newer results are M. V. BERRY & J. M. ROBBINS, *Quantum indistinguishability: alternative constructions of the transported basis*, Journal of Physics A (Letters) 33, pp. L207–L214, 2000, and M. V. BERRY & J. M. ROBBINS, in *Spin-Statistics*, eds. R. HILBORN & G. TINO, American Institute of Physics, 2000, pp. 3–15. See also Michael Berry's home page at [www.phy.bris.ac.uk/people/berry\\_mv](http://www.phy.bris.ac.uk/people/berry_mv). Cited on page 135.
- 89** R. W. HARTUNG, *Pauli principle in Euclidean geometry*, American Journal of Physics 47, pp. 900–910, 1979. Cited on page 136.
- 90** The issue is treated in his *Summa Theologica*, in question 52 of the first part. The complete text, several thousand pages, can be found on the [www.newadvent.org](http://www.newadvent.org) website. Also present-day angelologists, of which there are only a few across the world, agree with Aquinas. Cited on page 136.
- 91** The point that spin can be seen as a rotation was already made by F. J. BELINFANTE, *On the spin angular momentum of mesons*, Physica 6, p. 887, 1939, and taken up again by HANS C. OHANIAN, *What is spin?*, American Journal of Physics 54, pp. 500–505, 1986. See also E. DURAN & A. ERSCHOW, Physikalische Zeitschrift der Sowjetunion 12, p. 466, 1937. Cited on page 138.
- 92** See the book by JEAN-MARC LÉVY-LEBLOND & FRANÇOISE BALIBAR in Ref. 4. Cited on page 141.
- 93** Generalizations of bosons and fermions are reviewed in the (serious!) paper by O. W. GREENBERG, D. M. GREENBERGER & T. V. GREENBERG, *(Para)bosons, (para)fermions, quons and other beasts in the menagerie of particle statistics*, at [arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/9306225](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/9306225). A newer summary is O. W. GREENBERG, *Theories of violation of statistics*, electronic preprint available at [arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0007054](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0007054). Cited on page 142.
- 94** Gell-Mann wrote this for the 1976 Nobel Conference (not for the Nobel speech; he is the only winner who never published it.) M. GELL-MANN, *What are the building blocks of matter?*, in D. HUFF & O. PREWITT, editors, *The Nature of the Physical Universe*, New York, Wiley, 1979, p. 29. Cited on page 143.
- 95** See e.g. the reprints of his papers in the standard collection by JOHN A. WHEELER & WOJCIECH H. ZUREK, *Quantum Theory and Measurement*, Princeton University Press, 1983. Cited on page 144.

- 96** H. D. ZEH, *On the interpretation of measurement in quantum theory*, Foundations of Physics 1, pp. 69–76, 1970. Cited on page 144.
- 97** LINDA REICHL, *A Modern Course in Statistical Physics*, Wiley, 2nd edition, 1998. An excellent introduction into thermodynamics. Cited on page 146.
- 98** E. JOOS & H. D. ZEH, *The emergence of classical properties through interactions with the environment*, Zeitschrift für Physik B 59, pp. 223–243, 1985. See also ERICH JOOS, *Decoherence and the appearance of a classical world in quantum theory*, Springer Verlag, 2003. Cited on page 148.
- 99** M. TEGMARK, *Apparent wave function collapse caused by scattering*, Foundation of Physics Letters 6, pp. 571–590, 1993, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/gr-qc/9310032](https://arxiv.org/abs/gr-qc/9310032). See also his paper that shows that the brain is not a quantum computer, M. TEGMARK, *The importance of quantum decoherence in brain processes*, Physical Review E 61, pp. 4194–4206, 2000, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9907009](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9907009). Cited on page 148.
- 100** The decoherence time is bound from above by the relaxation time. See A. O. CALDEIRA & A. J. LEGGETT, *Influence of damping on quantum interference: an exactly soluble model*, Physical Review A 31, 1985, pp. 1059–1066. This is the main reference about effects of decoherence for a harmonic oscillator. The general approach to relate decoherence to the influence of the environment is due to Niels Bohr, and has been pursued in detail by Heinz Dieter Zeh. Cited on page 149.
- 101** G. LINDBLAD, *On the generators of quantum dynamical subgroups*, Communications in Mathematical Physics 48, pp. 119–130, 1976. Cited on page 149.
- 102** WOJCIECH H. ZUREK, *Decoherence and the transition from quantum to classical*, Physics Today pp. 36–44, October 1991. An easy but somewhat confusing article. His reply to the numerous letters of response in Physics Today, April 1993, pp. 13–15, and pp. 81–90, exposes his ideas in a clearer way and gives a taste of the heated discussions on this topic. Cited on pages 149 and 156.
- 103** JOHN BARdeen, explained this regularly in the review talks he gave at the end of his life, such as the one the author heard in Tokyo in the year 1990. Cited on page 150.
- 104** Collapse times have been measured for the first time by the group of Serge Haroche in Paris. See M. BRUNE, E. HAGLEY, J. DREYER, X. MAITRE, A. MAALI, C. WUNDERLICH, J. M. RAIMOND & S. HAROCHE, *Observing the progressive decoherence of the “meter” in a quantum measurement*, Physical Review Letters 77, pp. 4887–4890, 1996. See also C. GUERLIN, J. BERNU, S. DELÉGLISE, C. SAYRIN, S. GLEYZES, S. KUHR, M. BRUNE, J.-M. RAIMOND & S. HAROCHE, *Progressive field-state collapse and quantum non-demolition photon counting*, Nature 448, pp. 889–893, 2007. Cited on pages 150 and 162.
- 105** Later experiments confirming the numerical predictions from decoherence were published by C. MONROE, D. M. MEEKHOF, B. E. KING & D. J. WINELAND, *A “Schrödinger cat” superposition state of an atom*, Science 272, pp. 1131–1136, 1996, W. P. SCHLEICH, *Quantum physics: engineering decoherence*, Nature 403, pp. 256–257, 2000, C. J. MYATT, B. E. KING, Q. A. TURCHETTE, C. A. SACKETT, D. KIELPINSKI, W. M. ITANO, C. MONROE & D. J. WINELAND, *Decoherence of quantum superpositions through coupling to engineered reservoirs*, Nature 403, pp. 269–273, 2000. See also the summary by W. T. STRUNZ, G. ALBER & F. HAAKE, *Dekohärenz in offenen Quantensystemen*, Physik Journal 1, pp. 47–52, November 2002. Cited on page 150.
- 106** L. HACKERMÜLLER, K. HORNBERGER, B. BREZGER, A. ZEILINGER & M. ARNDT, *Decoherence of matter waves by thermal emission of radiation*, Nature 427, pp. 711–714, 2004. Cited on page 150.

- 107** K. BAUMANN, *Quantenmechanik und Objektivierbarkeit*, Zeitschrift für Naturforschung 25a, pp. 1954–1956, 1970. Cited on page 151.
- 108** See for example D. STYER, Physics Today p. 11, September 2000. Cited on page 153.
- 109** DAVID BOHM, *Quantum Theory*, Prentice-Hall, 1951, pp. 614–622. Cited on page 154.
- 110** A. EINSTEIN, B. PODOLSKY & N. ROSEN, *Can quantum-mechanical description of reality be considered complete?*, Physical Review 48, pp. 696–702, 1935. Cited on page 154.
- 111** A. ASPECT, J. DALIBARD & G. ROGER, *Experimental tests of Bell's inequalities using time-varying analyzers*, Physical Review Letters 49, pp. 1804–1807, 1982, Cited on page 155.
- 112** G. C. HERGERFELDT, *Causality problems for Fermi's two-atom system*, Physical Review Letters 72, pp. 596–599, 1994. Cited on page 155.
- 113** An experimental measurement of superpositions of left and right flowing currents with  $10^{10}$  electrons was J. E. MOOIJ, T. P. ORLANDO, L. LEVITOV, L. TIAN, C. H. VAN DER WAL & S. LLOYD, *Josephson persistent-current qubit*, Science 285, pp. 1036–1039, 1999. In the year 2000, superpositions of 1  $\mu\text{A}$  clockwise and anticlockwise have been detected; for more details, see J.R. FRIEDMAN & al., *Quantum superposition of distinct macroscopic states*, Nature 406, p. 43, 2000. Cited on page 156.
- 114** On the superposition of magnetization in up and down directions there are numerous papers. Recent experiments on the subject of quantum tunnelling in magnetic systems are described in D. D. AWSCHALOM, J. F. SMITH, G. GRINSTEIN, D. P. DiVICENZO & D. LOSS, *Macroscopic quantum tunnelling in magnetic proteins*, Physical Review Letters 88, pp. 3092–3095, 1992, and in C. PAULSEN & al., *Macroscopic quantum tunnelling effects of Bloch walls in small ferromagnetic particles*, Europhysics Letters 19, pp. 643–648, 1992. Cited on page 156.
- 115** For example, superpositions were observed in Josephson junctions by R. F. VOSS & R. A. WEBB, *Macroscopic quantum tunnelling in 1 mm Nb Josephson junctions*, Physical Review Letters 47, pp. 265–268, 1981, Cited on page 156.
- 116** S. HAROCHE, *Entanglement, decoherence and the quantum-classical transition*, Physics Today 51, pp. 36–42, July 1998. An experiment putting atom at two places at once, distant about 80 nm, was published by C. MONROE, C. MONROE, D. M. MEEKHOF, B. E. KING & D. J. WINELAND, *A 'Schroedinger Cat' Superposition of an Atom*, Science 272, pp. 1131–1136, 1996. Cited on page 156.
- 117** M. R. ANDREWS, C. G. TOWNSEND, H.-J. MIESNER, D. S. DURFEE, D. M. KURN & W. KETTERLE, *Observations of interference between two Bose condensates*, Science 275, pp. 637–641, 31 January 1997. See also the [www.aip.org/physnews/special.htm](http://www.aip.org/physnews/special.htm) website. Cited on page 156.
- 118** A clear discussion can be found in S. HAROCHE & J.-M. RAIMOND, *Quantum computing: dream or nightmare?*, Physics Today 49, pp. 51–52, 1996, as well as the comments in Physics Today 49, pp. 107–108, 1996. Cited on page 157.
- 119** The most famous reference on the wave function collapse is chapter IV of the book by KURT GOTTFRIED, *Quantum Mechanics*, Benjamin, New York, 1966. It was the favourite reference by Victor Weisskopf, and cited by him on every occasion he talked about the topic. Cited on page 158.
- 120** The prediction that quantum tunnelling could be observable when the dissipative interaction with the rest of the world is small enough was made by Leggett; the topic is reviewed in A. J. LEGGETT, S. CHAHRAVARTY, A. T. DORSEY, M. P. A. FISHER, A. GARG & W. ZWERGER, *Dynamics of dissipative 2-state systems*, Review of Modern Physics 59, pp. 1–85, 1987. Cited on page 160.

- 121** S. KOCHEN & E. P. SPECKER, *The problem of hidden variables in quantum mechanics*, Journal of Mathematics and Mechanics 17, pp. 59–87, 1967. Cited on page 163.
- 122** J. F. CLAUSER, M. A. HORNE, A. SHIMONY & R. A. HOLT, *Proposed experiment to test local hidden-variable theories*, Physical Review Letters 23, pp. 880–884, 1969. The more general and original result is found in J. S. BELL, *On the Einstein Podolsky Rosen Paradox*, Physics 1, p. 195, 1964. Cited on page 164.
- 123** D. M. GREENBERGER, M. A. HORNE & A. ZEILINGER, *Going beyond Bell's theorem*, postprint of the 1989 paper at [arxiv.org/abs/0712.0912](https://arxiv.org/abs/0712.0912). The first observation was D. BOUWMEESTER, J.-W. PAN, M. DANIELL, H. WEINFURTER & A. ZEILINGER, *Observation of three-photon Greenberger-Horne-Zeilinger entanglement*, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9810035](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9810035). Cited on page 164.
- 124** BRYCE DE WITT & NEILL GRAHAM, eds., *The Many–Worlds Interpretation of Quantum Mechanics*, Princeton University Press, 1973. This interpretation talks about entities which cannot be observed, namely the many worlds, and often assumes that the wave function of the universe exists. Both habits are beliefs and in contrast with facts. Cited on page 167.
- 125** ‘On the other had I think I can safely say that nobody understands quantum mechanics.’ From RICHARD P. FEYNMAN, *The Character of Physical Law*, MIT Press, Cambridge, 1965, p. 129. He repeatedly made this statement, e.g. in the introduction of his otherwise excellent QED – *The Strange Theory of Light and Matter*, Penguin Books, 1990. Cited on page 167.
- 126** M. TEGMARK, *The importance of quantum decoherence in brain processes*, Physical Review D 61, pp. 4194–4206, 2000, or also [arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9907009](https://arxiv.org/abs/quant-ph/9907009). Cited on page 168.
- 127** Connections between quantum theory and information theory can be followed in the International Journal of Quantum Information. Cited on page 169.
- 128** J. A. WHEELER, pp. 242–307, in *Batelle Rencontres: 1967 Lectures in Mathematics and Physics*, C. DE WITT & J. A. WHEELER, editors, W.A. Benjamin, 1968. For a pedagogical explanation, see JOHN W. NORBURY, *From Newton’s laws to the Wheeler-DeWitt equation*, [arxiv.org/abs/physics/980604](https://arxiv.org/abs/physics/980604) or European Journal of Physics 19, pp. 143–150, 1998. Cited on page 170.
- 129** The most fascinating book on the topic is by KURT NASSAU, *The Physics and Chemistry of Color – the Fifteen Causes of Color*, 1983, and the excellent [webexhibits.org/causesofcolour](http://webexhibits.org/causesofcolour) website. Cited on page 171.
- 130** Y. RUIZ-MORALES & O. C. MULLINS, *Measured and Simulated Electronic Absorption and Emission Spectra of Asphaltenes*, Energy & Fuels 23, pp. 1169–1177, 2009. U. BERGMANN, H. GROENZIN, O. C. MULLINS, P. GLATZEL, J. FETZER & S. P. CRAMER, *Carbon K-edge X-ray Raman spectroscopy supports simple, yet powerful description of aromatic hydrocarbons and asphaltenes*, Chemical Physics Letters 369, pp. 184–191, 2003. Cited on page 171.
- 131** Two excellent reviews with numerous photographs are E. GROTEWOHL, *The genetics and biochemistry of floral pigments*, Annual Reviews of Plant Biology 57, pp. 761–780, 2006, and Y. TANAKA, N. SASAKI & A. OHMIYA, *Biosynthesis of plant pigments: anthocyanins, betalains and carotenoids*, The Plant Journal 54, pp. 733–749, 2008. Cited on page 179.
- 132** L. PÉREZ-RODRIGUEZ & J. VIÑUDA, *Carotenoid-based bill and eye coloration as honest signals of condition: an experimental test in the red-legged partridge (*Alectoris rufa*)*, Naturwissenschaften 95, pp. 821–830, 2008, Cited on page 179.
- 133** R. PELLO, D. SCHÄFER, J. RICHARD, J.-F. LE BORGNE & J.-P. KNEIB, *ISAAC/VLT observations of a lensed galaxy at z=10.0*, Astronomy and Astrophysics 416, p. L35, 2004.

- Cited on page 182.
- 134** A pedagogical introduction is given by L. J. CURTIS & D. G. ELLIS, *Use of the Einstein-Brillouin-Keller action quantization*, American Journal of Physics 72, pp. 1521–1523, 2004. See also the introduction of A. KLEIN, *WKB approximation for bound states by Heisenberg matrix mechanics*, Journal of Mathematical Physics 19, pp. 292–297, 1978. Cited on pages 183 and 188.
- 135** J. NEUKAMMER & al., *Spectroscopy of Rydberg atoms at  $n \sim 500$* , Physical Review Letters 59, pp. 2947–2950, 1987. Cited on page 186.
- 136** MARK P. SILVERMAN, *And Yet It Moves: Strange Systems and Subtle Questions in Physics*, Cambridge University Press 1993. A beautiful book by an expert on motion. Cited on pages 187, 194, and 195.
- 137** This is explained by J. D. HEY, *Mystery error in Gamow's Tompkins reappears*, Physics Today pp. 88–89, May 2001. Cited on page 187.
- 138** The beautiful experiment was first published in A. S. STODOLNA, A. ROUZÉE, F. LÉPINE, S. COHEN, F. ROBICHEAUX, A. GIJSBERTSEN, J. H. JUNGMANN, C. BORDAS & M. J. J. VRACKING, *Hydrogen atoms under magnification: direct observation of the nodal structure of Stark states*, Physical Review Letters 110, p. 213001, 2013. Cited on pages 185 and 186.
- 139** L. L. FOLDY, *The electromagnetic properties of Dirac particles*, Physical Review 83, pp. 688–693, 1951. L. L. FOLDY, *The electron-neutron interaction*, Physical Review 83, pp. 693–696, 1951. L. L. FOLDY, *Electron-neutron interaction*, Review of Modern Physics 30, pp. 471–481, 1952. Cited on page 190.
- 140** H. EULER & B. KOCKEL, *Über die Streuung von Licht an Licht nach der Diracschen Theorie*, Naturwissenschaften 23, pp. 246–247, 1935. H. EULER, *Über die Streuung von Licht an Licht nach der Diracschen Theorie*, Annalen der Physik 26, p. 398, 1936. W. HEISENBERG & H. EULER, *Folgerung aus der Diracschen Theorie des Electrons*, Zeitschrift für Physik 98, pp. 714–722, 1936. Cited on page 193.
- 141** See the simple explanation by L. J. F. HERMANS, *Blue skies, blue seas*, Europhysics News 37, p. 16, 2006, and the detailed explanation by C. L. BRAUN & S. N. SMIRNOV, *Why is water blue?*, Journal of Chemical Education 70, pp. 612–614, 1993. Cited on page 194.
- 142** The discovery is published in T. FRIEDMANN & C. R. HAGEN, *Quantum Mechanical Derivation of the Wallis Formula for  $\pi$* , Journal of Mathematical Physics 56, p. 112101, 2015, preprint at [arxiv.org/1510.07813](https://arxiv.org/abs/1510.07813). See also I CHASHCHINA & Z. K. SILAGADZE, *On the quantum mechanical derivation of the Wallis formula for  $\pi$* , preprint at [arxiv.org/1704.06153](https://arxiv.org/abs/1704.06153). Cited on page 194.
- 143** For the atomic case, see P. L. GOULD, G. A. RUFF & D. E. PRITCHARD, *Diffraction of atoms by light: the near resonant Kapitza-Dirac effect*, Physical Review Letters 56, pp. 827–830, 1986. Many early experimental attempts to observe the diffraction of electrons by light, in particular those performed in the 1980s, were controversial; most showed only the deflection of electrons, as explained by H. BATELAAN, Contemporary Physics 41, p. 369, 2000. Later on, he and his group performed the newest and most spectacular experiment, demonstrating real diffraction, including interference effects; it is described in D. L. FREIMUND, K. AFLATOONI & H. BATELAAN, *Observation of the Kapitza-Dirac effect*, Nature 413, pp. 142–143, 2001. Cited on page 195.
- 144** A single-atom laser was built in 1994 by K. AN, J. J. CHILDS, R. R. DASARI & M. S. FELD, *Microlaser: a laser with one atom in an optical resonator*, Physical Review Letters 73, p. 3375, 1994. Cited on page 195.

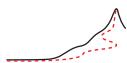
- 145** An introduction is given by P. PINKSE & G. REMPE, *Wie fängt man ein Atom mit einem Photon?*, Physikalische Blätter 56, pp. 49–51, 2000. Cited on page 195.
- 146** J.P. BRIAND & al., *Production of hollow atoms by the excitation of highly charged ions in interaction with a metallic surface*, Physical Review Letters 65, pp. 159–162, 1990. See also G. MAROWSKY & C. RHODES, *Hohle Atome und die Kompression von Licht in Plasmakanälen*, Physikalische Blätter 52, pp. 991–994, Oktober 1996. Cited on page 195.
- 147** G. GABRIELSE, D. HANNEKE, T. KINOSHITA, M. NIO & B. ODOM, *New determination of the fine structure constant from the electron g value and QED*, Physical Review Letters 97, p. 030802, 2006. Cited on page 196.
- 148** A. SOMMERFELD, *Zur Quantentheorie der Spektrallinien*, Annalen der Physik 51, pp. 1–94, 1916, and its continuation with the same title on pp. 125–167 in the same volume. The fine structure constant is introduced in the first paper, but Sommerfeld explains that the paper is a transcript of talks that he gave in 1915. Cited on page 196.
- 149** WOLFGANG PAULI, *Exclusion principle and quantum mechanics*, Nobel lecture, 13 December 1946, in *Nobel Lectures, Physics*, Volume 3, 1942–1962, Elsevier, 1964. Cited on page 197.
- 150** An informative account of the world of psychokinesis and the paranormal is given by the famous professional magician JAMES RANDI, *Flim-flam!*, Prometheus Books, Buffalo 1987, as well as in several of his other books. See also the [www.randi.org](http://www.randi.org) website. Cited on page 201.
- 151** *Le Système International d’Unités*, Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, Pavillon de Breteuil, Parc de Saint Cloud, 92310 Sèvres, France. All new developments concerning SI units are published in the journal *Metrologia*, edited by the same body. Showing the slow pace of an old institution, the BIPM launched a website only in 1998; it is now reachable at [www.bipm.fr](http://www.bipm.fr). See also the [www.utc.fr/~tthomass/Themes/Unites/index.html](http://www.utc.fr/~tthomass/Themes/Unites/index.html) website; this includes the biographies of people who gave their names to various units. The site of its British equivalent, [www.npl.co.uk/npl/reference](http://www.npl.co.uk/npl/reference), is much better; it provides many details as well as the English-language version of the SI unit definitions. Cited on page 205.
- 152** The bible in the field of time measurement is the two-volume work by J. VANIER & C. AUDOIN, *The Quantum Physics of Atomic Frequency Standards*, Adam Hilge, 1989. A popular account is TONY JONES, *Splitting the Second*, Institute of Physics Publishing, 2000. The site [opdafl.obspm.fr/www/lexique.html](http://opdafl.obspm.fr/www/lexique.html) gives a glossary of terms used in the field. For precision *length* measurements, the tools of choice are special lasers, such as mode-locked lasers and frequency combs. There is a huge literature on these topics. Equally large is the literature on precision *electric current* measurements; there is a race going on for the best way to do this: counting charges or measuring magnetic forces. The issue is still open. On *mass* and atomic mass measurements, see Volume II, on page 71. On high-precision *temperature* measurements, see Volume I, on page 547. Cited on page 206.
- 153** The unofficial SI prefixes were first proposed in the 1990s by Jeff K. Aronson of the University of Oxford, and might come into general usage in the future. See New Scientist 144, p. 81, 3 December 1994. Other, less serious proposals also exist. Cited on page 207.
- 154** For more details on electromagnetic unit systems, see the standard text by JOHN DAVID JACKSON, *Classical Electrodynamics*, 3rd edition, Wiley, 1998. Cited on page 210.
- 155** D.J. BIRD & al., *Evidence for correlated changes in the spectrum and composition of cosmic rays at extremely high energies*, Physical Review Letters 71, pp. 3401–3404, 1993. Cited on page 211.

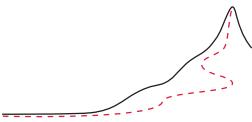
- Challenge 205 e**
- 156** P. J. HAKONEN, R. T. VUORINEN & J. E. MARTIKAINEN, *Nuclear antiferromagnetism in rhodium metal at positive and negative nanokelvin temperatures*, Physical Review Letters 70, pp. 2818–2821, 1993. See also his article in Scientific American, January 1994. Cited on page 211.
- 157** A. ZEILINGER, *The Planck stroll*, American Journal of Physics 58, p. 103, 1990. Can you find another similar example? Cited on page 211.
- 158** An overview of this fascinating work is given by J. H. TAYLOR, *Pulsar timing and relativistic gravity*, Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society, London A 341, pp. 117–134, 1992. Cited on page 211.
- 159** The most precise clock built in 2004, a caesium fountain clock, had a precision of one part in  $10^{15}$ . Higher precision has been predicted to be possible soon, among others by M. TAKAMOTO, F.-L. HONG, R. HIGASHI & H. KATORI, *An optical lattice clock*, Nature 435, pp. 321–324, 2005. Cited on page 211.
- 160** J. BERGQUIST, ed., *Proceedings of the Fifth Symposium on Frequency Standards and Metrology*, World Scientific, 1997. Cited on page 211.
- 161** See the information on  $D_s^\pm$  mesons from the particle data group at [pdg.web.cern.ch/pdg](http://pdg.web.cern.ch/pdg). Cited on page 211.
- 162** About the long life of tantalum 180, see D. BELIC & al., *Photoactivation of  $^{180}\text{Ta}^m$  and its implications for the nucleosynthesis of nature's rarest naturally occurring isotope*, Physical Review Letters 83, pp. 5242–5245, 20 December 1999. Cited on page 212.
- 163** See the review by L. JU, D. G. BLAIR & C. ZHAO, *The detection of gravitational waves*, Reports on Progress in Physics 63, pp. 1317–1427, 2000. Cited on page 212.
- 164** See the clear and extensive paper by G. E. STEDMAN, *Ring laser tests of fundamental physics and geophysics*, Reports on Progress in Physics 60, pp. 615–688, 1997. Cited on page 212.
- 165** The various concepts are even the topic of a separate international standard, ISO 5725, with the title *Accuracy and precision of measurement methods and results*. A good introduction is JOHN R. TAYLOR, *An Introduction to Error Analysis: the Study of Uncertainties in Physical Measurements*, 2nd edition, University Science Books, Sausalito, 1997. Cited on page 212.
- 166** P. J. MOHR, B. N. TAYLOR & D. B. NEWELL, *CODATA recommended values of the fundamental physical constants: 2010*, preprint at [arxiv.org/abs/1203.5425](https://arxiv.org/abs/1203.5425). This is the set of constants resulting from an international adjustment and recommended for international use by the Committee on Data for Science and Technology (CODATA), a body in the International Council of Scientific Unions, which brings together the International Union of Pure and Applied Physics (IUPAP), the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) and other organizations. The website of IUPAC is [www.iupac.org](http://www.iupac.org). Cited on page 214.
- 167** Some of the stories can be found in the text by N. W. WISE, *The Values of Precision*, Princeton University Press, 1994. The field of high-precision measurements, from which the results on these pages stem, is a world on its own. A beautiful introduction to it is J. D. FAIRBANKS, B. S. DEAVER, C. W. EVERITT & P. F. MICHAELSON, eds., *Near Zero: Frontiers of Physics*, Freeman, 1988. Cited on page 214.
- 168** For details see the well-known astronomical reference, P. KENNETH SEIDELMANN, *Explanatory Supplement to the Astronomical Almanac*, 1992. Cited on page 219.
- 169** See the corresponding reference in the first volume. Cited on page 221.
- 170** A good reference is the *Encyclopedia of Mathematics*, in 10 volumes, Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1988–1993. It explains most concepts used in mathematics. Spending an hour with it looking up related keywords is an efficient way to get an introduction into any part of

mathematics, especially into the vocabulary and the main connections.

The opposite approach, to make things as complicated as possible, is taken in the delightful text by CARL E. LINDERHOLM, *Mathematics Made Difficult*, 1971. Cited on page 223.

- 171 An excellent introduction into number systems in mathematics, including hyperreal (or nonstandard) numbers, quaternions, octonions,  $p$ -adic and surreal numbers, is the book by HEINZ-DIETER EBBINGHAUS, HANS HERMES, FRIEDRICH HIRZEBRUCH, MAX KOECHER, KLAUS MAINZER, JÜRGEN NEUKIRCH, ALEXANDER PRESTEL & REINHOLD REMMERT, *Zahlen*, 3rd edition, Springer Verlag, 1993. It is also available in English, under the title *Numbers*, Springer Verlag, 1990. Cited on pages 225, 234, and 235.
- 172 For a book on how to use hyperreals in secondary school, see HELMUT WUNDERLING, *Analysis als Infinitesimalrechnung*, Duden Paetec Schulbuchverlag, 2007. Cited on page 235.
- 173 A. WASER, *Quaternions in Electrodynamics*, 2001. The text can be downloaded from various websites. Cited on pages 227 and 232.
- 174 S. L. ALTMAN, *Rotations, Quaternions and Double Groups*, Clarendon Press, 1986, and also S. L. ALTMAN, *Hamilton, Rodriguez and the quaternion scandal*, Mathematical Magazine 62, pp. 291–308, 1988. See also J. C. HART, G. K. FRANCIS & L. H. KAUFFMAN, *Visualizing quaternion rotation*, ACM Transactions on Graphics 13, pp. 256–276, 1994. The latter can be downloaded in several places via the internet. Cited on page 230.
- 175 See the fine book by LOUIS H. KAUFFMAN, *Knots and Physics*, World Scientific, 2nd edition, 1994, which gives a clear and visual introduction to the mathematics of knots and their main applications to physics. Cited on page 231.
- 176 Gaussian integers are explored by G. H. HARDY & E. M. WRIGHT, *An Introduction to the Theory of Numbers*, 5th edition, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1979, in the sections 12.2 ‘The Rational Integers, the Gaussian Integers, and the Integers’, pp. 178–180, and 12.6 ‘Properties of the Gaussian Integers’ pp. 182–183. For challenges relating to Gaussian integers, look at [www.mathpuzzle.com/Gaussians.html](http://www.mathpuzzle.com/Gaussians.html). Cited on page 235.
- 177 About transfinite numbers, see the delightful paperback by RUDY RUCKER, *Infinity and the Mind – the Science and Philosophy of the Infinite*, Bantam, 1983. Cited on page 235.
- 178 E. I. BUTIKOV, *The rigid pendulum – an antique but evergreen physical model*, European Journal of Physics 20, pp. 429–441, 1999. D. EASTON, *The quantum mechanical tipping pencil – a caution for physics teachers*, European Journal of Physics 28, pp. 1097–1104, 2007, Cited on page 242.





## CREDITS

### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Many people who have kept their gift of curiosity alive have helped to make this project come true. Most of all, Peter Rudolph and Saverio Pascazio have been – present or not – a constant reference for this project. Fernand Mayné, Ata Masafumi, Roberto Crespi, Serge Pahaut, Luca Bombelli, Herman Elswijk, Marcel Krijn, Marc de Jong, Martin van der Mark, Kim Jalink, my parents Peter and Isabella Schiller, Mike van Wijk, Renate Georgi, Paul Tegelaar, Barbara and Edgar Augel, M. Jamil, Ron Murdock, Carol Pritchard, Richard Hoffman, Stephan Schiller, Franz Aichinger and, most of all, my wife Britta have all provided valuable advice and encouragement.

Many people have helped with the project and the collection of material. Most useful was the help of Mikael Johansson, Bruno Barberi Gnecco, Lothar Beyer, the numerous improvements by Bert Sierra, the detailed suggestions by Claudio Farinati, the many improvements by Eric Sheldon, the detailed suggestions by Andrew Young, the continuous help and advice of Jonatan Kelu, the corrections of Elmar Bartel, and in particular the extensive, passionate and conscientious help of Adrian Kubala.

Important material was provided by Bert Peeters, Anna Wierzbicka, William Beaty, Jim Carr, John Merrit, John Baez, Frank DiFilippo, Jonathan Scott, Jon Thaler, Luca Bombelli, Douglas Singleton, George McQuarry, Tilman Hausherr, Brian Oberquell, Peer Zalm, Martin van der Mark, Vladimir Surdin, Julia Simon, Antonio Fermani, Don Page, Stephen Haley, Peter Mayr, Allan Hayes, Igor Ivanov, Doug Renselle, Wim de Muynck, Steve Carlip, Tom Bruce, Ryan Budney, Gary Ruben, Chris Hillman, Olivier Glassey, Jochen Greiner, squark, Martin Hardcastle, Mark Biggar, Pavel Kuzin, Douglas Brebner, Luciano Lombardi, Franco Bagnoli, Lukas Fabian Moser, Dejan Corovic, Paul Vannoni, John Haber, Saverio Pascazio, Klaus Finkenzeller, Leo Volin, Jeff Aronson, Roggie Boone, Lawrence Tuppen, Quentin David Jones, Arnaldo Uguzzoni, Frans van Nieuwpoort, Alan Mahoney, Britta Schiller, Petr Danecek, Ingo Thies, Vitaliy Solomatin, Carl Offner, Nuno Proen  a, Elena Colazingari, Paula Henderson, Daniel Darre, Wolfgang Rankl, John Heumann, Joseph Kiss, Martha Weiss, Antonio Gonz  lez, Antonio Martos, Andr   Slabber, Ferdinand Bautista, Zolt  n G  cs, Pat Furrie, Michael Reppisch, Enrico Pasi, Thomas K  ppe, Martin Rivas, Herman Beeksma, Tom Helmond, John Brandes, Vlad Tarko, Nadia Murillo, Ciprian Dobra, Romano Perini, Harald van Lintel, Andrea Conti, Fran  ois Belfort, Dirk Van de Moortel, Heinrich Neumaier, Jaroslaw Kr  likowski, John Dahlman, Fathi Namouni, Paul Townsend, Sergei Emelin, Freeman Dyson, S.R. Madhu Rao, David Parks, J  rgen Janek, Daniel Huber, Alfons Buchmann, William Purves, Pietro Redondi, Damoon Saghian, Vladimir Egorov, Markus Zecherle, Miles Mutka, plus a number of people who wanted to remain unnamed.

The software tools were refined with extensive help on fonts and typesetting by Michael Zedler and Achim Blumensath and with the repeated and valuable support of Donald Arseneau; help came also from Ulrike Fischer, Piet van Oostrum, Gerben Wierda, Klaus B  hncke, Craig Upright, Herbert Voss, Andrew Trevorrow, Danie Els, Heiko Oberdiek, Sebastian Rahtz, Don Story,

Vincent Darley, Johan Linde, Joseph Hertzlinger, Rick Zaccone, John Warkentin, Ulrich Diez, Uwe Siart, Will Robertson, Joseph Wright, Enrico Gregorio, Rolf Niepraschk and Alexander Grahn.

The typesetting and book design is due to the professional consulting of Ulrich Dirr. The typography was much improved with the help of Johannes Küster and his Minion Math font. The design of the book and its website also owe much to the suggestions and support of my wife Britta.

I also thank the lawmakers and the taxpayers in Germany, who, in contrast to most other countries in the world, allow residents to use the local university libraries.

From 2007 to 2011, the electronic edition and distribution of the Motion Mountain text was generously supported by the Klaus Tschira Foundation.

#### FILM CREDITS

The hydrogen orbital image and animation of [page 80](#) were produced with a sponsored copy of Dean Dauger's software package *Atom in a Box*, available at [daugerresearch.com](#). The coloured animations of wave functions on [page 90](#), [page 94](#), [page 95](#), [page 99](#), [page 110](#), [page 190](#) and [page 192](#) are copyright and courtesy by Bernd Thaller; they can be found on his splendid website [vqm.uni-graz.at](#) and in the CDs that come with his two beautiful books, BERND THALLER, *Visual Quantum Mechanics* Springer, 2000, and BERND THALLER, *Advanced Visual Quantum Mechanics* Springer, 2004. These books are the best one can read to get an intuitive understanding for wave functions and their evolution. The animation of the belt trick on [page 131](#) is copyright and courtesy by Greg Egan; it can be found on his website [www.gregegan.net/APPLETS/21/21.html](#). The beautiful animation of the belt trick on [page 131](#) and the wonderful and so far unique animation of the fermion exchange on [page 134](#) are copyright and courtesy of Antonio Martos. They can be found at [vimeo.com/62228139](#) and [vimeo.com/62143283](#).

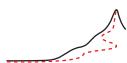
#### IMAGE CREDITS

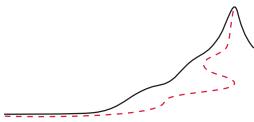
The photograph of the east side of the Langtang Lirung peak in the Nepalese Himalayas, shown on the front cover, is courtesy and copyright by Kevin Hite and found on his blog [thegettingthere.com](#). The photograph of a glow worm on [page 14](#) is copyright and courtesy of John Tyler, and found on his beautiful website at [www.johntyler.co.uk/gwfacts.htm](#). The photograph of a glass butterfly on [page 16](#) is copyright and courtesy of Linda de Volder and found on her site at [www.flickr.com/photos/lindadevolder](#). The photograph of a train window on [page 32](#) is copyright and courtesy of Greta Mansour and found at her website [www.flickr.com/photos/wireful/](#). The graphics of the colour spectrum on [page 41](#) is copyright and courtesy of Andrew Young and explained on his website [mintaka.sdsu.edu/GF/explain/optics/rendering.html](#). The images of photographic film on [page 42](#) are copyright and courtesy of Rich Evans. The images of photomultipliers on [page 42](#) are copyright and courtesy of Hamamatsu Photonics. The pictures of the low-intensity photon interference experiment of [page 43](#) are copyright of the Delft University of Technology, courtesy of Silvania Pereira, and found on the website [www.optica.tn.tudelft.nl/education/photons.asp](#). The photograph of the Compton effect apparatus on [page 46](#) was taken by Helene Hoffmann and is courtesy of Arne Gerdes from the University of Göttingen; it is found at the physics teaching website [lp.uni-goettingen.de](#). The graph on [page 50](#) is courtesy and copyright of Rüdiger Paschotta and found in his free and wonderful laser encyclopedia at [www.rp-photonics.com](#). The photograph of the Mach-Zehnder interferometer on [page 51](#) is copyright and courtesy of Félix Dieu and Gaël Osowiecki and found on their websites [www.flickr.com/photos/felixdieu/sets/72157622768433934/](#) and [www.flickr.com/photos/gaeloso/sets/72157623165826538/](#). The photograph on page [page 53](#) is copyright of John Davis and courtesy

of . The telescope mirror interference image on page [page 57](#) is copyright and courtesy of Mel Bartels and found on his site [www.bbastrodesigns.com](http://www.bbastrodesigns.com). The speckle pattern image is copyright and courtesy of Epzcaaw and found on Wikimedia Commons. On page [page 58](#), the double slit interference patterns are copyright and courtesy of Dietrich Zawischa and found on his website on beauty and science at [www.itp.uni-hannover.de/~zawischa](http://www.itp.uni-hannover.de/~zawischa). The interference figure of Gaussian beams is copyright and courtesy of Rüdiger Paschotta and found on his free laser encyclopedia at [www.rp-photonics.com](http://www.rp-photonics.com). The blue sky photograph on [page 69](#) is courtesy and copyright of Giorgio di Iorio, and found on his website [www.flickr.com/photos/gioischia/](http://www.flickr.com/photos/gioischia/). The images about the wire contact experiment on [page 69](#) is courtesy and copyright of José Costa-Krämer and AAPT. The famous photograph of electron diffraction on [page 76](#) is copyright and courtesy of Claus Jönsson. The almost equally famous image that shows the build-up of electron diffraction on [page 77](#) is courtesy and copyright of Tonomura Akira/Hitachi: it is found on the [www.hqrd.hitachi.co.jp/em/doubleslit.cfm](http://www.hqrd.hitachi.co.jp/em/doubleslit.cfm) website. The hydrogen graph on [page 85](#) is courtesy and copyright of Peter Eylan. The photographs of the Aharonov–Bohm effect on [page 99](#) are copyright and courtesy of Doru Cuturela. The images of DNA molecules on [page 101](#) are copyright and courtesy by Hans-Werner Fink and used with permission of Wiley VCH. The experiment pictures of the bunching and antibunching of  ${}^3\text{He}$  and  ${}^4\text{He}$  on [page 119](#) are from the website [atomoptic.iota.u-psud.fr/research/helium/helium.html](http://atomoptic.iota.u-psud.fr/research/helium/helium.html) and courtesy and copyright of Denis Boiron and Jerome Chatin. The molten metal photograph on [page 172](#) is courtesy and copyright of Graela and found at [flickr.com/photos/alaig](http://flickr.com/photos/alaig). The sparkler photograph on [page 172](#) is courtesy and copyright of Sarah Domingos and found at her [flickr.com](http://flickr.com) website. The reactor core photograph on [page 172](#) is courtesy NASA and found on the [grin.hq.nasa.gov](http://grin.hq.nasa.gov) website. The discharge lamp photographs on [page 172](#) are courtesy and copyright of Pslawinski and found at [www.wikimedia.org](http://www.wikimedia.org). The aurora photograph on [page 172](#) is courtesy and copyright of Jan Curtis and found at his [climate.gi.alaska.edu/Curtis/curtis.html](http://climate.gi.alaska.edu/Curtis/curtis.html) website. The coloured flames photograph on [page 172](#) is courtesy and copyright of Philip Evans and found at his [community.webshots.com/user/hydrogen01](http://community.webshots.com/user/hydrogen01) website. The iceberg photograph on [page 173](#) is courtesy and copyright of Marc Shandro and found at his [flickr.com/photos/mshandro](http://flickr.com/photos/mshandro) website. The malachite photograph on [page 173](#) is copyright and courtesy of Stephan Wolfsried and found on the [www.mindat.org](http://www.mindat.org) website. The shadow mask photograph on [page 173](#) is courtesy and copyright of Planemad and found at the [www.wikimedia.org](http://www.wikimedia.org) website. The mineral photographs on [page 173](#) and later are copyright and courtesy of Rob Lavinsky at [irocks.com](http://irocks.com), and taken from his large and beautiful collection there and at [www.mindat.org/photo-49529.html](http://www.mindat.org/photo-49529.html). The narcissus photograph on [page 174](#) is courtesy and copyright of Thomas Lüthi and found at his website [www.tiptom.ch/album/blumen/](http://www.tiptom.ch/album/blumen/). The photograph with a finger with blood on [page 174](#) is courtesy and copyright of Ian Humes and found at his website [www.flickr.com/photos/ianhumes](http://www.flickr.com/photos/ianhumes). The berries photograph on [page 174](#) is courtesy and copyright of Nathan Wall and found at his website [www.flickr.com/photos/ozboi-z](http://www.flickr.com/photos/ozboi-z). The photograph of a red-haired woman on [page 174](#) is by dusdin and courtesy of Wikimedia. The rare photograph of a living angler fish on [page 174](#) is courtesy and copyright of Steve Haddock and found at his website [www.lifesci.uscb.edu/~biolum/](http://www.lifesci.uscb.edu/~biolum/). The magnetite photograph on [page 175](#) is copyright and courtesy of Stephan Wolfsried and found on the [www.mindat.org](http://www.mindat.org) website. The desert photograph on [page 175](#) is copyright of Evelien Willemsen, courtesy Raf Verbeelen and found at [www.flickr.com/photos/verbeelen](http://www.flickr.com/photos/verbeelen). The tenor saxophone photograph on [page 175](#) is courtesy and copyright of Selmer at [www.selmer.fr](http://www.selmer.fr). The photograph of zinc oxide on [page 175](#) is by Walkerma and courtesy of Wikimedia. The fluorescing quantum dot photograph on [page 175](#) is courtesy and copyright of Andrey Rogach, Center for Nanoscience, München. The zirconia photograph on [page 176](#) is courtesy and copyright of Gregory Phillips and found at the [commons.wikimedia.org](http://commons.wikimedia.org) website. The Tokyo sunset on [page 176](#) is courtesy and copyright of Altus Plunkett and found at his [www.flickr.com/photos/altus](http://www.flickr.com/photos/altus) website. The blue quartz photograph on [page 176](#) is courtesy

and copyright 2008 of David K. Lynch and found at his [www.thulescientific.com](http://www.thulescientific.com) website. The snowman photograph on page 177 is courtesy and copyright of Andreas Kostner and found at his [www.flickr.com/photos/bytesinmotion](http://www.flickr.com/photos/bytesinmotion) website. The endangered blue poison frog photograph on page 177 is courtesy and copyright of Lee Hancock and found at the [www.treewalkers.org](http://www.treewalkers.org) website. The ruby glass photograph on page 177 is courtesy and copyright of the Murano Glass Shop and is found at their [murano-glass-shop.it](http://murano-glass-shop.it) website. The photograph of a ring laser with second harmonic generation on page 177 is courtesy and copyright of Jeff Sherman and found at his [flickr.com/photos/fatllama](http://flickr.com/photos/fatllama) website. The abalone photograph on page 177 is courtesy and copyright of Anne Elliot and found at her [flickr.com/photos/annkelliot](http://flickr.com/photos/annkelliot) website. The photograph of polarization colours on page 177 is copyright of Nevit Dilmen and courtesy of Wikimedia. The mallard duck photograph on page 178 is courtesy and copyright of Simon Griffith and found at his [www.pbase.com/simon2005](http://www.pbase.com/simon2005) website. The opal photograph on page 178 is courtesy and copyright of Opalsnopals and found at his [www.flickr.com](http://www.flickr.com) website. The aeroplane condensation photograph on page 178 is courtesy and copyright of Franz Kerschbaum and found at the [epod.usra.edu](http://epod.usra.edu) website. The CD photograph on page 178 is courtesy and copyright of Alfons Reichert and found at his [www.chemiephysikskripte.de/artikel/cd.htm](http://www.chemiephysikskripte.de/artikel/cd.htm) website. The liquid crystal pattern on page 178 is courtesy and copyright of Ingo Dierking and Wiley/VCH; it is found in his wonderful book INGO DIERKING, *Textures of Liquid Crystals*, Wiley-VCH, 2003. See also his website [reynolds.ph.man.ac.uk/people/staff/dierking/gallery](http://reynolds.ph.man.ac.uk/people/staff/dierking/gallery). The measured colour spectrum on page 180 is copyright and courtesy of Nigel Sharp, NOAO, FTS, NSO, KPNO, AURA and NSF. The photograph of a hydrogen discharge on page 181 is copyright and courtesy of Jürgen Bauer and found at the beautiful website [www.smart-elements.com](http://www.smart-elements.com). The illustrations of hydrogen orbitals on page 187 are courtesy of Wikimedia. The images of the nodal atomic structures on page 185 are courtesy of Aneta Stodolna and copyright and courtesy of the American Physical Society; they are found at [journals.aps.org/prl/abstract/10.1103/PhysRevLett.110.213001](http://journals.aps.org/prl/abstract/10.1103/PhysRevLett.110.213001). The graphs of the squeezed light states on page 241 are courtesy of G. Breitenbach and S. Schiller and copyright of Macmillan.

The historical portraits of physicists in the text are in the public domain, except where mentioned. The photograph on the back cover, of a basilisk running over water, is courtesy and copyright by the Belgian group TERRA vzw and found on their website [www.terravzw.org](http://www.terravzw.org). All drawings are copyright by Christoph Schiller. If you suspect that your copyright is not correctly given or obtained, this has not been done on purpose; please contact me in this case.





## NAME INDEX

# A

**AAPT**

### **A**

- AAPT** [75](#), [265](#)
- Aedini**, J. [250](#)
- Af菻tooni**, K. [259](#)
- Aharonov**, Y. [252](#)
- Aichinger**, Franz [263](#)
- Alber**, G. [256](#)
- Allison**, S.W. [252](#)
- Altman**, S.L. [262](#)
- An**, K. [259](#)
- Anderson**, Carl [192](#)
- Anderson**, M.H. [250](#)
- Andrews**, M.R. [250](#), [257](#)
- Anton**, A. [250](#)
- APS** [185](#)
- Aquinas**, Thomas [136](#)
- Arndt**, M. [251](#), [256](#)
- Aronson**, Jeff K. [260](#), [263](#)
- Arseneau**, Donald [263](#)
- Aspect**, A. [254](#), [257](#)
- Aspect**, Alain [155](#)
- Aspelmeyer**, M. [250](#)
- Ata Masafumi** [263](#)
- Audoin**, C. [260](#)
- Augel**, Barbara [263](#)
- Augel**, Edgar [263](#)
- Awschalom**, D.D. [257](#)

### **B**

- Babinet**, Jacques  
life [206](#)
- Bader**, Richard F.W. [247](#)
- Baez**, John [263](#)
- Bagnoli**, Franco [263](#)
- Balibar**, Franoise [248](#), [255](#)
- Balmer**, Johann [182](#)
- Barberi Gnecco**, Bruno [263](#)

- Bardeen**, John [256](#)
- Barnett**, S.M. [251](#)
- Bartel**, Elmar [263](#)
- Bartels**, Mel [57](#), [265](#)
- Batelaan**, H. [259](#)
- Bauer**, Jrgen [181](#), [266](#)
- Baumann**, K. [257](#)
- Bautista**, Ferdinand [263](#)
- Baylor**, D.A. [249](#)
- Beaty**, William [263](#)
- Beeksma**, Herman [263](#)
- Belfort**, Franois [263](#)
- Belic**, D. [261](#)
- Belinfante**, F.J. [255](#)
- Bell**, J. [163](#)
- Bell**, John [258](#)  
life [164](#)
- Belsley**, M. [254](#)
- Bergmann**, U. [258](#)
- Bergquist**, J. [261](#)
- Bernu**, J. [256](#)
- Berroir**, J.-M. [254](#)
- Berry**, M.V. [255](#)
- Berry**, Michael [255](#)
- Bessel** [180](#)
- Beutelspacher**, Albrecht [169](#)
- Beyer**, Lothar [263](#)
- Biggar**, Mark [263](#)
- Bird**, D.J. [260](#)
- Bjrk**, G. [249](#)
- Blair**, D.G. [261](#)
- Blumensath**, Achim [263](#)
- Boas**, P. Van Emde [253](#)
- Bocquillon**, E. [254](#)
- Bohm**, D. [252](#)
- Bohm**, David [257](#)
- Bohr**, N. [247](#), [250](#), [251](#)

- Bohr**, Niels [17](#), [37](#), [65](#), [78](#), [79](#),  
[143](#), [144](#), [166](#), [182](#), [256](#)  
life [17](#)
- Boiron**, D. [254](#)
- Boiron**, Denis [119](#), [265](#)
- Bombelli**, Luca [263](#)
- Boone**, Roggie [263](#)
- Bordas**, C. [259](#)
- Borgne**, J.-F. Le [258](#)
- Born**, Max [25](#), [87](#), [89](#), [248](#), [252](#)  
life [22](#)
- Bose**, S.N. [253](#)
- Bose**, Satyenra Nath  
life [118](#)
- Bouwmeester**, D. [254](#), [258](#)
- Bradley**, C.C. [250](#)
- Brahmagupta** [223](#)
- Brandes**, John [263](#)
- Braun**, C.L. [259](#)
- Brebner**, Douglas [263](#)
- Breitenbach**, G. [241](#), [249](#), [266](#)
- Brendel**, J. [250](#)
- Brezger**, B. [256](#)
- Briand**, J.P. [195](#), [260](#)
- Brillouin**, Lon [182](#)
- Broglie**, L. de [251](#)
- Broglie**, Louis de [76](#)  
life [34](#)
- Bronshtein**, Matvei [8](#)
- Brown**, R. Hanbury [249](#)
- Bruce**, Tom [263](#)
- Brumberg**, E.M. [40](#), [248](#)
- Brune**, M. [256](#)
- Bub**, J. [248](#)
- Buchmann**, Alfons [263](#)
- Budney**, Ryan [263](#)
- Bunsen**, Robert [180](#)

Busch, Paul 248  
 Butikov, E.I. 262  
 Buzek, V. 254  
 Böhncke, Klaus 263

**C**

Caldeira, A.O. 256  
 Candela, D. 251  
 Carlip, Steve 263  
 Carr, Jim 263  
 Carruthers, P. 251  
 Cato, Marcus Porcius 171  
 Cavanna, A. 254  
 Cayley, Arthur 233, 234  
 Center for Nanoscience,  
     München 265  
 Chahrvarty, S. 257  
 Chang, H. 254  
 Chang, I. 249  
 Chapman, M.S. 252  
 Chashchina, O.I 259  
 Chatin, Jerome 119, 265  
 Childs, J.J. 259  
 Chu, Steven 195  
 Cicero, Marcus Tullius 72  
 Cirone, M.A. 253  
 Clauser, J.F. 258  
 Clifton, R. 248  
 Cohen, S. 259  
 Cohen-Tannoudji, C. 248  
 Cohen-Tannoudji, Claude 195  
 Colazingari, Elena 263  
 Colella, R. 252  
 Collins, D. 254  
 Compton, A.H. 249  
 Compton, Arthur 45  
 Conti, Andrea 263  
 Corovic, Dejan 263  
 Correia, A. 251  
 Costa-Krämer, J.L. 250, 251  
 Costa-Krämer, José 74, 75, 265  
 Costella, J.P. 253  
 Courtial, J. 251  
 Cramer, S.P. 258  
 Crane, H.R. 253  
 Crespi, Roberto 263  
 Crommle, M.F. 242  
 Cser, L. 252  
 Curtis, Jan 172, 265

Curtis, L.J. 259  
 Cutrela, Doru 99, 265

**D**

Daffertshofer, A. 254  
 Dahlman, John 263  
 Dalibard, J. 257  
 Danecek, Petr 263  
 Daniell, M. 258  
 Darley, Vincent 264  
 Darre, Daniel 263  
 Dasari, R.R. 259  
 Dauger, Dean 80, 264  
 Davis, John 53, 264  
 Davis, K.B. 250  
 Deaver, B.S. 261  
 Degen, Carl Ferdinand 234  
 Degiovanni, P. 254  
 Dehmelt, H. 253, 254  
 Dehmelt, Hans 254  
 Delft University of  
     Technology 43, 264  
 Deléglise, S. 256  
 DeWitt, C. 258  
 Dicke, Robert H. 251  
 Dieks, D. 254  
 Dieks, Dennis 122  
 Dierking, Ingo 178, 266  
 Dieu, Félix 51, 264  
 Diez, Ulrich 264  
 DiFilippo, Frank 263  
 Dilmen, Nevit 177, 266  
 Diophantus of Alexandria 226  
 Dirac 195  
 Dirac, P.A.M. 250  
 Dirac, Paul 59, 66, 189  
     life 189  
 Dirr, Ulrich 264  
 Diu, B. 248  
 DiVicenzo, D.P. 257  
 Dobra, Ciprian 263  
 Domingos, Sarah 172, 265  
 Dorsey, A.T. 257  
 Dreyer, J. 256  
 Druten, N.J. van 250  
 Duck, I. 255  
 Duran, E. 255  
 Durfee, D.S. 250, 257  
 dusdin 174, 265

**E**

Easton, D. 262  
 Ebbinghaus, Heinz-Dieter 262  
 Egan, Greg 131, 264  
 Egorov, Vladimir 263  
 Einstein, A. 249, 253, 257  
 Einstein, Albert 30, 55, 56, 105,  
     118, 182, 252  
 Ekstrom, C.R. 252  
 Elitzur, Avshalom 69  
 Elliot, Anne 177, 266  
 Ellis, D.G. 259  
 Els, Danie 263  
 Elswijk, Herman B. 263  
 Emelin, Sergei 263  
 Engels, F. 248  
 Engels, Friedrich 39, 74  
 Englert, Berthold-Georg 248  
 Epicurus 40, 44  
 Epzlaw 57, 265  
 Erdős, Paul  
     life 223  
 Erschow, A. 255  
 Euler, H. 259  
 Euler, Hans 193  
 Euler, Leonhard 229  
 Evans, Philip 172, 265  
 Evans, Rich 42, 264  
 Everitt, C.W. 261  
 Eyland, Peter 85, 265

**F**

Facchi, P. 251  
 Fairbanks, J.D. 261  
 Faragó, B. 252  
 Farinati, Claudio 263  
 Feld, M.S. 259  
 Fermani, Antonio 263  
 Fermi, Enrico  
     life 118  
 Fetzer, J. 258  
 Feynman, R. P. 255  
 Feynman, Richard 167  
 Feynman, Richard P. 250, 258  
 Feynman,  
     Richard ('Dick') Phillips  
     life 60

# F

---

## FINK

- Fink, Hans-Werner 101, 252, 265  
Finkenzeller, Klaus 263  
Firestone, R.B. 254  
Fischbach, E. 249  
Fischer, Ulrike 263  
Fisher, M.P.A. 257  
Foldy, L.L. 106, 252, 259  
Foley, E.L. 251  
Fonseca, E.J.S. 249  
Francis, G.K. 262  
Franke-Arnold, S. 251  
Fraunhofer, Joseph  
    life 180  
Freimund, D.L. 259  
Freulon, V. 254  
Friedman, J.R. 257  
Friedmann, T. 259  
Fumagalli, Giuseppe 247  
Furrie, Pat 263  
Fève, G. 254
- G**  
Gabrielse, G. 254, 260  
Galilei, Galileo 21, 24  
Galle, Johann Gottfried 180  
Garcia, N. 250, 251  
García-Mochales, P. 250, 251  
Gardner, Martin 253  
Garg, A. 257  
Gasiorowicz, Stephen 251  
Gasparoni, S. 250  
Gauß, Carl-Friedrich 235  
Gelbaum, Bernard R. 238  
Gell-Mann, M. 255  
Gell-Mann, Murray 143, 167  
Georgi, Renate 263  
Gerdes, Arne 264  
Gerlach, W. 251  
Gerlach, Walther  
    life 83  
Gibbs, Josiah Willard  
    life 114  
Gijsbertsen, A. 259  
Gillies, G.T. 252  
Gisin, N. 250, 254  
Glanz, J. 249  
Glassey, Olivier 263  
Glatzel, P. 258  
Glauber, R.J. 250  
Glauber, Roy 63  
Gleyzes, S. 256  
González, Antonio 263  
Gottfried, Kurt 257  
Goudsmit, S. 252  
Goudsmit, Samuel 104  
Gould, P.L. 259  
Gould, R. 255  
Graela 172, 265  
Graham, Neill 258  
Grahn, Alexander 264  
Graves, John 234  
Gray, C.G. 252  
Greenberg, O.W. 254, 255  
Greenberg, Oscar 142  
Greenberger, D.M. 255, 258  
Greenbergest, T.V. 255  
Gregorio, Enrico 264  
Greiner, Jochen 263  
Griffith, Simon 178, 266  
Grinstein, G. 257  
Grit, C.O. 242  
Groenzin, H. 258  
Grotewohl, E. 258  
Guerlin, C. 256  
Gácsi, Zoltán 263
- H**  
Haake, F. 256  
Haas, Arthur Erich 21, 186  
Haber, John 263  
Hackermüller, L. 251  
Hackermüller, L. 256  
Haddock, Steve 174, 265  
Hagen, C. R. 259  
Hagley, E. 256  
Hajnal, A. 253  
Hakonen, P.J. 260  
Haley, Stephen 263  
Halvorson, H. 248  
Hamamatsu Photonics 42  
Hamilton 229  
Hamilton, William Rowan  
    life 227  
Hammond, T.D. 252  
Hanbury Brown, Robert 52  
Hancock, Lee 177, 266  
Hanneke, D. 260  
Hannout, M. 252  
Hardcastle, Martin 263  
Hardy, G.H. 262  
Haroche, S. 256, 257  
Haroche, Serge 150, 256  
Hart, J.C. 262  
Hartung, R.W. 255  
Hausherr, Tilman 263  
Hayes, Allan 263  
Heaviside 232  
Hegerfeldt, Gerhard 155  
Heisenberg, W. 259  
Heisenberg, Werner 22, 25,  
    78, 193  
    life 25  
Helmond, Tom 263  
Henderson, Paula 263  
Hergerfeldt, G.C. 257  
Hermann, Armin 248  
Hermans, L.J.F. 259  
Hermes, Hans 262  
Herneck, Friedrich 250  
Hertz 232  
Hertz, Heinrich 54, 189  
Hertzlinger, Joseph 264  
Hess, Victor 92  
Heumann, John 263  
Hewitt, Susan 248  
Hey, J.D. 259  
Higashi, R. 261  
Hilbert, David 223  
Hilborn, R. 255  
Hilgevoord, Jan 248  
Hillery, M. 254  
Hillman, Chris 263  
Hirzebruch, Friedrich 262  
Hitachi 77, 265  
Hite, Kevin 264  
Hitler, Adolf 17  
Hoffman, Richard 263  
Hoffmann, Helene 46, 264  
Hogervorst, W. 254  
Holt, R.A. 258  
Hong, C.K. 253  
Hong, F.-L. 261  
Hoppeler, R. 254  
Hornberger, K. 256  
Horne, M.A. 258  
Howell, J.C. 254

Hoyt, S. 252  
 Huber, Daniel 263  
 Huff, D. 255  
 Hulet, R.G. 250  
 Humes, Ian 174, 265  
 Hurwitz, Adolf 234  
 Hänsch, Theodor 194

I

Icke, Vincent 248  
 Iorio, Giorgio di 69, 265  
 Itano, W.M. 256  
 Ivanov, Igor 263

J

Jackson, John David 260  
 Jacobson, J. 249  
 Jalink, Kim 263  
 Jamil, M. 263  
 Jammer, Max 247  
 Janek, Jürgen 263  
 Janssen, Jules 181  
 Jeltes, T. 254  
 Jin, Y. 254  
 Johansson, Mikael 263  
 Johnson, Samuel 247  
 Jones, Quentin David 263  
 Jones, Tony 260  
 Jong, Marc de 263  
 Joos, E. 256  
 Joos, Erich 256  
 Jordan, Pascual 22, 25  
 Joseph Bohm, David  
     life 154  
 Joyce, James 152  
 Ju, L. 261  
 Jungmann, J.H. 259  
 Jönsson, C. 251  
 Jönsson, Claus 76, 77, 265

K

K. Lynch, David 266  
 Köppe, Thomas 263  
 Kan, A.H.G. Rinnooy 253  
 Kapitza 195  
 Karl, G. 252  
 Katori, H. 261  
 Kauffman, L.H. 262  
 Kauffman, Louis H. 262

Keller, C. 251  
 Keller, Joseph 182  
 Kells, W. 254  
 Kelu, Jonatan 263  
 Kerschbaum, Franz 178, 266  
 Ketterle, W. 250, 257  
 Kidd, R. 250  
 Kielinski, D. 256  
 King, B. E. 257  
 King, B.E. 256  
 Kinoshita, T. 260  
 Kirchhoff, Gustav 180  
 Kiss, Joseph 263  
 Klauder, J.R. 250  
 Klaus Tschira Foundation 264  
 Klein, A. 259  
 Klein, Oskar 192  
 Kloor, H. 249  
 Kneib, J.-P. 258  
 Kochen, S. 163, 258  
 Kockel, B. 259  
 Koehler, Max 262  
 Kostner, Andreas 177, 266  
 Krachmalnicoff, V. 254  
 Krexner, G. 252  
 Krijn, Marcel 263  
 Kronig, Ralph 104  
 Krywonos, A. 252  
 Królikowski, Jarosław 263  
 Kubala, Adrian 263  
 Kuhr, S. 256  
 Kurn, D.M. 250, 257  
 Kuzin, Pavel 263  
 Kuščer, I. 252  
 Küster, Johannes 264

L

Lagrange, Joseph 229  
 Laloë, F. 248  
 Lamas-Linares, A. 254  
 Langel, R.A. 249  
 Lavinsky, Rob 173, 176, 265  
 Leach, J. 251  
 Leggett, A.J. 256, 257  
 Lenstra, J.K. 253  
 Leonardo da Vinci 81  
 Leviton, L. 257  
 Lindblad, G. 256  
 Linde, Johan 264

Linderholm, Carl E. 262  
 Lintel, Harald van 263  
 Lloyd, S. 257  
 Lockyer, Joseph 181  
 Lombardi, Luciano 263  
 Loss, D. 257  
 Loudon, Rodney 248  
 Louisell, W.H. 251  
 Lovász, P. 253  
 Lui, A.T.Y. 249  
 Lundein, J.S. 249  
 Lynch, David 176  
 Lépine, F. 259  
 Lévy-Leblond, Jean-Marc  
     248, 255  
 Lüthi, Thomas 174, 265

M

Maali, A. 256  
 Macmillan 241, 266  
 Magyar G. 67  
 Magyar, G. 250  
 Mahoney, Alan 263  
 Mainzer, Klaus 262  
 Maitre, X. 256  
 Malik, J. 248  
 Mandel, L. 67, 250, 253  
 Mansour, Greta 32, 264  
 Mariano, A. 251  
 Mark, Martin van der 263  
 Marowsky, G. 260  
 Marqués, M. 251  
 Martikainen, J.E. 261  
 Martini, K.M. 251  
 Martos, Antonio 131, 134, 263,  
     264  
 Massar, S. 254  
 Mattheck, Claus 248  
 Maxwell 232  
 Mayné, Fernand 263  
 Mayr, Peter 263  
 McKellar, B.H.J. 253  
 McNamara, J.M. 254  
 McQuarry, George 263  
 Meekhof, D. M. 257  
 Meekhof, D.M. 256  
 Mensky, M.B. 247  
 Merritt, John 263  
 Metikas, G. 253

Mewes, M.-O. 250  
 Meyenn, K. von 252  
 Meyer, J.C. 242  
 Michelson, P.F. 261  
 Miesner, H.-J. 257  
 Migdall, A. 253  
 Milonni, P.W. 249  
 Misner, C.W. 255  
 Mitchell, M.W. 249  
 Mlynek, J. 249  
 Mohr, P.J. 261  
 Monken, C.H. 249  
 Monroe, C. 256, 257  
 Mooij, J.E. 257  
 Moortel, Dirk Van de 263  
 Moser, Lukas Fabian 263  
 Mullins, O.C. 258  
 Murdock, Ron 263  
 Murillo, Nadia 263  
 Mutka, Miles 263  
 Muynck, Wim de 263  
 Myatt, C.J. 256

**N**  
 Nagaoka Hantaro 79  
 Nagaoka, H. 251  
 Nairz, O. 251  
 Namouni, Fathi 263  
 NASA 172, 265  
 Nassau, Kurt 258  
 Neukammer, J. 259  
 Neukirch, Jürgen 262  
 Neumaier, Heinrich 263  
 Neumann, John von 144  
     life 163  
 Neumann, János  
     life 163  
 Newell, D.B. 261  
 Newton 70  
 Newton, T.D. 106, 252  
 Nienhuis, G. 252  
 Niepraschk, Rolf 264  
 Nieto, M.M. 251  
 Nieuwpoort, Frans van 263  
 Nio, M. 260  
 Norbury, John W. 258  
 Novikov, V.A. 252

**O**  
 Oberdiek, Heiko 263  
 Oberquell, Brian 263  
 Odom, B. 260  
 Offner, Carl 263  
 Ohanian, Hans C. 255  
 Ohmiya, A. 258  
 Olmsted, John M.H. 238  
 Oostrum, Piet van 263  
 Opalsnopals 178, 266  
 Orlando, T.P. 257  
 Orlitzky, A. 253  
 Osowiecki, Gaël 51, 264  
 Ou, Z.Y. 253  
 Overhauser, A.W. 252

**P**  
 Pádua, de 55  
 Padgett, M. 251  
 Page, Don 263  
 Pahaut, Serge 85, 263  
 Pan, J.-W. 249, 258  
 Papini, G. 251  
 Parks, David 263  
 Pascal, Blaise  
     life 46  
 Pascazio, S. 251  
 Pascazio, Saverio 263  
 Paschotta, Rüdiger 50, 58,  
     264, 265  
 Pasi, Enrico 263  
 Paul, H. 250  
 Pauli, W. 255  
 Pauli, Wolfgang 25, 61, 133,  
     196, 260  
     life 105  
 Paulsen, C. 257  
 Payne, Cecilia  
     life 181  
 Peeters, Bert 263  
 Pello, R. 258  
 Penrose, R. 255  
 Peredo, M. 249  
 Pereira, Silvana 264  
 Peres, Asher 248  
 Perini, Romano 263  
 Perrin, A. 254  
 Perrin, J. 251  
 Perrin, Jean 79

Philips, William 195  
 Phillips, Gregory 176, 265  
 Photonics, Hamamatsu 264  
 Pinkse, P. 260  
 Pittman, T.B. 253  
 Planck, Erwin 248  
 Planck, Max 20, 47, 55, 105,  
     247  
     life 17  
 Planemad 173, 265  
 Plastino, A. 254  
 Plastino, A.R. 254  
 Plaçais, B. 254  
 Plunkett, Altus 176, 265  
 Podolsky, B. 257  
 Poincaré, Henri 55, 249  
 Popescu, S. 254  
 Prentis, J.J. 249  
 Prestel, Alexander 262  
 Prewitt, O. 255  
 Pritchard, Carol 263  
 Pritchard, D.E. 252, 259  
 Pritchard, David 85  
 Proença, Nuno 263  
 Pslawinski 172, 265  
 Purves, William 263  
 Pádua, S. de 249  
 Pérez-Rodriguez, L. 258

**R**  
 Rahtz, Sebastian 263  
 Raimond, J.-M. 256, 257  
 Raimond, J.M. 256  
 Ramberg, E. 122, 254  
 Randi, James 260  
 Rankl, Wolfgang 263  
 Redondi, Pietro 263  
 Reichert, Alfons 178, 266  
 Reichl, Linda 256  
 Remmert, Reinhold 262  
 Rempe, G. 260  
 Renselle, Doug 263  
 Reppisch, Michael 263  
 Rhodes, C. 260  
 Richard, J. 258  
 Rieke, F. 248, 249  
 Rindler, W. 255  
 Rivas, Martin 263  
 Robbins, J.M. 255

# R

ROBERTSON

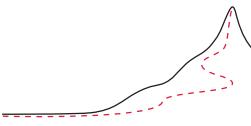
- Robertson, Will 264  
Robicheaux, F. 259  
Rogach, Andrey 175, 265  
Roger, G. 257  
Roos, Hans 248  
Rosen, N. 257  
Rosenfeld 65  
Rosenfeld, L. 250  
Rouzée, A. 259  
Ruben, Gary 263  
Rubin, M.H. 253  
Rucker, Rudy 262  
Rudolph, Peter 263  
Ruff, G.A. 259  
Ruiz-Morales, Y. 258  
Rydberg, Johannes 182
- S**  
S.R. Madhu Rao 263  
Sabbata, V. de 252  
Sackett, C.A. 250, 256  
Sackur, Otto 114  
Sagan, Hans 238  
Saghian, Damoon 263  
Salam, Abdus 248  
Sasaki, N. 258  
Sayrin, C. 256  
Schaerer, D. 258  
Schellekens, M. 254  
Schiller, Britta 263, 264  
Schiller, Christoph 266  
Schiller, Friedrich  
    life 40  
Schiller, Isabella 263  
Schiller, Peter 263  
Schiller, S. 249, 266  
Schiller, Stephan 263  
Schleich, W.P. 253, 256  
Schmiedmayer, J. 252  
Schrödinger, E. 252  
Schrödinger, Erwin 35, 182  
    life 92  
Schubert, Max 248  
Schucking, E. 252  
Schwenk, Jörg 169  
Schwinger, Julian 102, 103, 248  
Schönenberger, C. 254  
Scott, Jonathan 263  
Seidelmann, P. Kenneth 261
- Selmer 175, 265  
Serena, P.A. 250, 251  
Sergienko, A.V. 253  
Shandro, Marc 173, 265  
Sharkov, I. 252  
Sharp, Nigel 180, 266  
Shaw, George Bernard 72  
Sheldon, Eric 263  
Shepp, L. 253  
Sherman, Jeff 177, 266  
Shih, Y.H. 253  
Shimony, A. 258  
Siart, Uwe 264  
Sierra, Bert 263  
Silagadze, Z.K. 259  
Silverman, M.P. 252  
Silverman, Mark 194  
Silverman, Mark P. 259  
Simon, C. 254  
Simon, Julia 263  
Singleton, Douglas 263  
Sivaram, C. 252  
Slabber, André 263  
Smirnov, S.N. 259  
Smith, J.F. 257  
Snow, G.A. 122, 254  
Solomatin, Vitaliy 263  
Sommerfeld, A. 260  
Sommerfeld, Arnold 186, 188,  
    196  
Specker, E.P. 163, 258  
Stedman, G.E. 261  
Steinberg, A.M. 249  
Stern, O. 251  
Stern, Otto  
    life 83  
Stodolna, A.S. 259  
Stodolna, Aneta 185, 186, 266  
Story, Don 263  
Strelakov, D.V. 253  
Strunz, W.T. 256  
Styer, D. 257  
Subitzky, Edward 248  
Sudarshan, E. C. G. 255  
Sudarshan, E.C.G. 250  
Surdin, Vladimir 263
- T**  
Tacitus 199
- Takamoto, M. 261  
Tanaka, Y. 258  
Tarko, Vlad 263  
Taylor, B.N. 261  
Taylor, J.H. 261  
Taylor, John R. 261  
Tegelaar, Paul 263  
Tegmark, M. 256, 258  
Tetrode, Hugo 114  
Thaler, Jon 263  
Thaller, Bernd 90, 94, 95, 99,  
    110, 190, 192, 264  
Thies, Ingo 263  
Thomas, L. 252  
Thomas, Llewellyn 105  
Thorne, K.S. 255  
Tian, L. 257  
Tiberius 199  
Tino, G. 255  
Tittel, Wolfgang 250  
Tollett, J.J. 250  
Tonomura Akira 77, 265  
Townsend, C.G. 257  
Townsend, Paul 263  
Trevorrow, Andrew 263  
Tschira, Klaus 264  
Tuominen, M.T. 251  
Tuppen, Lawrence 263  
Turchette, Q.A. 256  
Twamley, J. 255  
Twiss, R.Q. 249  
Twiss, Richard 52  
Tyler, John 16, 264  
Török, Gy. 252
- U**  
Uguzzoni, Arnaldo 263  
Uhlenbeck, G.E. 252  
Uhlenbeck, George 104  
Upright, Craig 263  
Ursin, R. 250
- V**  
Vaidman, Lev 69  
Vanier, J. 260  
Vannoni, Paul 263  
Vardi, Ilan 253  
Vassen, W. 254  
Vavilov, S.I. 40, 248

**V****VERBEELEN**

- Verbeelen, Raf 265  
 Viana Gomes, J. 254  
 Vico, Giambattista  
     life 165  
 Viñuda, J. 258  
 Volder, Linda de 16, 264  
 Volin, Leo 263  
 Vos-Andreae, J. 251  
 Voss, Herbert 263  
 Voss, R.F. 257  
 Vrakking, M.J.J. 259  
 Vuorinen, R.T. 261
- W**
- Wal, C.H. van der 257  
 Walkerma 175, 265  
 Wall, Nathan 174, 265  
 Walther, P. 249  
 Warkentin, John 264  
 Waser, A. 262  
 Webb, R.A. 257  
 Weber, Gerhard 248  
 Wehinger, S. 252  
 Weinberg, Steven 108, 143, 250  
 Weinfurter, H. 258  
 Weiss, Martha 263  
 Weisskopf, Victor 257  
 Werner, S.A. 252  
 Westbrook, C.I. 254  
 Weyl, Hermann 130  
 Wheeler, J.A. 255, 258

- Wheeler, John 239  
 Wheeler, John A. 255  
 Widom, A. 252  
 Wierda, Gerben 263  
 Wierzbicka, Anna 263  
 Wiesner, S.J. 254  
 Wiesner, Stephen 122  
 Wigner, E. 254  
 Wigner, E.P. 106, 252  
 Wigner, Eugene  
     life 125  
 Wigner, Eugene P. 248  
 Wijk, Mike van 263  
 Wikimedia 187, 265, 266  
 Wiley VCH 101, 265  
 Wiley/VCH 266  
 Willemse, Evelien 175, 265  
 Wineland, D. J. 257  
 Wineland, D.J. 256  
 Wise, N.W. 261  
 Witt, Bryce de 258  
 Wittke, James P. 251  
 Woerdman, J.P. 252  
 Wolfenstätter, Klaus-Dieter  
     169  
 Wolfsried, Stephan 173, 175,  
     265  
 Wollaston, William 180  
 Wolsky, A.M. 253  
 Wootters, W.K. 254  
 Wootters, W.L. 122

- Wouthuysen, S.A. 106, 252  
 Wright, E.M. 262  
 Wright, Joseph 264  
 Wunderlich, C. 256  
 Wunderling, Helmut 262
- Y**
- Yamamoto, Y. 249  
 Yao, E. 251  
 Yazdani, A. 253  
 Young, Andrew 41, 263, 264
- Z**
- Zaccone, Rick 264  
 Zalm, Peer 263  
 Zawischa, Dietrich 58, 265  
 Zbinden, H. 250  
 Zecherle, Markus 263  
 Zedler, Michael 263  
 Zeh, H.D. 256  
 Zeh, Heinz Dieter 144, 256  
 Zeilinger, A. 250, 251, 256, 258,  
     261  
 Zeilinger, Anton 109  
 Zetti, A. 242  
 Zhao, C. 261  
 Zouw, G. van der 251  
 Zurek, W.H. 122, 253, 254  
 Zurek, Wojciech H. 255, 256  
 Zuse, Konrad 163  
 Zwerger, W. 257



# SUBJECT INDEX

## A

acausality 153  
acceleration  
    Coriolis 194  
    maximum 79  
    Planck 209  
    quantum limit 79  
accuracy 212  
    limits to 214  
action  
    EBK 188  
    Planck 209  
    quantum of 198  
action, quantum of,  $\hbar$  18  
    physics and 8  
addition 224  
ageing 29  
Aharonov–Bohm effect 98  
Aharonov–Casher effect 100  
*Alectoris rufa* 258  
algebra, alternative 233  
ampere  
    definition 205  
amplitude  
    and complex numbers 227  
angelology 255  
angels 199  
    and quantum theory  
        135–137  
    and the exclusion principle  
        136  
angular momentum  
    indeterminacy relation 82  
    intrinsic 83  
    of electron 138  
    smallest measured 202  
animation

    in lower left corner 153  
annihilation operator 121  
anthocyanins 179  
anti-bunching 54  
anticommutator bracket 121  
antimatter *see* antiparticle, 192  
antiparticles 201  
anyon 142  
aphelion 219  
apogee 218  
apparatus  
    classical 166  
    definition 160  
    irreversible 166  
APS 266  
arc lamp 172  
argon lamp 172  
arm 131, 230  
arrow  
    rotating 89  
arrows  
    rotating 89  
asphaltenes 171  
astrology 201  
astronomical unit 219  
atmosphere  
    pressure 218  
atom  
    and electronium 110  
    and senses 17  
    finite size of 136  
    handling of single 195  
    hollow 195  
    rotation 85  
    shape of 185  
    single 156  
    size 197

size of 21  
atomic mass unit 129, 217  
atto 207  
aurora 172  
average 149  
Avogadro’s number 214  
axiom  
    definition 224  
axis  
    of rotation 82  
azimuthal quantum number  
    187

**B**

Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff  
    formula 238  
Balinese candle dance 130  
baryon number density 220  
base units 205  
basis of vector space 237  
bath 151  
    physical 146  
BCH formula 238  
beans, dangers of 37  
beauty 129  
becquerel 207  
bell  
    and exclusion principle 136  
Bell’s inequality 164  
belt trick 130, 139–142, 230,  
    264  
Benham’s wheel 178  
Bennett–Brassard protocol  
    123  
betalains 179  
bioluminescence 174  
biphoton 55

BIPM 205  
 bit  
     to entropy conversion 217  
 blood colour 174  
 blue colour  
     of the sea 194  
     of water 194  
 body  
     rigid 37  
 Bohm's thought experiment  
     154  
 Bohr magneton 104, 216  
 Bohr radius 186, 217  
 Boltzmann constant 149  
     discovery of 17  
 Boltzmann constant  $k$  214  
     physics and 8  
 bomb  
     triggered by a single-photon 69  
 bond  
     chemical 80  
 Bose-Einstein condensate 74, 253  
 bosons 63, 118, 121  
 bottom quark 129  
     mass 215  
 bottomness 129  
 Bragg diffraction 70  
 brain 97  
 breaking 29  
 Bremsstrahlung 172  
 Brillouin scattering 70  
 bromine 173  
 Bronshtein cube 8  
 bulge  
     as quantum particle 120  
 Bureau International des Poids et Mesures 205  
 butterfly 15, 16

**C**

candela  
     definition 206  
 candle colour 172  
 cans of beans, dangers of 37  
 car  
     and garage 96  
     on highways 78

theft 96  
 cardinals 235  
 carotenoids 179  
 Casimir effect 202  
 cat  
     Schrödinger's 144  
 causality 162  
 Cayley algebra 233  
 Cayley numbers 233  
 centi 207  
 centre, quaternion 231  
 Čerenkov radiation 172  
 CERN 211  
 CGPM 206  
 challenge  
     classification 9  
 change  
     measured by action 18  
     quantum of 18  
     quantum of, precise value 214  
 characteristic 224  
 charge  
     elementary  $e$ , physics and 8  
     positron or electron, value of 214  
 charge inversion 126  
 charm quark 128  
     mass 215  
 chimaera 123  
 chlorine 173  
 classical physics  
     allows no measurements 15  
     defines no scales 15  
     lack of precision 201–203  
     limits of 15  
     no length and time scales 15  
 classification  
     of concepts 223  
 cleveite 181  
 clocks 26  
 clone  
     biological 124  
     physical 122–124  
 cloud  
     quantum 91  
 clouds

in quantum theory 80, 85  
 quantum 79  
 CODATA 261  
 coherence 144, 156  
     definition 101  
     length 54  
     of cars 78  
     of electrons 101–102  
     time 53  
     transversal 101  
 coherence length 52, 60  
 coherence time 52  
 coherence volume 60  
 coherent 151  
 collapse  
     of the wave function 93, 153  
     definition 158  
     formula 162  
     of wave function 166  
 colour 44  
     charge 129  
     first summary on 197  
     origin of 171  
 colour causes  
     table of 172–179  
 colour centres 176  
 colours 197  
 Commission Internationale des Poids et Mesures 205  
 commutation of Hamiltonian and momentum operator 109  
 commutation, lack of 35  
 commutative 224  
 complementarity 78  
 complementarity principle 37, 78  
 completeness property of sets 224  
 complex conjugate 225  
 complex number 225–227  
     as arrow 226  
 compositeness 107  
     criteria for 107–108  
 Compton (wave)length 108  
 Compton scattering 70  
 Compton wavelength 202, 216  
 computer  
     universe not a 169

# C

COMPUTER

computer science and quantum theory 35  
concepts classification of 223  
condensate 242  
condom problem 112  
conductance quantum 216  
conductivity quantization of 74–76  
cones, in the retina 249  
Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures 205  
configuration space 135  
Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures 206  
consciousness 166 not of importance in quantum theory 166  
constants table of astronomical 218  
table of basic physical 214  
table of cosmological 220  
table of derived physical 216  
Convention du Mètre 205  
copy, perfect 122  
copying machine 35 definition 122  
function 123  
lack of 123  
Coriolis acceleration in atoms 194  
corrected Planck units 210  
cosmological constant 220  
coulomb 207  
Coulomb gauge 153  
coupling minimal 190  
CPT 105  
cream whipped 22  
creation 193  
creation operator 121  
cross product 234  
cryptoanalysis 169  
cryptography 169  
cryptography, quantum 123  
cryptology 169  
cryptology, quantum 169  
cube

Bronshtein 8  
physics 8  
current Planck 209  
curve space filling 238  
cyclotron frequency 217  
**D**  
daemons 199  
damping 148  
dance 131  
day sidereal 218  
time unit 207  
death 29, 150  
deca 207  
decay 200  
deci 207  
decoherence 36, 146–167 of light 156  
process 145  
time 147, 149  
decoherence process 157  
degree angle unit 207  
degree Celsius 207  
*Dendrobates azureus* 177  
density Planck 209  
density functional 145  
density matrix 145  
detachable 152  
detector 160  
determinism 167  
deviation standard, illustration 213  
devils 199  
different 59  
diffraction and scattering 70  
as colour cause 178  
definition of 60  
of gratings 62  
of matter by light 195  
of quantum states 93  
pattern 157  
dimension 237  
dimensionless 216

dimensions, three spatial 135  
disentanglement 145, 152  
disentanglement process 157  
disinformation 39  
dispersion 94, 176 of wave functions 95  
distinction macroscopic 144  
distribution Gaussian 212  
normal 212  
division 224  
division algebra 231  
donate to this book 10  
Doppler effect 182  
double cover 231  
double numbers 235  
down quark 128 mass 215  
dwarfs none in nature 21  
dyadic product 145  
**E**  
Earth age 218  
average density 218  
equatorial radius 218  
flattening 218  
gravitational length 218  
mass 218  
normal gravity 218  
radius 218  
EBK quantization 182  
edge is never sharp 109  
eigenfunction 161  
eigenstates 88  
eigenvalue 88 and measurement 158  
definition 158  
of velocity 106  
eigenvector 88, 158 definition 158  
eigenvectors 88  
eight-squares theorem 234  
Einstein–Podolsky–Rosen paradox 154

Ekert protocol 123  
 electrodynamics 227  
 electromagnetic coupling  
     constant  
     *see* fine structure constant  
 electromagnetic unit system  
     210  
 electromagnetism, strength of  
     196  
 electron 128  
     classical radius 216  
     g-factor 217  
     interference 101  
     magnetic moment 217  
     mass 215  
     radius 138  
     Trojan 110  
 electron volt 210  
     value 217  
 electronium 110  
 electrostatic unit system 210  
 elementary particle  
     *see also* particle  
 emotion  
     is a quantum process 17  
 energy  
     Planck 209  
     energy levels 184  
     energy width 129  
     ensemble 114  
     entangled systems 35  
     entanglement 36, 152, 154  
     entanglement, degree of 156  
     entropy  
         Planck 209  
         to bit conversion 217  
     environment 146  
     EPR 123, 154  
     equilibrium 146  
     error  
         in measurements 212  
         random 212  
         relative 212  
         systematic 212  
         total 212  
     escape velocity 184  
     Euclidean vector space 237  
     eumelanin 174  
     europium 173

evolution  
     equation, first order 94  
 evolution equation 92  
 Exa 207  
 excitations in gases 172  
 exclusion principle 135–137  
     and angels 136  
 expansion  
     periodic decimal 235  
 explanation 167  
 eye and the detection of  
     photons 40

**F**  
 fall, free 19  
 farad 207  
 Faraday's constant 216  
 femto 207  
 fencing 139  
 Fermi coupling constant 215  
 fermion  
     no coherence 141  
 fermions 118, 121  
 field, mathematical 224  
 field, number 224  
 film  
     and action 17  
     in lower left corner 153  
 fine structure 188  
 fine-structure constant 186,  
     188, 196, 197, 203, 208, 215,  
     216  
 fire colour 172  
 firework colour 172  
 first property of quantum  
     measurements 158  
 flashlamp colour 172  
 flight simulation 231  
 floor  
     why it does not fall 136  
 flowers 179  
 flows  
     are made of particles 74  
     must fluctuate 74  
 fluctuations 146  
 Fock states 49  
 foundation  
     of quantum physics 17  
 four-momentum 126

four-squares theorem 228  
 fractals 37  
     do not appear in nature 85  
 Fraunhofer lines 180  
 French railroad distance 236  
 friction 148  
 full width at half maximum  
     212  
 fuzziness  
     fundamental 74

**G**  
 g-factor 107  
*g*-factor 104  
 G-parity 129  
 Galileo and quanta 24  
 gas  
     simple 113  
 gas constant, universal 216  
 gas lasers 172  
 gases 113  
 gauge, Coulomb 153  
 Gaussian distribution 212  
 Gaussian integers 235  
 Gaussian primes 235  
 Gaussian unit system 210  
 Gedanken experiment *see*  
     thought experiment  
 gelatine 198  
 generators 228  
 genius 55  
 ghosts 142, 199  
 giants  
     none in nature 21  
 Gibbs' paradox 114  
 Giga 207  
 Glauber state 48  
 glove problem 112  
 gloves 124  
 glow worm 16  
 glow-worms 174  
 gluon 128, 215  
 goddesses 199  
 gods 165, 196, 199  
 gold  
     yellow colour 195  
 graphics, three-dimensional  
     231  
 grating 62

# G

## GRAVITATIONAL

278

of light 195  
gravitational constant  
  geocentric 218  
  heliocentric 219  
gravitational constant  $G$  215  
  physics and 8  
graviton 35, 127  
gray 207  
ground state 184  
group 224  
group velocity 94  
growth 31  
Gulliver's travels 21  
gyromagnetic ratio 107  
  electron 202  
Göttingen 24

**H**

$H_2O$  22  
half-life 129  
Hall effect  
  fractional quantum 142  
Hamilton  
  function 106  
Hamiltonian 92  
Hanbury Brown–Twiss  
  experiment 63  
Hanbury Brown–Twiss  
  effect 56  
hand, for quaternion  
  visualization 230  
Heaviside–Lorentz unit  
  system 210  
hecto 207  
Heisenberg picture 143, 155  
Heisenberg's indeterminacy  
  relations 78  
helicity 45, 126  
helium 107, 150, 181  
  atom 110  
  bunching 119  
  discovery of 181  
  in Sun 181  
hemoglobin 179  
henry 207  
Hermitean vector space 237  
hertz 207  
hidden variables 163  
Higgs boson 108, 129

Higgs mass 215  
Hilbert space 88, 91, 237  
Hiroshima 38  
Hitachi 253  
hologram  
  electron beam 101  
homogeneous 229  
horizon  
  motion and quantum  
  aspects 198  
horseshoe 37  
hour 207  
Hubble parameter 220  
human observer 166  
hydrogen  
  atomic size 79, 110  
  atoms, existence of 109  
  colours of 181–184  
  colours of atomic 211  
  energy levels 92  
  heat capacity 85  
  imaging of 242  
  in Sun 181  
  in water 21  
  orbitals 80  
hydrogen atoms 253  
hyperreals 235

**I**

ice colour 173  
ice, blue 173  
images 201  
immediate 154  
impenetrability  
  of matter 142, 200  
impenetrability of matter 29,  
  139  
incandescence 18, 172  
indeterminacy principle  
  see indeterminacy relation  
  temperature-time 86  
indeterminacy relation  
  extended 141  
  for angular momentum 82  
  for many fermions 141  
indeterminacy relations 25, 78  
indistinguishable 114  
indoctrination 39  
information science and

quantum theory 35  
inhomogeneous Lorentz  
  group 125  
inner product 236  
inner product spaces 236  
inorganic charge transfer 175  
integers 223  
interference 144  
  and bombs 69  
  and photons 56–60  
  as colour cause 177  
  fringes 57  
  of electrons 101  
  of photons 66  
  quantum 93  
interferometer 51  
  for matter 77  
  picture of 51  
interferometers 212  
intermediate bosons 107  
International Astronomical  
  Union 219  
International Geodesic Union  
  220  
interpenetration  
  of atoms and bonds 80  
  of light vs. matter 140  
  of matter 136  
interpretation  
  of quantum mechanics 167  
interpretation of quantum  
  mechanics 144  
invariant  
  see also action, quantum of  
  see also Lorentz invariance  
  see also Planck units  
  see also speed of light  
iodine 173  
ionization energy 184  
irreducible representation 125  
irreversible 148  
isotopes 122  
IUPAC 261  
IUPAP 261

**J**

Jarlskog invariant 215  
Josephson effect 100  
Josephson frequency ratio 216

- joule 207  
 Journal of Irreproducible Results 248  
 Jupiter properties 218
- K**  
 kelvin definition 205  
 kilo 207  
 kilogram definition 205  
 kilotonne 38  
 Klitzing, von – constant 216  
 knocking and the fermionic character of matter 137 on tables 74  
 Korteweg-de Vries equation 110
- L**  
 Lagrangian operator 103  
 lake blue colour 194  
 Lamb shift 202  
*Lampyris noctiluca* 16  
 Laplace operator 92  
 laser cavity 47 coherence 54 cooling 244 sword 139  
 Laue scattering 70 lava colour 172 lawyers 39 learning best method for 9 without markers 9 without screens 9  
 Lego 17 length coherence 52, 60 Planck 209 scale, not in classical physics 15 length scales 201 life and quantum physics 15,
- 204 is a quantum process 17 lifetime 129 lifetime, atomic 202 light 46 *see also* speed of light coherent 48, 50 incoherent 156 intensity fluctuations 48 macroscopic 156 made of bosons 139, 140 non-classical 47–51 squeezed 47–51 thermal 48 tunnelling 97 light grating 195 light quanta 40, 46 light quantum 34 light year 218, 219 lightbulb 172 Lilliput 201 limits to precision 214 linear spaces 236 linear vector spaces 236 linearity of quantum mechanics 144 link, open 142 litre 207 locality 162 Lorentz group inhomogeneous 125 Lorentz symmetry *see* Lorentz invariance Loschmidt's number 216 lumen 207 luminary movement 46 luminous bodies 46 lux 207 Lyman-alpha line 182
- M**  
 macroscopic system 151 magic 203 magma colour 172 magnetic flux quantum 216 magnetite 175 magneton 107 magneton, nuclear 217 many worlds interpretation 167 marker bad for learning 9 Maslov index 183 mass Planck 209 mass ratio muon-electron 217 neutron-electron 217 neutron-proton 217 proton-electron 217 material properties 196 first summary on 197 material research 196 materials science 196 materials, dense optically 62 matter density of 141 motion of 72–111 size of 141 matter wavelength 202 maximum speed *see* speed of light  $c$  measured 161 measurement comparison 208 definition 205, 208 error definition 212 irreversibility 208 meaning 208 no infinite precision 73 precision *see* precision process 208 vs. state 87–89 measurement apparatus 166 measurement results 88 measurements 88, 157 measurements disturb 166 Mega 207 megatonne 38 melanin 179 memory 97, 157, 159 mercury liquid state of 195 mercury lamp 172 mesoscopic systems 24 metallic bands 175 metre

- definition 205
- metre rules 26
- metric space 236
- micro 207
- microscope 24
  - magnetic resonance force 105
- microscopic system 151
  - definition 24
- microscopic systems 24
- microwave background
  - temperature 220
- Mie scattering 70
- mile 208
- Milky Way
  - age 219
  - mass 219
  - size 219
- milli 207
- mind 166
- minimal coupling 190
- minimization of change
  - see* least action
- Minion Math font 264
- minute 207
  - definition 220
- mirror 60
- mirrors 97
- mixed state 145
- mixing matrix
  - CKM quark 215
  - PMNS neutrino 215
- molar volume 216
- mole 122
- molecular vibrations and
  - rotations 173
- molecule size 202
- momentum
  - Planck 209
- Moon
  - density 218
  - properties 218
- Moore's law 37
- motion
  - and measurement units 206
  - bound quantum 107
  - is fundamental 206
  - of matter 72–111
  - of quantons 111
  - quantons and 198
  - motion backwards in time 27
  - motion detector
    - senses as 17
  - motion inversion 126
  - Motion Mountain
    - aims of book series 7
    - helping the project 10
    - supporting the project 10
  - mozzarella 23
  - multiplication 224
  - muon 128
    - anomalous magnetic moment 202
    - g-factor 217
    - muon magnetic moment 217
    - muon mass 215
    - muon neutrino 128
    - muonium
      - hyperfine splitting 202
    - myoglobin 179
  - N
    - nano 207
    - nanoscopic systems 24
    - natural unit 216
      - see also* Planck units
    - nature 165
    - nature and computer science 35
    - neon lamp 172
    - Neumann, von, equation 145
    - neutrino 147
      - masses 215
      - PMNS mixing matrix 215
    - neutrino, electron 128
    - neutron 107
      - Compton wavelength 217
      - magnetic moment 217
      - mass 217
    - new age 167
    - newton 207
    - Newtonian physics
      - see* Galilean physics
    - no-cloning theorem 122, 123, 254
    - non-classical light 48, 55
    - non-local 153
    - non-unitarity 166
    - nonstandard analysis 235
    - norm 225, 228, 236
    - normality of  $\pi$  221
    - North Pole 82
    - nuclear magneton 217
    - nuclear warhead 38
    - nucleus 83
    - number 223–235
      - double 235
      - field 224
      - hypercomplex 233, 234
      - theory 235
    - number states 49
    - nymphs 199
  - O
    - oaths
      - and the quantum of action 39
    - object 151
      - made of particles 198
      - tethered 130–135
    - observables 88
      - do not commute 35
    - observation 159
    - observations 157
    - observer
      - made of radiation 168
    - octaves 233
    - octonions 233
    - ohm 207
    - operator, adjoint 121
    - operators 88
    - orbit
      - inside atoms 181
    - order structure 224
    - order, total 224
    - ordinals 235
    - organic compounds 174
  - P
    - $\pi$ , normality of 221
    - pair creation 202
    - paradox
      - EPR 154
    - parity 129
    - parsec 218
    - particle 120

# P

## PARTICLE

- countability 117  
elementary 125, 199  
elementary, definition of 125  
real, definition 193  
simple 113  
speed 94  
virtual 64  
virtual, definition 193  
*see also* elementary particle  
*see also* matter  
*see also* quanton  
*see also* virtual particle
- particle counting, limits to 193  
pascal 207  
passion  
    hiding 223  
path integral formulation 102  
paths 33  
Paul trap 110  
Pauli equation 105  
Pauli exclusion principle 122, 133, 139, 140  
Pauli pressure 136  
Pauli spin matrices 231  
Pauli's exclusion principle *see* exclusion principle  
penetrability of matter 29  
perfect copy 122  
perigee 218  
perihelion 219  
periodic systems of the elements 136  
permanence 27, 168  
permanganate 175  
permeability  
    vacuum 216  
permittivity  
    vacuum 216  
permutation  
    of particles 112–124  
permutation symmetry 116  
Peta 207  
phase 33  
    and complex numbers 225  
    definition 227  
    of wave function 97–101  
phase space cell 60
- phase, thermodynamic 114  
phasor space 48  
pheomelanin 174  
Philippine wine dance 130  
philosophers 46  
phosphorus 196  
photochromism 176  
photon 34, 128  
    detection without absorption 196  
    faster than light 64–65  
    interference 66  
    localisation 51–54  
    mass 215  
    number density 221  
    position of 51–54  
    radio wave detection 241  
    virtual 64
- photon as elementary particle 47  
photon cloning 254  
photon-photon scattering 202  
photons 40, 43, 46, 63, 200  
    and interference 59  
    as arrows 57  
    to waves 63–64  
photons and naked eye 40  
photons, entangled 55  
photons, eye detection of single 44  
photons, spin of 45  
physics  
    map of 8  
physics cube 8  
pico 207  
Planck action  $\hbar$   
    *see* action, quantum of  
Planck constant  
    value of 214  
Planck constant  $\hbar$   
    *see* action, quantum of  
Planck stroll 211  
Planck units  
    as limits 209  
    corrected 210  
Planck's (unreduced) constant 17  
Planck's constant 18, 44  
Planck's natural units 208
- plankton 194  
plants  
    flowering 179  
plate trick 130  
pleasure 17  
    is a quantum process 17  
pointer 161  
polarization 63, 176  
polarization of light 45  
police 96  
position 168  
positron 192  
positron charge  
    specific 217  
    value of 214  
potential  
    spherical 183  
praesodymium 173  
precision 212  
    limits to 214  
no infinite measurement 73  
of quantum theory 201–203  
prefixes 207, 260  
    SI, table 207  
prefixes, SI 207  
principle  
    of complementarity 78  
    of least action 102  
    quantum 17  
prison 39  
probability 158  
probability amplitude 165  
probability distribution 80  
product  
    vector 234  
properties  
    intrinsic 199  
proton 107  
    Compton wavelength 217  
    g factor 217  
    gyromagnetic ratio 217  
    magnetic moment 217  
    mass 217  
    specific charge 217  
proton radius 107  
proton volt 210  
pure 229

pure state 144  
puzzle  
glove 112

**Q**

q-numbers 235  
QED 191  
quanta  
and Galileo 24  
quanti, piccolissimi 24  
quantization 44  
quantization, EBK 182  
quanton  
*see also* particle  
elementary 199  
motion of 199–201  
speed 94  
summary of motion 111  
quantons 46, 76, 198  
quantum  
origin of the term 22–24  
quantum action 102  
quantum action principle 103  
quantum computers 123  
quantum computing 157, 257  
quantum cryptography 123  
quantum cryptology 169  
quantum electrodynamics 191  
quantum field theory 122  
quantum interference 93  
quantum mechanical system  
151  
quantum mechanics  
origin of the term 22  
*see also* quantum physics  
*see also* quantum theory  
quantum mechanics applied  
to single events 167  
quantum money 243  
quantum numbers 127, 129  
quantum of action 17, 18, 198  
precise value 214  
quantum of change 18  
quantum of circulation 217  
quantum particle  
as bulge 120  
summary of motion 111  
quantum particles  
arrows and 200

clouds and 200  
indistinguishability 200  
interactions 200  
phase of 200  
waves and 200  
quantum phase 89  
quantum physics  
*see also* quantum theory  
as magic 203  
finite precision and 201  
for poets 15  
fundamental discovery 17  
in a nutshell 198–204  
lack of infinitely small 198  
life and 15, 204  
precision of 201–203  
probabilities in 200  
quantum principle 17  
quantum state 91  
quantum states 89  
quantum theory 22  
*see also* quantum physics  
interpretation 144  
summary and main results  
198–204  
quantum theory and  
computer science 35  
quark  
bottom 129  
charm 128  
down 128  
mixing matrix 215  
strange 128  
top 129  
up 128  
quaternion  
basic unit 228  
conjugate 228  
imaginary 229  
quaternions 227  
quaternions in astronomy 231  
qubits 157

**R**

radian 206  
radiation  
observers made of 168  
radiative decay 202  
radio interference 66

radioactivity 114  
rainbow  
and Sun's composition 180  
rainbows and the elements in  
the Sun 180  
RAM 97  
Raman scattering 70  
inverse 70  
random-access memory 97  
randomness  
and quantum of action  
31–33  
randomness, experimental 158  
rational coordinates 221  
rational numbers 224  
Rayleigh scattering 70  
reactions 31  
real numbers 224  
real particle  
definition 193  
recognition 121  
record 157  
reflection 60  
reflection, total  
and light amplification 195  
refraction 62, 176  
refraction and photons 67  
refraction of matter waves 85  
relaxation 148  
representation 226, 231, 233  
irreducible 125  
reservoir 146  
rest 19  
does not exist 199  
lack of 72–74  
rigidity 37  
ring 223  
unital 224  
ring interferometers 212  
robotics 231  
rods in retina 249  
rotation 137, 229  
of atoms 85  
ruby glass 177  
Rydberg atoms 186  
Rydberg constant 182, 202, 216

**S**

Sackur–Tetrode formula 114

**S****SAMARIUM**

- samarium 173  
 sapphire 175  
 Sargasso Sea 194  
 scalar 235  
 scalar multiplication 235  
 scalar part of a quaternion 228  
 scalar product 236  
 scattering 176  
   definition 69  
   geometric 70  
   types of 69  
 Schrödinger euqation 91–93  
 Schrödinger picture 143  
 Schrödinger's cat 144, 152  
 Schrödinger's equation of motion 92  
 Schwarzschild radius  
   as length unit 210  
 science fiction 139  
 scissor trick 130, 255  
 sea  
   blue colour 194  
 sea, bluest 194  
 second 207  
   definition 205, 220  
 second property of quantum measurements: 158  
 sedenions 234  
 semi-ring 223, 224  
 semiconductor bands 175  
 sense  
   as motion detector 17  
 senses 17  
 separability 152  
 sesquilinear 237  
 sexuality 31  
 shape 22  
   of atom 185  
 shapes 79  
 shell, atomic 136  
 SI  
   prefixes  
   table of 207  
   units 205, 214  
 SI units  
   definition 205  
   prefixes 207  
   supplementary 206  
 siemens 207  
 sievert 207  
 single events in quantum mechanics 167  
 sizes of atoms 197  
 sizes of tings 197  
 skew field 224  
 smartphone  
   bad for learning 9  
 Smekal–Raman scattering 70  
 SO(3) 126  
 sodium 85  
 sodium nucleus 83  
 sodium street lamps 172  
 soliton 110  
 soul 199  
 sources 66  
 space  
   metric 236  
 space, linear 235  
 sparkler colour 172  
 sparks 172  
 spatial parity 126  
 special orthogonal group 230  
 spectrum 158  
 spectrum of hot objects 202  
 speed  
   of light  $c$   
   physics and 8  
 sperm 23  
 spin 83, 104–105, 125, 126, 200  
   1/2 104  
   magnitude definition 126  
   use of value 126  
 spin 1/2 and quaternions 230  
 spin and rotation 138  
 spin myth 137  
 spin–statistics theorem 140  
 spinor 135, 191  
 spinors 230  
 spirits 199  
 sponsor  
   this book 10  
 spreading  
   of wave function 94  
 squark 263  
 squeezed light 48, 55  
 standard deviation 212  
   illustration 213  
 star colours 172  
 state 143, 170  
   bound 110  
   bound, unusual 110  
   coherent 48  
   quantum 91  
   vs. measurement 87–89  
 state function 165  
 state sum 243  
 states 88  
   are rotating arrows 89  
 steel, hot 172  
 Stefan–Boltzmann black body  
   radiation constant 202, 217  
 steradian 206  
 Stern–Gerlach experiment 83, 87  
 stone 35  
 stones 30, 62, 76, 135, 198  
 strange quark 128  
   mass 215  
 strength of electromagnetism 196  
 string trick 130  
 strong coupling constant 215  
 Sun's age 219  
 Sun's lower photospheric pressure 219  
 Sun's luminosity 219  
 Sun's mass 219  
 Sun's surface gravity 219  
 superconducting quantum interference devices 100  
 supernatural phenomena 201  
 superposition  
   coherent 144  
   incoherent 145  
 support  
   this book 10  
 surreals 235  
 symmetry  
   of physical system 125  
 Système International d'Unités (SI) 205  
 system 143, 151  
   bound 110  
   classical 26  
   definition in quatum physics 155

macroscopic 24  
 microscopic 24  
 system, cloning of  
     macroscopic 123

**T**  
 table  
     of colour causes 172–179  
     of precision of quantum theory 201–203  
 tachyons 27  
 tau 128  
 tau mass 215  
 tau neutrino 128  
 tax collection 205  
 teaching  
     best method for 9  
 telekinesis 201  
 teleportation 157, 201  
 temperature  
     Planck 209  
 tensor product 145  
 Tera 207  
 terabyte 97  
 tesla 207  
 tether 130–135  
 thermal de Broglie  
     wavelength 150  
 thermodynamics, third ‘law’  
     of 72  
 third ‘law’ of  
     thermodynamics 72  
 Thomson scattering 70  
 time  
     coherence 52, 53, 60  
     Planck 209  
     scale, not in classical physics 15  
 time of collapse 162  
 time scales 201  
 time travel 27  
 TNT 38  
 TNT energy content 218  
 Tom Thumb 36  
 tonne, or ton 207  
 top quark 129  
     mass 215  
 topness 129  
 touch

basis for 140  
 trace 146  
 train windows 32  
 transfinite number 235  
 transition metal compounds 173  
 transition metal impurities 173  
 tree  
     noise of falling 166  
 trick  
     belt 131  
     plate 131  
     scissor 131  
 tropical year 218  
 truth 129  
     fundamental 204  
 tunnelling 95–97, 200  
     of light 97  
 tunnelling effect 29, 96  
 TV tube 97  
 twin  
     exchange 121  
 two-squares theorem 225  
 Tyndall scattering 70

**U**  
 udeko 207  
 Udekta 207  
 uncertainty *see* indeterminacy  
     relative 212  
     total 212  
 uncertainty principle  
     *see* indeterminacy relation  
 uncertainty relation 25, 78  
     *see also* indeterminacy relation  
 understanding  
     quantum theory 39  
 unit 229  
     astronomical 218  
     natural 216  
 unitarity 162, 166  
 unitary vector space 237  
 units 205  
     natural 208  
     non-SI 208  
     Planck’s 208  
     Planck’s natural *see* Planck

units, natural units  
 provincial 208  
 SI, definition 205  
 true natural 210  
 universe  
     initial conditions do not exist 170  
     not a computer 169  
     wave function of 169  
 up quark 128  
     mass 215

**V**  
 vacuoles 179  
 vacuum 116, 194  
     *see also* space  
     impedance 216  
     motion and quantum aspects 198  
     permeability 216  
     permittivity 216  
     state 121  
 vacuum polarization 193  
 value, absolute 225  
 vanishing 145  
 variable  
     hidden 163–165  
 variance 212  
 Vavilov–Čerenkov radiation 172  
 vector 229, 235  
     part of a quaternion 228  
     product 234  
 vector space 235  
 vector space, Euclidean 237  
 vector space, Hermitean 237  
 vector space, unitary 237  
 velocity  
     Planck 209  
 vendeko 207  
 Vendekta 207  
 video  
     bad for learning 9  
 viewpoint changes 88  
 virtual particle 64, 116  
     definition 193  
 virtual photons 64  
 volt 207

**W**

W

- W**  
 W boson 128  
   mass 215  
 waiting  
   as quantum effect 20  
 water  
   blue colour 173, 194  
 watt 207  
 wave  
   and complex numbers 225  
   equation 92  
   evanescent 97  
   from photons 63–64  
 wave function 89, 91, 92, 165  
   as rotating cloud 98  
   collapse 93, 153  
   dispersion of 94  
   is a cloud 109  
   phase of 97–101  
 spreading of 94  
 symmetry of 117  
 visualization 89–91  
 wave interference 66  
 wave-particle duality 46  
 weak charge 129  
 weak isospin 129  
 weak mixing angle 215  
 weber 207  
 weko 207  
 Wekta 207  
 Wheeler–DeWitt equation  
   170  
 Wien’s displacement constant  
   202, 217  
 windows in trains 33  
 wine  
   and water 148  
   glass 72  
 World Geodetic System 219

**X**

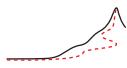
- X-rays 45  
   scattering 70  
 xenno 207  
 Xenta 207

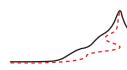
**Y**

- yocto 207  
 Yotta 207

**Z**

- Z boson 128  
   mass 215  
 zepto 207  
 zero-point fluctuations 74  
 Zetta 207





# MOTION MOUNTAIN

## The Adventure of Physics – Vol. IV

### The Quantum of Change

How can we see single photons?  
How do colours appear in nature?  
What does ‘quantum’ mean?  
What are the dangers of a can of beans?  
Why are Gulliver’s travels impossible?  
Is the vacuum empty?  
What is the origin of decay?  
Why is nature random?  
Do perfect copying machines exist?



Answering these and other questions on motion, this series gives an entertaining and mind-twisting introduction into modern physics – one that is surprising and challenging on every page. Starting from everyday life, the adventure provides an overview of modern results in mechanics, heat, electromagnetism, relativity, quantum physics and unification.

Christoph Schiller, PhD Université Libre de Bruxelles, is a physicist and physics popularizer. He wrote this book for his children and for all students, teachers and readers interested in physics, the science of motion.

Pdf file available free of charge at  
[www.motionmountain.net](http://www.motionmountain.net)

